


N 57-



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

Clarendon Press Series

I

LANGE'S GERMAN COURSE

COMPOSITION

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD
LONDON, EDINBURGH, NEW YORK
TORONTO AND MELBOURNE

La G. Gr.
L274g.2

Clarendon Press Series

III

GERMAN COMPOSITION

*A THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL GUIDE
TO THE ART OF TRANSLATING ENGLISH PROSE
INTO GERMAN*

BY

HERMANN LANGE

LECTURER ON FRENCH AND GERMAN AT THE MANCHESTER TECHNICAL SCHOOL
AND LECTURER ON GERMAN AT THE MANCHESTER ATHENÆUM

THIRD EDITION

217679
22.10.27

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

M DCCCC



OXFORD

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART, M.A.

PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

P R E F A C E.

✓

'GERMAN COMPOSITION' is intended to be a Theoretical and Practical Guide to the Art of Translating English Prose into good and idiomatic German. It is arranged in such a manner that students who have reached the fiftieth Lesson of the 'German Manual' may commence and advantageously use it conjointly with that book. Being complete in itself, it is likewise adapted for the use of any other students who, possessing a knowledge of German Accidence and having had some practice in reading German Prose, wish to acquire the Art of Translating English Prose into German.

The book is calculated to serve the requirements of the B.A. Examinations of the London and Victoria Universities, the Competitive Examinations for the Civil and Military Service, the Oxford and Cambridge Local Examinations for Senior Students, the Examination of the College of Preceptors for First Class Candidates, and of similar Public Examinations—all of which require the candidates to translate English Prose into German.

I may conscientiously say that I have done all I could to make the book attractive and useful. The selection of the Extracts has been made with the greatest care directly from the works of the various authors, and is the result of many years' attentive reading and research. The pieces have been almost exclusively chosen from the works of the best modern English and American writers, and, it is hoped, will be found as interesting and instructive as they are well adapted for translation into German. They represent all the various styles of English Prose Composition, and contain a great variety of subjects, as a glance at the various pages will show; whilst the fact that the specimens, with only one or two exceptions, are no mere fragments, but complete pieces in themselves, must necessarily add to their value.

The Biographical Sketches of famous men and women, which at intervals appear in the Notes and are always given in German, form a special feature of the book. (Comp. S. 127, N. 1; S. 138, N. 12; and

S. 156, N. 1.) They are of various lengths, according to their importance, and have been written to add to the interest of the work and at the same time to offer the student some useful material for reading German.

With respect to the help given in the Notes, I may state that I have proceeded with the utmost consideration and care. The great object I placed before me was to show, by precept and example, that a good translation cannot be produced by the mere mechanical process of joining together a number of words, as the dictionary may offer them at first sight: but that it requires great thought and analytic power; that every sentence, nay, almost every word, has to be weighed and considered with respect to its true bearing upon the text; and that a good rendering is only possible when the translator has grasped the true meaning of the passage before him.

I have endeavoured to give neither too little nor too much help, but whenever I found a difficulty which a student of average ability could not fairly be expected to overcome, I have stepped in to solve it. For this purpose I have made use of English equivalents and periphrases and of Rules and Examples, and in cases where neither of these helps was considered practicable I have not hesitated to give the German rendering of the word or passage to be translated. The last mode of procedure, however, I have adopted only when I found that the dictionaries in ordinary use were insufficient, as is so frequently the case, and more especially with respect to idiomatic passages, which it is impossible to render successfully unless the translator is well versed in both languages, and at the same time has undergone a thorough training in the Art of Translating English into German, which the present volume professes to teach. The plan of indicating the rendering of words and phrases by means of English equivalents and periphrases must be of evident advantage to the learner, for it teaches him how to think and analyse, whilst it leads him to render the word or phrase correctly without giving him the translation itself.

The Notes of Sections 1 to 150 and the Appendix contain in a concise and lucid form almost all the rules relating to the German Syntax, and in most instances these rules have been illustrated by practical examples and models. The Appendix gives in thirty-seven paragraphs the Rules referring to the Construction, the use of the Indicative, Subjunctive (or Conjunctive), and Conditional Moods, which for convenient reference have been reprinted from my 'German Grammar,' and to facilitate the student's work I have added an Index to the Grammatical Rules and Idiomatic Renderings.

In a work containing such a great number of Extracts as the present, there are, of course, many idioms and passages which may be correctly translated in various ways, and I can therefore scarcely hope that all my renderings will meet with the approval of every German scholar. I may, however, confidently affirm here that I have devoted much thought and labour to this publication, and that I have tried with all my heart to make it acceptable to teachers and students alike.

In conclusion I respectfully tender my best thanks to the publishers—

Messrs. W. and R. Chambers, Edinburgh,

„ Chapman and Hall,	} London,
„ Longmans and Co.,	
„ Sampson Low and Co.,	
„ Macmillan and Co.,	
Mr. Murray,	
Messrs. T. Nelson and Sons,	}
„ Smith, Elder, and Co., and	
„ Stanford and Co.,	

and to the Editors of—

The Daily News,	} London,
„ Daily Telegraph,	
„ Globe,	
„ Standard, and	
„ Times,	

for their very kind permission to make use of the Copyright Extracts in this publication, and for the cordial manner in which they granted my request.

Page ix contains a few Hints and Directions for using the Book which I consider of great importance, and to which I beg to draw attention.

HERMANN LANGE.

HEATHFIELD HOUSE, LLOYD STREET,
GREENHEYS, MANCHESTER,
September, 1883.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

A second edition of this volume having been called for, I wish to express my cordial thanks to the numerous colleagues and friends who adopted it as a text-book for their classes.

As I am engaged in preparing, besides this book, a third edition of two other volumes of my 'German Course,' and, at the request of the Delegates of the University Press, also a Key to this volume, 'German Composition,' I think the present moment opportune for introducing the reformed German spelling which, by Government regulations, has been taught in German schools for the last five or six years, and is becoming more generally used from year to year in friendly intercourse, papers, periodicals, literature, and commercial correspondence. It is but fair that the students of German in this country should be taught to spell in the simplified way now universally practised by their German contemporaries. They will at least have nothing to unlearn then; and, although the present spelling-reform may be considered but a compromise between the older and the younger schools, there being a tendency in the younger men to go even further than their older colleagues in the simplification of our orthography and to make it still more phonetic and uniform in principle, it will take a long time before the Government will be moved to make modifications of any importance in their regulations. I confidently trust that the great trouble I have bestowed upon the revision of the present edition will be appreciated by teachers and students alike. It will easily be seen that the alterations of the orthography in the various books forming this 'German Course' must have necessarily entailed a very considerable additional expense; but the publication having met with much approval on the part of the public, I was anxious to leave nothing undone in order to adapt it in every respect to the requirements of the times and to make it still more useful.

On examination it will be seen that the changes made are not so many as may be supposed, and that the principles underlying the German spelling-reform are simple and easy to understand.

At the end of the Appendix will be found a Synopsis of the principal changes the German spelling has undergone, accompanied by Examples and a few Exceptions to the general rules.

HERMANN LANGE.

HEATHFIELD HOUSE, LLOYD STREET, GREENHEYS, MANCHESTER,
December, 1886.

DIRECTIONS FOR USING THE BOOK.

Each Section should first be prepared for *viva voce* translation, *with* the assistance of the Notes in class; then translated in writing; carefully corrected; and finally practised, by comparing the English text with the corrected German version, FOR A SECOND *viva voce* TRANSLATION until the student is able to translate the English text, *without* the assistance of the Notes in class, just as readily into correct German as if he were reading from a German book.

The Grammatical Rules given in the Notes should always be carefully studied, and the reading of previously given Rules and the various paragraphs of the Appendix referred to in the text should never be omitted.

The strict and conscientious observance of these directions is earnestly requested.

THE SECOND *viva voce* TRANSLATION *without* the assistance of the Notes in class, as explained above, is especially of the greatest importance to the student's progress in the Art of Translating English into German, and is the only way of mastering all the idiomatic and syntactic difficulties contained in the Lessons and explained in the foot-notes. It commends itself likewise as the best way of committing to memory the great number of words and the various forms of construction occurring in the text, and will gradually, but surely, lead to the acquisition of a good and thorough German style of writing.

To be quite clear the Author ventures to propose the following

PLAN OF WORKING.

FIRST LESSON.

Prepare for *viva voce* translation Sections 1 and 2, WITH the assistance of the Notes in class.

SECOND LESSON.

Translate in Writing Sections 1 and 2; and prepare for *viva voce* translation Sections 3 and 4, WITH the assistance of the Notes in class.

THIRD LESSON.

PREPARE FOR FLUENT AND CORRECT *viva voce* TRANSLATION Sections 1 and 2, WITHOUT the assistance of the Notes in class, by comparing the English

text with the corrected German version; translate in Writing Sections 3 and 4; and prepare for *viva voce* translations Sections 5 and 6, WITH the assistance of the Notes in class.

FOURTH LESSON.

PREPARE FOR FLUENT AND CORRECT *viva voce* TRANSLATION Sections 3 and 4, WITHOUT the assistance of the Notes in class, by comparing the English text with the corrected version; translate in Writing Sections 5 and 6; and prepare for *viva voce* translation Sections 7 and 8, WITH the assistance of the Notes in class;

Then proceed in the same way throughout the book.

It need scarcely be added that the quantity of work pointed out here may be diminished or increased according to circumstances, and that the longer sections towards the end of the book will in most cases require the former course.

The frequent attentive study of German literature will be a powerful auxiliary to this book in imparting the Art of Translating English Prose into German.

ABBREVIATIONS AND SIGNS EXPLAINED.

Acc.	Accusative.	n.	noun.
adj.	adjective.	neut., or (n.) . . .	neuter.
adv.	adverb.	Nom.	Nominative.
App.	Appendix.	p.p.	Past Participle.
art.	article.	p. ps.	Past Participles.
Comp.	compare.	pers.	person.
comp.	compound.	persnl.	personal.
conj.	conjunction.	posses.	possessive.
constr.	construction.	prep.	preposition.
contr.	contracted.	Pres.	Present.
Dat. (or dat.) . .	Dative.	pres. p.	Present Participle.
def.	definite.	pron.	pronoun.
d. h.	(das heißt), that is.	refl.	reflective.
demonstr.	demonstrative.	reg.	regular.
e.g.	{ (exempli gratia), for example.	relat.	relative.
etc.	{ (et cetera), and so forth.	S.	Section.
Expl.	Example.	Sing.	Singular.
fem., or (f.) . .	feminine.	str.	strong.
geb.	(geboren), born.	Subj.	Subjunctive.
Gen.	Genitive.	tr., or trans. . .	transitive.
i.e.	(id est), that is.	u. a.	{ (und andere), and others.
Impf.	Imperfect.	u. f. w.	{ (und so weiter), and so forth.
impers.	impersonal.	v.	verb.
indef.	indefinite.	viz.	{ (videlicet), namely, to wit.
Inf.	Infinitive.	w.	weak.
insep.	inseparable.	§	paragraph.
intr., or intrans.	intransitive.	+	(gestorben), died.
Liter.	Literally.	=	is equivalent to.
m., or (m.) . .	masculine.		
N.	Note.		

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface	v
Directions for Using the Book	ix
Abbreviations and Signs Explained	xi
SECT.	
1. A Good Maxim.—Sir Thomas Buxton	1
2. What is Eternity?—Rev. R. K. Arvine	1
3. The Action of Water.—Dr. Lankester	2
4. Of what Use is it?—S. Smiles	2
5. Wealth.—Rev. C. Cotton	3
6. Mendelssohn in Birmingham.—Athenæum	3
7. To Forgive is to Forget.—Rev. H. W. Beecher	3
8. What is Capital?—Rev. Dr. Macduff	4
9. A Good Rule.—S. Smiles	4
10. England under the Rule of Queen Victoria.—W. M. Thackeray	5
11. Concentration of Powers.—T. Carlyle	5
12. Coolness.—W. C. Hazlitt	6
13. Religious Toleration.—Rev. R. K. Arvine	6
14. How Hugh Miller became a Geologist.—S. Smiles	7
15. Extremes Meet.—Rev. R. K. Arvine	7
16. Poor Pay.—Rev. R. K. Arvine	8
17. The World is a Looking-glass.—W. M. Thackeray	8
18. Give the honour to God alone.—Rev. R. K. Arvine	9
19. How did Cuvier become a Naturalist?—S. Smiles	9
20. On the Choice of Books.—Lord Dudley	10
21. An apparently insignificant fact often leads to great results.—S. Smiles	10
22. Oats.—Nelson's Readers	11
23. Spring Blossoms.—Rev. E. M. Davies	11
24. The Winking Eyelid.—Prof. G. Wilson	11
25. A Good Example.—Rev. J. Burroughs	12
26. Description of a Glacier.—Mrs. Beecher Stowe	12
27. Without Pains no Gains.—S. Smiles	13
28. The Magna Charta.—Lord Macaulay	14
29. Honesty.—Dr. B. Franklin	14
30, 31. Formation of a Coral-Island.—M. Flinders	15, 16
32. Reynard Caught.—Anonymous	16
33, 34. The Means of Conveyance in the Time of Charles II.—Lord Macaulay	17
35. Sir William Herschel.—Rev. Dr. Leitch	18

SECT.	PAGE
36, 37. The Air-Ocean.—Maury	19, 20
38. Cheerful Church-Music.—Rev. R. K. Arvine	20
39. Our Industrial Independence depends upon Ourselves.—S. Smiles	21
40. England's Trees.—Hewitt	21
41-45. The Indian Chief.—Washington Irving	22-24
46. Rice.—Nelson's Readers	25
47-53. The White Ship.—Charles Dickens	26-30
54. Barley.—Nelson's Readers	30
55. The Soldier and his Flag.—General Bourrienne	31
56. Our cultivated Native Plants.—Hewitt	32
57, 58. The Bequest.—Anonymous	32, 33
59. Wheat.—Nelson's Readers	33
60. Occupation of the Anglo-Saxons.—Milner	34
61-68. Tender, Trusty, and True.—Rev. Robert Collyer	34-39
69. Despatch of Business.—Sir Walter Scott	39
70, 71. On Perfumery.—Prof. Ascher	40, 41
72. On Instinct.—Rev. S. Smith	41
73. Peter the Great and the Monk.—Anonymous	42
74, 75. The Beauty of the Eye.—Prof. G. Wilson	43
76. A Funeral Dance.—Sir S. Baker	44
77. Absolution Beforehand.—Rev. R. K. Arvine	45
78, 79. Stand up for whatever is True, Manly, and Lovely.—T. Hughes	46, 47
80. Work is a great Comforter.—Anonymous	47
81. Perseverance finds its Reward.—N. Goodrich	48
82. The Necessity of Volcanoes.—Rev. Prof. Hitchcock	49
83. The Power of Beauty.—Lord Shaftesbury	49
84. The English Climate.—Hewitt	50
85, 86. The London Docks.—The "Globe" Newspaper	50, 51
87. Dr. Johnson on Debt.—S. Smiles	52
88-94. A Curious Instrument.—Jane Taylor	53-57
95. Anglo-Saxon Dress.—Milner	57
96, 97. The Glaciers at Sunset.—Mrs. Beecher Stowe	58, 59
98, 99. The Lost Child Found.—Jacob Abbott	59, 60
100. Perspiration.—Rev. Dr. Dick	61
101-107. The Drama of the French Revolution of 1848.—Essays from "The Times"	61-69
108. Experience is the best Teacher.—W. C. Hazlitt	69
109. On Self Culture.—William Chambers	70
110, 111. Goethe's Death.—G. H. Lewes	70, 71
112. On Travelling.—Charles Kingsley	72
113. The Management of the Body.—Sidney Smith	73
114. The Sources of Water.—Dr. Lankester	73
115. The Art of Oratory.—Henry Clay	74
116. Early Privations.—S. Smiles	75

SECT.	PAGE
117, 118. The Blessedness of Friendship.—Charles Kingsley . . .	76
119, 120. Do Good in your own Sphere of Action.—Thos. Hughes . . .	77, 78
121, 122. The State of Ireland.—The Right Hon. John Bright . . .	79
123-125. On Ragged Schools.—Dr. Guthrie	80-82
126. Shylock Meditating Revenge.—Shakespeare	82
127, 128. Character of Charlemagne.—Hallam	83, 84
129-131. Goethe's Daily Life at Weimar.—G. H. Lewes	85-87
132. The Progress in the Art of Printing.—The Right Hon. W. E. Gladstone	88
133. Robert Dick, the Baker, Geologist, and Botanist.—S. Smiles . . .	89
134, 135. The Gospel of Work.—Charles Kingsley	90, 91
136, 137. Do not be Ashamed of your Origin.—Anecdotes	92
138. Not Near Enough Yet.—Rev. Prof. Earle	93
139. A Great Loss.—S. Smiles	95
140, 141. Hero Worship.—Charles Kingsley	95, 96
142-144. James Watt and the Steam-Engine.—Lord Jeffrey	97, 98
145. Manufactures in England.—Bevan	98
146, 147. Mr. H. M. Stanley's Appeal for Supplies	99, 100
148. Answer to the preceding letter.—J. W. Harrison	101
149, 150. Mr. Stanley's Acknowledgment of the preceding letter and the Supplies	102, 103
151. Returned Kindness.—Dr. Dwight	104
152-154. New-Year's Eve.—After Hans Andersen	105-107
155. Providence Vindicating the Innocent.—W. Smith	108
156, 157. Napoleon Bonaparte.—Emerson	109-111
158. The Warlike Character of the Germans.—Admiral Garbett	112
159. The Way to Master the Temper.—Alcott	113
160, 161. Opinions as to English Education.—S. Smiles	113-115
162. A Royal Judgment.—P. Sadler	116
163. Tacitus.—Sir Walter Scott	117
164. Humility.—Anonymous	117
165-168. Russian Political Prisoners in Banishment.—James Allen	118-122
169-171. Tahiti.—Charles Darwin	123-125
172. Audubon, the American Ornithologist, relates how nearly a thou- sand of his original Drawings were destroyed.—John Audubon	126
173-177. The Battle of Kassassin.—The Correspondent of the London "Standard"	127-132
178. How the Duke of Wellington was Deceived.—Historical Anecdotes	134
179-181. A Letter from Dr. Henry Danson to Mr. John Forster, on Charles Dickens's School-Life	135-137
182. Sir Joseph Paxton.—S. Smiles	138
183-186. Rebecca describes the Siege of Torquilstone to the wounded Ivanhoe.—Sir Walter Scott	139-143
187-190. The Favourite Hares.—William Cowper	144-146

SECT.	PAGE
191. Prince Bismarck's Home.—The Correspondent of the London "Daily News"	147
192. Royal Benevolence.—W. Buck	148
193. Telegraphy among Birds.—Prof. G. Wilson	149
194-196. The Hanse.—J. H. Fyfe	150-152
197. Coming to Terms.—The "Young Ladies' Journal"	153
198. False Pride.—The "New York Herald"	155
199. Anecdotes of Great Statesmen :	
I. Abraham Lincoln.—The "New York Herald"	156
II. Prince Bismarck and Lord Beaconsfield.—The Correspondent of the London "Daily Telegraph"	156
200. The Power of Music.—Manchester "Tit-Bits"	158
201-206. The two Schoolboys, or Eyes and No Eyes.—Dr. Aikin	159-165
207, 208. The King and the Miller.—Chambers's Short Stories	166, 167
209, 210. A Friend in Need.—Chambers's Short Stories	168, 169
211. My First Guinea.—The Rev. Dr. Vaughan	169
212. The Green Vaults in Dresden.—Bayard Taylor	171
213. The Death of Little Nell.—Charles Dickens	172
214. The Childhood of Robert Clive.—Lord Macaulay	173
215, 216. An Adventure with a Lion.—Dr. Livingstone	173, 174
217-220. The Burning of Moscow.—Sir Walter Scott	175-177
221-223. Christmas in Germany.—Bayard Taylor	178-180
224. New-Year's Eve in Germany.—Bayard Taylor	181
225, 226. The Two Robbers.—Dr. Aikin	182
227, 228. A Touching Scene at Sea.—Rev. E. Davies	183, 184
229-232. An Oration on the Power of Habit.—J. B. Gough	185-187
233-242. A Curious Story.—W. J. J. Spry	187-194
243, 244. How the Bank of England was Humbled.—"Tit-Bits"	195, 196
245, 246. Morgan Prussia.—King George the Fourth	197, 198
247. The Terrible Winter of 1784.—After Alexander Dumas	199
248-250. A Story Worth Reading.—St. James's Magazine	201, 203
Appendix :	
A.—Essentials of Construction	205
B.—The Indicative Mood	209
C.—The Subjunctive (or Conjunctive) Mood	210
D.—The Conditional Mood	213
Synopsis of the changes the German Spelling has undergone through the Government Regulations of 1880	215-222
Index to the Grammatical Rules and Idiomatic Renderings	223-228

Specimens of German Handwriting.

Capital Letters.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H,
I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, W,
X, Y, Z.
X, Y, Z.

Small Letters.

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j,
k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s,
t, u, v, w, x, y, z.
s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

XVI⁷ II.

Compound Consonants.

ch, ck, ff, ff, ff, ff, ff, ff, ff.
ch, ck, ss, sz, sch, sp, st, th, tz.

Arm, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn,
Linn, Linn, Linn, Linn.

In der Jugend Probe
auf Jugend.
Morgens früh
Gold im Mund.
Fluß bringt Leut,
Faulheit Not.

Erbildung

Ein Mann setzt die Ge-
müthsart, oft mit sich selbst
zu vergleichen. Einmal einmal
träumen sollte er bemerkt.

Warum vergleichen Sie so
oft mit sich selbst? fragte
er ihn eines Tages. —

Sie will ich Ihnen sagen,
war die Antwort.

Erstaus mag ich gerne
einen vorurtheiligen
Menschen vergleichen hören;
im zweiten mag ich
gerne mit einem vorurtheil-
sigen Menschen reden. —

Wissen ist Macht.

XVI⁺ IV.

Unsere Freunde.

Laß Niemand, welcher lebt, mit
Dankesfluthen Deine That
In den zu küßnen Wallstein
tragen!

Du bist - damit ist's kurz,
mit ihrer Kraft ab thun -
An mannigfalt'ger That,
Lohn

Zu immer mehr und mehr
Dankbarer Handlung reich;
Ist, was wir selbst in jenen
großen Thaten,
Da Tugend und Fortschritt,
wachsen:

Geachtet, ungenüßt und
nie sich selber gleich.

Klopstock.

GERMAN COMPOSITION.

1. Words which, in the English text and in the periphrases of the English text, are printed in *Italics*, must not be translated.
2. When two words are separated by a dash (—) in the Notes, they represent the first and last word of a whole clause in the English text, and the rendering refers to the clause thus indicated.
3. When two or more words are separated by dots (...) in the Notes, the rendering refers to those words only.
4. The sign = is used in the meaning of: 'is equivalent to'.
5. As a rule, the periphrases are given in correct English construction.

Section 1.

A GOOD MAXIM¹.

My maxim is: never to begin² a book without finishing³ it, never to consider⁴ it finished without⁵ knowing it, and to study⁶ it with⁷ a whole mind.—SIR THOMAS BUXTON.

1, Grundsatz, m. 2, to begin, anfangen. When the **Infinitive** is used either subjectively or objectively, it is generally preceded by the preposition **zu**, and is called **Supine**. Comp. S. 78, N. 14, 1. To form the **Supine Present** of compound separable verbs, like anfangen, we must place the preposition **zu** between the separable prefix and the verb. The **Supine** must be used here. See App. § 1. 3, to finish, beendigen. The **Supine** is generally used for rendering the **English Gerund** (i.e. the verbal in -ing) when the latter is governed by a preposition, though, sometimes, this form may be rendered by the help of the subordinative conjunction **daß** and a finite verb (i.e. one with a personal termination); as—

He judges *without understanding* anything about the matter.

Er urtheilt, ohne etwas von der Sache zu verstehen, or ohne daß er etwas von der Sache versteht.

Use the **Supine**, which is always to be placed at the end of the clause. 4, To consider a thing finished, eine Sache als beendigt betrachten. The pronoun 'it' should begin the clause. See App. § 2. 5, without—it, ohne mit dem Inhalt desselben vertraut zu sein. 6, to study, studieren. 7, with—mind = with undivided attention.

Section 2.

WHAT IS ETERNITY?

The following question was¹ put in writing² to a boy³ in the deaf-and-dumb school⁴ at Paris: "What is eternity?" "It is the life-time of the Almighty," was the answer.—REV. R. K. ARVINE.

1, Here the verb is in the Passive Voice. Remember that the **German Passive Voice** is formed by the auxiliary **werden**. The verb is in the **Passive Voice** whenever the subject is suffering the action expressed by the verb; as—

The castle *was built* in the year 1609. Das Schloß wurde im Jahre 1609 erbaut.

To put a question to a person, einem eine Frage vorlegen. 2, in writing, schriftlich, which place before the p. p. (App. § 1). 3, boy=pupil. 4, Taubstummenanstalt, f.; render 'in the' by the gen. of the def. art.; at=in.

Section 3.

THE ACTION¹ OF² WATER.

The action of water on³ our food⁴ is very important. There⁵ would be no carrying of food into the system but for the agency of water. It dissolves everything⁶ that⁷ we take⁸, and nothing⁹ that we take as food can¹⁰ become nutriment that¹¹ is not dissolved in water.—DR. LANKESTER.

1, 'action', here = operation, Wirkung, f. 2, Use the gen. of the def. art. The definite article is always required before nouns representing the whole of a given class, and before abstract nouns taken in a general sense. 3, on = upon. 4, food = victuals, Speisen, pl. 5, This sentence must be construed in a somewhat different way; say: 'Without the agency (Vermittelung, f.) of water, no food (Nahrung, f.) would be conveyed into the body,' würde dem Körper keine Nahrung zugeführt werden. 6, everything = all. 7, 'that', here was. The indefinite relative pronoun *was* is the pronoun generally required after the indefinite numerals *alles*, *etwas*, *manches*, *nichts*, *viel*, and *wenig*, after the indefinite demonstrative pronoun *das*, and also after a superlative used substantively; as *Das Schönste, was ich habe*. 8, 'To take', when used of food, may be rendered by *essen*, *trinken*, or *genießen*, which latter verb should be used here. 9, 'nothing—food', may be briefly rendered by 'keine genossene Speise'. 10, can — nutriment = can serve as nutriment (*Ernährung*, f.). The verb *dienen* requires the prep. *zu*, which governs the dat. and must here be contracted with the def. art. into *zur*; see N. 2. 11, that—water = before (*esse*, see App. § 17) the same (f.) is dissolved in water.

Section 4.

OF¹ WHAT USE IS IT?

When² Franklin made his discovery of the identity³ of lightning³ and electricity³, it⁴ was sneered at⁵, and *people* asked: "Of what use is it?" To⁶ which his apt reply was: "What is the use of a child?—It may⁷ become a man!"—S. SMILES.

1, Of—it, *Wozu nützt es?* 2, 'When', referring to definite time of the Past, must always be rendered by '*als*'. 3, of the identity, *von der Identität*, f.; see S. 3, N. 2. 4, When the agent from which the action proceeds is not mentioned, the **English Passive Voice** is often rendered by a **reflective verb**, or by the indefinite pronoun *man* and a verb in the **Active Voice**; as—

At last the book *was found*.

Englisch { fand sich } das Buch.
 { fand man }

Say 'people (man) sneered at it.' 5, A. To sneer at something, *über etwas spotten*; B. 'at it' = there at, *darüber*. The English pronouns 'it', 'them',

5, A. To sneer at something, *über etwas spotten*; B. 'at it' = there at, *darüber*. The English pronouns 'it', 'them',

'that', and 'those', dependent on a preposition governing in German the dative or accusative, are generally to be rendered by the pronominal adverb 'da' in combination with a corresponding preposition. This is always the case when 'it' and 'that', in connection with a preposition are used indefinitely, and frequently when either of these pronouns refers to a noun representing an inanimate object or an abstract idea. The letter r is inserted between the adverb da and the preposition, whenever the latter begins with a vowel.

6, To—was = Upon this (Hierauf) he (inverted constr., see App. § 14) gave the following striking (treffend) answer. 7, may = can; to become a man, zum Manne werden.

Section 5.

WEALTH¹.

Wealth, after all³, is² but a relative thing: for he who has⁴ little, and wants⁵ still less, is richer than he who has much, and wants still more.—REV. C. COTTON.

1, wealth, Reichthum, m., see S. 3, N. 2. 2, When the subject, which may be preceded by its attributes, occupies the first place in a principal clause, either the copula or the verb must follow immediately. 3, after all . . . but, doch immer nur; a—thing, etwas Relatives. 4, to have = to possess. 5, 'to want', here bedürfen.

Section 6.

MENDELSSOHN IN BIRMINGHAM.

When¹ Mendelssohn, on² the first performance of his³ 'Elijah' in Birmingham, was about⁴ to enter⁵ the orchestra, he⁶ said laughingly to one of his friends and critics⁷: "Stick⁸ your claws into me! Don't tell⁹ me what you like, but¹⁰ what you don't like!"—ATHENÆUM.

1, See S. 4, N. 2. 2, The preposition 'on', signifying 'on the occasion of', must be rendered by 'bei'. 'Performance', Aufführung, f. 3, Use the gen. of the def. art.; Elijah, Elias. 4, 'to be about', im Begriff sein. 'To be about' may also be rendered by the auxiliary verb of mood wollen and the infinitive of another verb; as—

I was just about to leave, when the letter arrived. Ich war gerade im Begriff abzureisen (or Ich wollte gerade abreisen), als der Brief ankam.

5, 'to enter', betreten, see S. 1, N. 2. 6, Since the subordinate clause precedes the principal clause, the construction of the principal clause must be inverted, see App. § 15. 7, to—critics, say 'to a friend and critic', Rezensent, m. 8, 'Stick—me!' This metaphor must be rendered freely by: Baden Sie mich nur tüchtig an! 9, tell = say; to like = to please, with the dat. of the person. 10, The co-ordinative conjunction 'but' must be rendered by 'sondern', when, after a negative statement, the subsequent clause expresses an idea altogether contrary to that of its antecedent.

Section 7.

TO FORGIVE IS¹ TO FORGET.

"I can forgive, but I cannot forget," is² only another way of saying: "I will not forgive." A wrong once forgiven³ ought⁴ to be like⁵ a cancelled note⁶, torn in two and burned up, so⁷ that it never can be shown against the man.—REV. H. W. BEECHER.

1, 'to be', here = to signify, heißen. 2, is — saying = signifies only in (mit) other words. 'Das Wort' has two plural forms with a different meaning to each: die Wörter, single, unconnected words; die Worte, words connected into speech.

3, A. Whilst the English Perfect Participle (commonly called Past Participle) is placed both before and after the noun it qualifies, the German Past Participle used attributively, as a rule, precedes the qualified noun; as—

We met with a ship bound for Bremen.

Wir trafen ein nach Bremen bestimmtes Schiff.

B. Clauses containing a Perfect Participle, however, may also be rendered by the help of a relative pronoun. Thus rendered, the preceding sentence would read:

Wir trafen ein Schiff, welches nach Bremen bestimmt war;

but the first rendering is certainly more concise than the second, and it is to be preferred in all cases where the attributive construction would not be too lengthy. 'A wrong once forgiven', say 'A forgiven wrong', and mark that: **When Participles are used attributively, and precede the noun they qualify, they must be inflected like adjectives.**

4, render 'ought' by the imperfect of sollen. 5, like, wie.

6, note, Schuldschein, m.; to tear in two, zerreißen; to burn up, verbrennen. According to the rule given in N. 3, the participles of these two verbs have to be placed before the noun 'note', which they qualify.

7, 'so—man', say 'which never again can be used against the debtor'. According to the hint given in S. 2, N. 1, the verb is in the passive voice, and since the clause is a subordinate one, the verbs must stand at the end of the clause. Place the p.p. first, and the copula (can) last.

Section 8.

WHAT IS CAPITAL?

What is capital? Is¹ it what a man has? Is² it counted (App. 31) by³ pounds and pence, stocks⁴ and shares⁵, by houses and lands⁶? No! Capital⁷ is not what a man has, but what a man is. Character⁸ is⁹ capital; honour¹⁰ is capital.—REV. DR. MACDUFF.

1, 'Is—has?' say 'Does it consist in that which (see S. 3, N. 7) we possess?' The prep. 'in' here governs the dat. Read again S. 4, N. 5, B, and notice that, when the demonstrative pronouns 'that' and 'those' are followed by a relative pronoun, they cannot be rendered by the adverb 'da' in combination with a preceding preposition; as—

We laughed at that which (or at what) you told us.

Wir lachten über das, was Sie uns erzählten.

2, See S. 2, N. 1; 'to count', here zählen.

3, by = nach.

4, Wertpapiere.

5, Aktien.

6, Ländereien.

7, 'Capital—is'. The literal translation of this sentence would read very awkwardly in German, say 'Our capital does not consist in that which we possess, but (S. 6, N. 10) in that which we are.'

8, Character = A good reputation.

9, 'is', here ist.

10, Ehrenhaftigkeit, f.

Section 9.

A GOOD RULE¹.

A French minister, who was alike² remarkable³ for his⁴ despatch of business and his constant⁵ attendance at places of public amusement,

being⁶ asked how he contrived to combine both *objects*, replied: "Simply⁷ by never postponing till to-morrow what should be done⁸ to-day."—
S. SMILES.

1, Lebensregel, f. 2, 'alike ... and', sowohl ... wie auch. 3, to be remarkable for something, sich durch etwas auszeichnen. 4, his—business, schnelle Erledigung seiner Amtsgeschäfte. 5, constant—amusement, regelmäßiger Besuch öffentlicher Vergnügungsorte. The prep. durch, which requires the acc., must be repeated at the beginning of this clause. 6, 'being—replied'; this sentence requires an entirely different construction in German, say 'answered upon the question, how (App. § 16) he made it possible to combine both (neuter sing.)'. To combine, vereinigen. The verb 'to make' must be placed in the Present Subjunctive, since the clause contains an indirect question. Read carefully App. §§ 28 and 30. 7, Simply—to-morrow, Einfach dadurch, daß ich nie auf morgen verschiebe. 8, 'to do', here erledigen. See S. 2, N. 1, and place the verbs in the order pointed out in S. 7, N. 7.

Section 10.

ENGLAND UNDER THE RULE¹ OF² QUEEN VICTORIA.

The peace, the freedom, the happiness³, and the order which Victoria's rule guarantees⁴, are⁵ part of my birthright as an Englishman, and I bless⁶ God for my share⁷! Where else shall⁸ I find such liberty⁹ of action, thought, speech¹⁰, or¹¹ laws which protect me so well¹²?—
W. M. THACKERAY.

1, rule = reign. 2, Use the gen. of the def. art. The definite article is used in German before names of persons when preceded by an adjective or a common name; as—

Der arme Fritz!

Der Kaiser Wilhelm.

Poor Fritz!

Emperor William.

3, happiness = well-being, Wohlfahrt, f. 'Victoria's rule', say 'the reign of Queen Victoria'. 4, to guarantee, gewährleisten. 5, are part = form a part. 6, I bless = I thank. 7, share = lot. 8, shall = can. 9, Freiheit des Handelns. Repeat the article before the two following nouns. In German the articles, possessive adjective pronouns, and other determinative words must be repeated when they are used in reference to several nouns of different gender or number, whilst in English they are only required before the first noun. 10, Insert 'and' before 'speech', Rede, f., and place the verb finden immediately after that noun. 11, Substitute the words 'and where' for the word 'or'. 12, gut.

Section 11.

CONCENTRATION OF POWERS.

The weakest living creature¹, by² concentrating his powers on a single object, can³ accomplish⁴ something. The strongest⁵, by dispersing his over many, may fail to accomplish anything⁶. The drop, by continually⁷ falling⁸, bores⁹ its passage through the hardest rock. The hasty⁹ torrent rushes¹⁰ over it with hideous uproar, and leaves no trace behind.—T. CARLYLE.

1, creature, Wesen, n.; strengthen the superlative of the adjective by placing 'aller' before it, forming one compound expression, analogous to: Die aller-

schönste Blume, the finest flower (of all). 2, The copula 'can' must be placed immediately after the subject and its attributes, as has been pointed out in S. 5, N. 2. 3, 'by concentrating his powers', *durch Konzentration seiner Kräfte*; to accomplish something, *etwas zustande bringen*. Use the adverbial expression 'at least' before 'something', which will give more force to the German rendering. 4, The strongest—fail, *Dem Stärksten hingegen wird es durch Zersplitterung seiner Kräfte nicht gelingen*. 5, anything, *auch nur das Geringste*. 6, to bore one's passage, *sich einen Weg bohren*. Place the verb according to S. 5, N. 2; the adverbial clause 'by continually falling' must follow it. 7, To render 'falling', form a noun of the verb 'fallen'. The German language makes frequent use of the **Infinitive Present** of verbs to form **abstract nouns**, whilst the English language uses the Verbal in -ing for that purpose. Such nouns are always of the neuter gender; as *das Gehen*, going; *das Essen und Trinken*, eating and drinking. 8, continual, *unablässig*, adj. 9, hasty, *ungestüm*; torrent, *Strom*, m. 10, to rush over something, *über etwas hinwegstürzen*; 'rushes—uproar', say 'rushes with hideous (*entsetzlich*) uproar (*Getöse*) over the same.'

Section 12.

COOLNESS¹.

Of the Duke of Wellington's² perfect coolness on³ the most trying occasions, Colonel Gurwood gives⁴ this instance. He was⁵ once in great danger of suffering⁶ ship-wreck. It was bed-time⁷ when (S. 4, N. 2) the captain of the vessel came to him, and said: "It will soon be *all over*⁸ with us!" "Very well," answered the Duke, "then I (App. § 14) need not (App. § 12) take off⁹ my boots!"—W. C. HAZLITT.

1, *Kaltblütigkeit*, f. 2, Place the genitive after the governing noun, and say: 'Of (Von) the perfect coolness of the Duke of Wellington.' Perfect = great. 3, 'on—occasions' = in the most dangerous (*gefährlich*) situations. 4, to give = to relate. See App. § 14 for the construction. 'This instance' = *the* following example. 5, 'to be', here *sich befinden*. 6, Construe according to S. 1, N. 3. 7, *Schlafenszeit*, f. 8, *vorüber*. 9, to take off, *ausziehen*, see S. 1, N. 2.

Section 13.

RELIGIOUS TOLERATION¹.

When² certain persons attempted³ to persuade Stephen⁴, King of Poland, to constrain⁵ some of his subjects, who⁶ were of a different religion, to embrace⁷ his, he said⁸ to them: "I⁹ am king of men, and not of¹⁰ consciences¹¹. The¹² dominion of conscience belongs exclusively to God."—REV. R. K. ARVINE.

1, *Religionsübung*, f. 2, 'When', here? 3, attempted to = would, *impf. of wollen*. 4, say 'the king Stephen of Poland'. *König Stephan von Bathori regierte von 1576–1586*. 5, *zwingen*. Place the verb after the relative clause, since the **relative pronoun** should follow its antecedent as closely as possible. 6, 'who—religion', say 'who belonged to another religion'. 7, to embrace = to accept. 8, 'to say', here 'to reply', *entgegnen*. 9, I—men = I rule (*herrschen*) over men. 10, of = over. 11, This noun is not used in the plural in German. See S. 3, N. 2. 12, 'The—God', say 'God alone rules over consciences (*sing.*)'.

Section 14.

HOW HUGH MILLER¹ BECAME A² GEOLOGIST.

Hugh Miller's³ curiosity⁴ was⁵ excited by *the* remarkable traces of extinct⁶ sea-animals in⁷ the Old Red Sandstone, on which he worked as *a* quarryman. He inquired⁸, observed, studied, and became *a* geologist. "*It was the necessity*", said he, "*which made⁹ me a quarryer, that taught me to be a geologist.*"—S. SMILES.

1, Hugh Miller wurde am 10^{ten} Oktober 1802 von armen Eltern zu Gromarty in Schottland geboren. Er arbeitete 15 Jahre als gemeiner Steinbrecher, beschäftigte sich jedoch während jener Zeit mit litterarischen und wissenschaftlichen Arbeiten, besonders mit der Geologie, der er ganz neue Bahnen eröffnete. Durch seine Werke hat er sich in der Wissenschaft einen unsterblichen Namen erworben, und als er am 24^{sten} Dezember 1856 starb, verlor Schottland in ihm einen seiner besten Söhne, und die Geologie einen ihrer bereitesten und ergebensten Lehrer. 2, Contrary to English construction, the indefinite article is not used in German in stating the business or profession of a person; as—

He wants to be a soldier.

Er will Soldat werden.

Exception: When the noun denoting the business or profession is preceded by an adjective, the indefinite article is used in German, as in English:

His father was a clever physician.

Sein Vater war ein geschickter Arzt.

3, When a Proper Name is used in the Genitive Case, it is generally placed before the governing noun, as in English: Schiller's poems, Schillers Gedichte. 4, Mißbegierde, f.

5, How is the Passive Voice to be recognised? 'To excite', here lebhaft an'regen; construe accord. to S. 13, N. 5. 6, aus'gestorben. 7, in — Sandstone, in einem alten Rotsandsteinlager; on which = where.

8, 'to inquire', here Nachforschungen anstellen. 9, 'to make' requires here the prep. zu contracted with the def. art.; 'that—geologist', machte mich schließlich auch zum Geologen.

Section 15.

EXTREMES MEET¹.

When Diogenes, during the famous festival² at Olympia³, saw⁴ some young men of Rhodes arrayed⁵ most magnificently, he (App. § 15) exclaimed smiling: "This is pride!" And when, afterwards⁶, he met⁶ with some Lacedæmonians in *a* mean⁷ and sordid⁸ dress, he said: "And this is also pride!"—REV. R. K. ARVINE.

1, Die Extreme berühren sich. 2, the festival at Olympia, die Olympischen Feste. Diese berühmten Feste, auch Olympische Spiele genannt, wurden in jedem fünften Jahre am ersten Vollmond nach der Sonnenwende (Anfang Juli) bei Olympia zu Ehren des Zeus gefeiert. Sie dauerten fünf Tage und bestanden in Wettrennen (zu Wagen, zu Pferd und zu Fuß) und in gymnastischen Spielen aller Art. 3, Contrary to English practice, the comma is, as a rule, not used in German

to enclose adverbs or adverbial clauses of time, manner, and place. 4, 'to see', here erblicken, which place after 'Rhodes'; young men = youths; 'of', here aus; Rhodes, Rhodus. 5, 'arrayed — magnificently'. Turn these words into a relative clause, and say: 'which were most magnificently

(aufs prächtigste) arrayed (schmückten)', according to the rule given in S. 7, N. 3, B. 6, to meet with a person, einem begegnen. Place the subject immediately after 'when'. The Lacedæmonian, der Lacedæmonier. 7, armelig. 8, zerlumpt.

Section 16.

POOR PAY¹.

When the Duke of Marlborough, immediately after the battle of Blenheim², observed³ a soldier leaning⁴ pensively on the butt-end of his musket, he accosted⁵ him thus: "Why so pensive⁶, my friend, after so⁷ glorious a victory?" "It may be glorious⁸," replied the brave fellow, "but⁹ I am thinking that all *the* human blood I¹⁰ have spilled this day¹¹ has only¹² earned me fourpence."—REV. R. K. ARVINE.

1, Armselige Bezahlung. 2, Die Schlacht bei Blindheim (Engl. 'Blenheim') wurde am 13^{ten} August 1704 von dem Herzog von Marlborough in Verbindung mit dem österreichischen Prinzen Eugen gegen die Franzosen gefochten. Blindheim ist ein kleines bayerisches Dorf bei Höchstädt, an der Donau. Die Schlacht wurde zu gunsten der Verbündeten entschieden, und der Herzog von Marlborough erhielt für diesen glänzenden Sieg von der Königin Anna ein prachtvolles Schloß (Blenheim House) bei Woodstock in Oxfordshire zum Geschenk.

3, Place the verb 'observed' after the noun 'soldier'.

4, 'leaning—musket'. This passage must be changed into a relative clause, thus: 'who leant (sich stützen) pensively (gedankenvoll) upon the butt-end (Kolben, m.) of his musket', for: Sentences containing a Present Participle which qualifies a preceding noun or pronoun, are generally turned into relative clauses; as—

The teacher, *noticing* the boy's talent, applied to the prince on his behalf.

Der Lehrer, welcher das Talent des Knaben bemerkte, verwendete sich für ihn bei dem Fürsten.

5, to accost, anreden; thus, folgendermaßen.

6, here 'nachdenkend' in order to avoid the repetition of the same word.

7, so ... a, ein ... so. 8, Make the word 'glorious' emphatic by placing it at the head of the clause, and see App. § 14. Insert the adverb 'wohl' between the subject and the verb 'be', which will render the sentence more idiomatic.

9, but — thinking, aber ich bedenke.

10, Supply the relative pronoun 'which', for: The relative pronoun can never be omitted in German; to spill, vergießen.

11, this day = to-day. 12, This work has only earned me a shilling, diese Arbeit hat mir nur einen Schilling eingebracht.

Section 17.

THE WORLD IS A LOOKING-GLASS.

We¹ may be pretty certain that persons² whom all the world treat ill, deserve entirely³ the treatment they⁴ get. The world is a looking-glass, and gives⁵ back to every man *the reflection* of his own face. Frown⁶ at it, and⁷ it will in turn look sourly upon you; laugh⁸ at it and with it, and⁹ it is a jolly, kind companion¹⁰.—W. M. THACKERAY.

1, We — certain. Wir können uns ziemlich sicher darauf verlassen.

2, persons — ill = those who have to suffer from everybody.

3, vollkommen.

4, they get, welche ihnen zuteil wird.

5, to give back the reflection = to reflect, zurückwerfen; every man, jeder; face = image.

6, to frown at a person, here 'einen mürrisch anblicken'; use the second pers. sing.

7, and — you, und sie wird auch auf dich verdrießlich herniedersehen.

8, 'Laugh at it' seems to be used here in the sense of: 'Smile at it'. Say: 'Smile at it, laugh with it', etc. 'To smile at a person', here 'einen freundlich anblicken'.

9, 'and — is', say: 'and it will be for thee (dir)'.

10, Gefährtin.

Section 18.

GIVE¹ THE HONOUR TO GOD ALONE.

A lady applied² to the worthy philanthropist³ Richard Reynolds on behalf of a little orphan boy. After he⁴ had (App. § 17) given liberally⁵, she said: "When⁶ he is old enough, I (App. § 15) will teach⁷ him to thank his benefactor." "Stop⁸," said the good man, "thou art mistaken⁹. We do not thank the clouds for rain (S. 3, N. 2). Teach¹⁰ him to look higher, and thank Him¹¹ who giveth both the clouds and the rain."—
REV. R. K. ARVINE.

1, Say 'Give God alone the honour'. 2, to apply to a person *on behalf* of somebody, *sich bei einem für jemand verwenden*. 3, Menschenfreund, m. 4, To avoid ambiguity turn the pron. 'he' here by 'Reynolds'. 5, 'liberally', here reichlich. 6, The conjunction 'when', used in the sense of 'when-ever', and referring to indefinite time, must be rendered by 'wenn' (compare S. 4, N. 2); as—

When (whenever) my old teacher came to Hamburg, he always stayed with me. Wenn mein alter Lehrer nach Hamburg kam, wohnte er stets bei mir.

7, The verb 'lehren', to teach, requires the accusative of the person. Render the sentence 'I — benefactor' by 'I will teach him to be thankful to his benefactor'. 8, Halt! 9, to be mistaken, *sich irren*. 10, Teach — higher, Lehre ihn höher bilden. 11, The pronoun 'Him' is here used as a demonstr. pron.; 'both ... and', sowohl ... wie auch; 'to give', here = to send.

Section 19.

HOW DID CUVIER¹ BECOME A NATURALIST?

When young (S. 10, N. 2) Cuvier was one day² strolling³ along the sands near Fiquainville, in Normandy⁴, he observed a cuttle-fish lying⁵ stranded on the beach. He was attracted⁶ by the curious object, took it home to⁷ dissect, and⁸ began the study of the mollusca, which ended in his becoming one of the greatest among natural historians.—S. SMILES.

1, G. D. Cuvier, berühmter französischer Naturforscher (1769–1832), erhob die vergleichende Anatomie zuerst zur Wissenschaft. 2, one day, eines Tages; one morning, eines Morgens; one evening, eines Abends, etc. 3, to stroll along the sands, an der Küste umher schlendern; 'near', here von. 4, die Normandie, always used with the def. art. 5, 'lying — beach', say 'which the sea had washed (spülen) upon the beach. (See App. § 17.) 6, to be attracted by something, *sich durch etwas an'ge'ogen fühlen*; 'object', here 'creature'. 7, The Supine is used to express purpose, and must be employed whenever the English 'to' is used in the meaning of 'in order to', or 'for the purpose of'; clauses of this sort are generally introduced by the conjunction 'um'; as—

I will take this animal home to dissect. Ich will dies Tier mit nach Hause nehmen, um es zu sezieren.

8, 'and — historian', say 'began (an'fangen) to study the mollusca, and became finally (schliesslich) one of the greatest natural historians'. Mollusca, Mollusken or Weichtiere.

Section 20.

ON THE CHOICE OF BOOKS¹.

In literature (S. 3, N. 2) I am fond² of confining myself to the best company, which consists chiefly of old acquaintances³ with whom I am desirous of becoming more intimate, and I suspect⁴ that, nine⁵ times out of ten, it is more profitable⁶, if not more agreeable, to read an old book over again, than⁷ to read a new one for the first time.—LORD DUDLEY.

1, 'of books', here *der Lektüre*.

2, *A*. The verbs 'to be fond of' and 'to like' are often rendered by the auxiliary verb of mood 'mögen', either with or without the adverb 'gerne' or 'gern' (willingly), which is used to intensify its signification; as—

I am very fond of the German language.

Ich mag die deutsche Sprache sehr gern.

Are you fond of walking?

Mögen Sie gerne spazieren gehen?

I don't like this child.

Ich mag dies Kind nicht.

B. But the adverb *gerne* or *gern* in itself denotes liking and fondness, and is therefore the general translation of the verbs 'to be fond of' or 'to like' when used with the infinitive of other verbs; as—

I like to dance.

Ich tanze gern.

We are fond of confining ourselves to a few old books.

Wir beschränken uns gern auf einige wenige alte Bücher.

Construe the above clause accord. to the last example given. 3, acquaintances = friends; I am desirous of becoming = I wish to become (App. § 19). The insertion of the adverb 'noch' before the comparative will greatly improve the rendering of this clause. 4, to suspect = to believe. 5, 'nine times out of ten' may be briefly rendered by the adverbial expression *meistenteils*, which place immediately after the subject of the subordinate clause. 6, profitable, *nützlich*; 'if — agreeable', say 'if not even (gar) more agreeable; 'over again', here *noch einmal*. 7, 'than — time', say 'than to occupy oneself (*sich beschäftigen*) with a new one'. This periphrase is necessary to avoid a monotonous repetition in German.

Section 21.

AN APPARENTLY INSIGNIFICANT FACT¹ OFTEN² LEADS TO GREAT RESULTS.

When Galvani³ discovered that a frog's leg⁴ twitched when placed in contact with different metals, it⁵ could scarcely have been imagined that so apparently insignificant a fact would ever lead (App. § 17) to important results. Yet therein lay the germ of⁶ the Electric Telegraph, which⁷ binds the intelligence of continents together, and probably before many years elapse will⁸ "put⁹ a girdle round the globe."—S. SMILES.

1, *Thatsache*, f.

'result', *Resultat*, n.

2, See S. 5, N. 2, and place the adverb after the verb;

3, Luigi Galvani, italienischer Anatom, entdeckte 1780 den

Galvanismus. 'When — discovered', say 'When Galvani made the discovery'.

4, 'leg', here *Schenkel*, m.; to twitch, in *Zuckungen* geraten; when placed = when

(S. 18, N. 6) the same was (S. 2, N. 1) brought. 5, it — imagined, hätte

man sich kaum vorstellen können; 'that so apparently ... a', daß eine scheinbar so.

6, zum. 7, which — together, welcher die Geister der Kontinente mit einander

verbindet; before — elapse = in a few years. 8, See App. § 16. 9, to

put a girdle round the globe, einen Gürtel rings um die Erde ziehen. 'Rings um

die Erde zieh' ich einen Gürtel in viermal zehn Minuten.' Puck, Sommernachtstraum.

Section 22.

OATS¹.

Oats are (S. 2, N. 1) chiefly used whole² as food for horses. Ground³ into meal, they are used in some countries (especially in Scotland) for⁴ making porridge and cakes. As⁵ a plant, it is extremely hardy, and grows where neither wheat nor barley could⁶ be made productive. For⁷ this reason it is a favourite crop in mountainous countries and moist climates—for example in Scotland and Wales. It (S. 5, N. 2) also grows luxuriantly in Australia, Northern⁸ and Central Asia, and in North America.—NELSON'S READERS.

1, Der Hafer, which noun is never used in the plural. 2, whole, ungemahlen; to use, benutzen; food for horses, Pferdefutter, n. 3, Ground—meal, zu Mehl vermahlen; they—used = one uses (gebrauchen) it (m.). See S. 4, N. 4; 'country', here Gegenb. 4, for—cakes, um Mehlsuppe und Kuchen daraus zu machen. 5, 'As—hardy', say 'The plant is extremely hardy (fräftig)'. 6, could—productive = would thrive. 7, For—reason, Daher, adv., App. § 14. Render the pron. 'it' by 'der Hafer'; a favourite crop, das Hauptgetreide. 8, in Nord- und Mittelasien.

Section 23.

SPRING-BLOSSOMS¹.

The blossoms of Spring are as brief² as *they are* beautiful. For³ a short time they embellish the country, spreading⁴, as it were, a bridal veil over every⁵ tree and hedge. It seems, indeed⁶, as if Nature had given them existence only to (S. 19, N. 7) show their worth, and then to destroy them. Yet⁷ they are "fair pledges of a fruitful tree," and teach us the solemn⁸ lesson—that⁹ everything lovely on earth is destined soon to perish, and¹⁰ like them to glide into the grave.—REV. E. M. DAVIES.

1, Frühlingsblüthen. 2, vergänglich. 3, Auf; to embellish, schmücken. 4, spreading = and spread; as it were, gleichsam. 5, 'every—hedge', say 'hedges and trees'. 6, wirklich; as—only, als hätte die Natur ihnen nur das Dasein verliehen. 7, 'Yet—tree', say 'They are however the lovely messengers (Vorboten) of a fruitful (fruchtreich) tree'. 8, solemn lesson, ernste Wahrheit. 9, that—perish, daß alles Schöne auf Erden der Vergänglichkeit geweiht ist. 10, 'and—grave', say 'and like the blossoms must (App. § 18) glide (sinken) into an early grave'.

Section 24.

THE WINKING¹ EYELID.

The² object of winking is a very important one. An outside³ window soon (S. 5, N. 2) gets soiled⁴ and dirty, and a careful shopkeeper⁵ cleans his windows every morning. But our eye-windows must⁶ never have so much as a speck or spot upon them; and the winking eyelid⁷ is the busy apprentice who, not once a day, but⁸ all the day, keeps the living glass⁹ clean; so that, after all¹⁰, we are little worse off than the fishes, who¹¹ bathe their eyes and wash their faces every moment.—PROF. G. WILSON.

1, Das Öffnen und Schließen der Augenlider. 2, 'The — one', say 'The opening and closing of the eyelid (pl.) is of great importance. 3, outside window = street window. 4, trübe. 5, Ladenhüter; supply the adv. 'therefore' after the verb 'cleans', and place the object last of all. 6, 'must — them', say 'must (dürfen) never suffer (erleiden) even (selbst) the smallest speck, the least dimness (Trübung). 7, das sich öffnende und schließende Augenlid; 'apprentice', here Ladenbursche. 8, but — day, nein, den ganzen Tag hindurch. 9, Augenglas. 10, genau betrachtet; the subject should be placed immediately after the conjunction 'that'; little = not much; to be badly off, schlimm daran sein. 11, who — moment, welche Augen und Gesicht jeden Augenblick haben und waschen.

Section 25.

A GOOD EXAMPLE.

It is reported that, one day (S. 19, N. 2), the¹ two great philosophers Aristippus² and Æschines had fallen at variance³. The⁴ following day, however, Aristippus came to⁵ Æschines, and said: "Shall⁶ we be friends?" "Yes, with⁷ all my heart!" answered Æschines. "Remember⁸," continued Aristippus, "that⁹ though I am your elder, yet I sought for peace." "True¹⁰," replied Æschines, "and for this¹¹ I will always acknowledge you to be the more worthy man, for¹² I began the strife, and you the peace."—REV. J. BURROUGHS.

1, Place the subject immediately after the conj. 'that'. 2, Aristippus aus Cyrene wurde (380 v. Chr.) Stifter der cyrenaischen Philosophenschule, welche die Lehre aufstellte, daß das höchste Glück des Menschen im sinnlichen und geistigen Vergnügen zu suchen sei. Aristippus war ein Zeitgenosse des Socrates und der einzige Philosoph seiner Zeit, der sich seine Vorträge mit Geld bezahlen ließ. Æschines war ein Nebenhändler und Gegner des Demosthenes, wurde (389 v. Chr.) zu Athen geboren, lebte später zu Rhodus und siedelte endlich nach Samos über, wo er (314 v. Chr.) starb. 3, to fall at variance, sich überwerfen. 4, The = On the; however, jedoch, which must not be placed between commas. 5, Use here the def. art. contracted with the prep. zu into zum, for: The def. art. is often used to mark the Gen. Dat. and Acc. of proper names. 6, Shall = Will. 7, von ganzem Herzen! 8, Erwinnere dich daran. 9, Say 'that I have sought for peace, although I am the elder'; to seek for peace, um den Frieden nachsuchen. 10, Say 'That is true'. 11, deshalb, adv. (App. § 14). He acknowledged you to be the more worthy man (of us two), Er erkannte dich als den Würdigeren von uns beiden an; construe according to this example, and supply the expletive 'auch' after the object 'you'. 12, denn ich war der erste zum Streit, und du zum Frieden.

Section 26.

DESCRIPTION OF A GLACIER.

I must now explain to you¹ what a glacier is. You see before you² thirty or forty mountain-peaks, and between these peaks what³ seem to you frozen rivers. The snow, from⁴ time to time melting and dripping down the sides of the mountain, and congealing in the elevated hollows between the peaks, forms a half-fluid mass, a river of ice⁵, which is called (S. 4, N. 4) a glacier. As⁶ the whole mass lies upon a slanting surface, and is not entirely solid throughout, it⁷ is continually pushing, with a gradual but imperceptible motion, down⁸ into the valley below.—MRS. BEECHER STOWE.

- 1, Use the 2nd pers. sing. 2, Place the words 'before you' after the object. 3, glaubst du zu Eis erstarrte Flüsse zu erblicken. 4, which (App. § 16) from time to time melts, drips down on the mountain-sides (Bergabhänge), and congeals (gefrieren), etc.; see S. 16, N. 4. Supply the adverb *wieder* before the verb 'congeals'. The elevated hollow, die höher gelegene Fels-spalte. 5, Eisstrom, m. 6, As=Since, da (App. § 16); to be entirely solid throughout, durch und durch fest sein. 7, it — pushing, so senkt sie sich fortwährend; with a ... but, mit einer zwar ... doch. 8, down — below, in das unten liegende Thal hinab.

Section 27.

WITHOUT¹ PAINS NO GAINS.

It was one of the characteristic qualities of Charles James Fox², that³ he was thoroughly pains-taking in all that he did. When⁴ appointed Secretary of State, being⁵ piqued at some observation as to his bad writing, he actually took⁶ a writing-master, and wrote copies like a schoolboy until he had sufficiently improved himself. Though⁷ a corpulent man, he⁸ was wonderfully active at picking up tennis-balls, and⁹ when asked how he contrived to do so, he playfully replied: "Because¹⁰ I am a very pains-taking man." The same accuracy which he bestowed upon trifling matters¹¹, was displayed by him in things of greater importance; and¹² he acquired his reputation by "neglecting nothing."—S. SMILES.

- 1, Ohne Mühe kein Gewinn. 2, Ich möchte vorschlagen zu übersetzen: 'of the famous Ch. J. Fox', weil dadurch das Verhältnis des Genitivs ganz klar ausgedrückt wird. Charles James Fox (1749–1806) ward schon 1768 Mitglied des Unterhauses, 1772 Lord des Schatzes, und bildete 1783 mit North und Portland ein Ministerium, welches jedoch bald dem Ministerium Pitt weichen mußte. Er begann darauf mit Burke und andern eine großartige parlamentarische Opposition gegen Pitt und kämpfte von 1792–97 fast allein gegen eine starke Majorität. Im Jahre 1806, kurz vor seinem Tode, wurde er mit Granville nochmals als Staatsruder berufen. 3, daß er sich in allem, was er that, die größte Mühe gab. 4, When he was appointed (see N. 7). The verbs *machen* (to make), *ernennen* (to appoint), and *erwählen* (to choose, to elect), and other verbs denoting choosing or appointing, require in German the prep. *zu* contracted with the def. art., whilst in English they govern *two* Nominatives in the Passive Voice; as—

Der Freund meines Vaters ist zum Abgeordneten erwählt worden. My father's friend has been elected a member of Parliament.

- 5, being — writing. This clause must be rendered in an altogether different form; let us say 'and felt hurt by an observation as to (über) his bad hand-writing'. To feel hurt by something, sich durch etwas verletzt fühlen. The p. p. must be placed? 6, 'to take', here engagieren; 'actually', here faktisch (see App. § 15); to write copies, sich im Schönschreiben üben; improved himself = improved his hand-writing.

7, Though he was. Grammatical distinctness, as a rule, requires that the subject and copula, which after certain conjunctions are so frequently omitted in English, should be clearly expressed in German. 8, When a subordinate clause, beginning with one of the conjunctions *da*, *obgleich*, *weil*, and *wenn*, precedes a principal clause, which is often done for the sake of emphasis, the principal clause is generally introduced by the adverbial conjunction *so* (so, thus, therefore); as—

Da es regnet, so können (App. § 15) wir nicht ausgehen. As it is raining, we cannot go out.

'He — balls', so war er im Auffangen der Bälle beim Tennisspiele doch merkwürdig gewandt. 9. 'and — so', say 'and when (S. 18, N. 6) one asked him how he did (machen) it'. The verb *machen* should be used in the Pres. Subj., since the clause contains an indirect question (App. §§ 28 and 30). Playfully, scherzend. 10, Weil ich mir stets die größte Mühe gebe. 11, trifling matters, Kleinigkeiten; 'was — importance', say 'he showed also in more important matters' (Angelegenheiten). 12, and — nothing, und er erwarb sich seinen Ruf dadurch, daß er nichts für zu gering erachtete.

Section 28.

THE MAGNA CHARTA¹.

The great-grandsons of² those who had fought under William, and the great-grandsons of those who had fought under Harold, began to³ draw near to each other in friendship, and the first pledge of their reconciliation was the⁴ Great Charter, won⁵ by their united exertions, and framed for their common benefit. Here commences the history of the English nation. The history of the preceding events⁶ is the history of wrongs inflicted⁷ and sustained by various tribes, which, indeed⁸, all dwelt on English ground, but⁹ which regarded each other with aversion such as¹⁰ has scarcely ever existed between communities separated¹¹ by physical barriers.—MACAULAY, HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

1, Die 'Magna Charta' ist der am 19^{ten} Juni 1215 dem König Johann ohne Land abgerungene Staatsgrundvertrag, welcher als Grundlage der englischen Verfassung gilt. 2, 'of those — Harold'. These two clauses are best rendered in a contracted form, thus: 'of the men who had fought under W. and H.' 3, to draw near to each other, sich einander nähern; in friendship, freundschaftlich, adv. 4, die Magna Charta. 5, The two clauses containing the two p. ps. must be turned into one contracted relative clause, as explained in S. 7, N. 3, B. Use the verbs in the Impf. of the Passive Voice. To frame, entwerfen. 6, Ereignis, n. 7, The two p. ps. qualifying 'wrongs' (Unbilden) should be placed before that noun, as explained in S. 7, N. 3, A; of, von; to inflict, verüben; to sustain, erleiden; by — tribes, verschiedener Volksstämme. 8, zwar; on = upon; ground = soil. 9, but — aversion = but (jedoch) showed such an aversion against one another. The Article, when used in connection with adjectives and adverbs, stands in German generally before those words: such an aversion, einen solchen Widerwillen. Since the clause to be translated is in reality but a part of the preceding relative clause, which it completes, the verb must be placed? 10, such as, wie, after which supply the pron. er, to give more distinctness to the rendering; to exist, bestehen; communities = nations. 11, welche durch natürliche Grenzen von einander getrennt sind.

Section 29.

HONESTY.

Mr.¹ Denham had been in business at Bristol, had failed², compounded, and gone³ to America. There⁴, by a close application to business as a merchant, he acquired a plentiful⁵ fortune in a few years. Returned⁶ to England, he invited his old creditors to an entertainment, at which he thanked them for the easy⁷ terms (S. 16, N. 10) they had favoured⁸ him with, and, though the guests had expected nothing but a good treat, every⁹ man, at the first remove, found to his astonishment a cheque

under his plate for¹⁰ the full amount of the unpaid remainder, with interest.—DR. B. FRANKLIN.

1, 'Mr. — Bristol', translate 'Mr. D. had had a business at (in) B.', and place the object after the adverbial circumstance of place. 2, to fail (in business) fallieren; to compound, accordieren. Verbs from the Latin with the termination ieren do not admit of the prefix or augment ge in the Past Participle, but follow in all other respects the weak or modern form of conjugation. 3, say 'and was gone to America'. The verb gehen is always construed with sein, which auxiliary is especially used with **Intransitive Verbs** denoting a Passive State of the subject, a change from one State into another, or a Motion, if the place to which the motion is directed, or from which it proceeds, is either expressed or understood. 4, The words 'he acquired' (erlangen) should, in an inverted form (App. § 14), follow the adverb 'There'; 'by — merchant', durch unablässige kaufmännische Thätigkeit. 5, plentiful = great. For the position of the object see App. § 9. 6, Nach England zurückgekehrt; entertainment = meal; at which, wobei. 7, bequeem; terms, Bedingungen. 8, to favour a person with something, einem etwas gewähren (v. tr.); nothing but, nur; treat, Schmaus, m. 9, every — plate, fand doch ein jeder nach dem ersten Gange zu seinem Erstaunen unter dem Teller einen Wechsel vor. 10, for — interest = which was issued (ausstellen) for (auf) the full amount of the remaining (rückständig) debt with (nebst) interest.

Section 30.

FORMATION OF A CORAL-ISLAND.

I.

It seems to me, that¹ when the animalcules, which form the corals at the bottom² of the ocean, cease to live, their³ structures adhere to each other, by virtue either of the glutinous remains within, or of some property in salt-water. The interstices being⁴ gradually filled up with sand and⁵ broken pieces of coral washed by the sea, which also adhere, a mass of rock is at length formed. Future⁶ races of these animalcules erect their habitations upon the rising⁷ bank, and⁸ die, in their turn to elevate this monument of their wonderful labours.

1, 'that when the animalcules . . . cease to live'. This clause may be briefly rendered by saying: 'that after the death (Absterben, n.) of the animalcules'. To translate the last noun, form a diminutive of Tier. 2, Meeresboden, m. 3, 'their — salt-water'. Use the following order of words for rendering this passage: 'their little houses (dim. of Haus) either through the in them contained glutinous remains (Überreste) or through some (irgend eine) property of the salt-water held together are (Pres. of the Passive Voice)'. 4, When the **Present Participle** is used to denote a logical cause from which we may draw an inference, it must, by the help of the conjunction 'da', be changed into a finite verb, i. e. one with a personal termination, thus:—

The interstices *being gradually filled up* with sand, a mass of rock is at length formed.

Da nun die Zwischenräume allmählich mit Sand ausgefüllt werden, so wird aus dem Ganzen endlich eine Felsenmasse gebildet.

The tense in which the verb is to be used, must always be determined by the context. 5, and—sea, und mit vom Meere herangespülten zerbröckelten Korallen; it is a matter of course that the verbs must follow this passage. 6, The following generations. 7, 'to rise', here sich erheben. **Present Participles**

used attributively are inflected like adjectives. Bank = reef. 8, 'and die — labours', translate 'and die to (S. 19, N. 7) contribute also in their turn (ihrerseits) to the elevation (Erhöhung, f.) of this monument of their admirable work (Arbeit, f.)'.

Section 31.

FORMATION OF A CORAL-ISLAND.

II.

The¹ new bank is not long in being visited by sea-birds. Salt-plants² take root upon it (S. 4, N. 5, *B*), and³ a soil is being formed. A cocoa-nut, or the⁴ drupe of a pandanus is thrown on⁵ shore. Land-birds visit it⁶ and deposit the seeds of shrubs and trees. Every high tide, and still more⁷ every gale, adds something to the bank. The⁸ form of an island is gradually assumed, and last of all⁹ comes man (S. 3, N. 2) to (S. 19, N. 7) take possession.—M. FLINDERS.

1, The new coral-reef is (S. 2, N. 1) now soon visited by (von) sea-birds. 2, Sea-plants; to take = to strike. 3, und so bildet sich eine Erdschicht. 4, die Frucht einer Banane. Die Banane (Pandanus) ist eine Art Palme und wird auch Pandang (m.) oder Palmnußbaum genannt. 5, an, contracted with the def. art. 6, it = the same, to agree with its antecedent 'shore'; to deposit, zurücklassen; seeds, Same, m., used in the sing. 7, still more = especially; adds — bank, trägt etwas zur Vergrößerung des Riffs bei. 8, The latter (dieses) gradually assumes (annehmen) the form of an island. The adv. 'gradually' may be made emphatic; see App. § 14. 9, zuletzt; 'to — possession' = to take possession of the same.

Section 32.

REYNARD¹ CAUGHT.

A fox observed² some fowls at roost, and wished to³ gain access to them by smooth speeches. "I have charming news⁴ to tell you," he⁵ said. "The animals have concluded⁶ an agreement of universal peace with one another. Come down and celebrate⁷ with me this decree⁸." An old cock, who was well on his guard, looked⁹ cautiously all around, and the fox, perceiving (S. 16, N. 4) this, inquired¹⁰ the reason. "I was only observing¹¹ those two dogs which are coming this way¹²," replied the cock. Reynard prepared¹³ to set off. "What¹⁴," cried the cock, "have not the animals concluded an agreement of universal peace?" "Yes," returned the fox, "but those dogs (S. 5, N. 2) perhaps have not yet¹⁵ heard of it (S. 4, N. 5, *B*)."—ANONYMOUS.

1, Der überlistete Reineke (or Reinhard). 2, to observe = to see; at roost, auf ihrer Stange sitzen. 3, to — speeches, durch glatte Worte ihrer habhaft zu werden. 4, charming news = something pleasant. To render 'you' use the dat. of the persnl. pron. of the 2nd pers. pl. For the construction see App. § 7. 5, The words indicating the speaker, after a quotation, must be rendered in an inverted form (see App. § 13). 6, to conclude, abschließen, str. v. tr.; the agreement of universal peace, der allgemeine Friedensvertrag; to come down, herunterkommen; supply the adv. also between the verb and the separable particle. 7, feiern. 8, Beschluß, m. 9, to look all around, sich nach allen Seiten umsehen. 10, to inquire the reason, sich nach der Ursache erkundigen. 11, I was observing = I observed (beobachten).

Which are coming = which come. The English compound forms of the verb with the auxiliary and the present participle, and of the verb 'to do' with the infinitive (**I do come** = I come. **I did come** = I came), must be rendered by the corresponding simple forms. 12, dieses Weges. 13, sich zum Davonlaufen bereit machen. 14, Wie. 15, 'not yet', here noch nichts.

Section 33.

THE¹ MEANS OF CONVEYANCE IN THE TIME OF CHARLES II.

I.

Heavy articles² were (S. 2, N. 1) in the time of Charles II generally conveyed from place to place by waggons³. The⁴ expense of transmitting them was⁵ enormous. From London to⁶ Birmingham the charge was £7 a⁷ ton, and from London to Exeter £12, which⁸ is a third more than was afterwards charged⁹ on turnpike-roads, and fifteen times more than is now demanded by¹⁰ railway companies. Coal¹¹ was seen only in districts where it was produced¹², or¹³ to which it could be carried by sea, and¹⁴ was, indeed, always known in the South of England by the name of sea-coal.

1, Die Beförderungsmittel zur Zeit Karls des Zweiten. 2, objects. 3, Lastwagen, which place after 'generally'. 4, 'The — them', may be briefly rendered by the compound noun 'Die Transportkosten'. It may here be pointed out that the German language lends itself more easily than any other living language to the formation of **compound expressions**. Many advantages result from this adaptability of the language to express in one single term which, otherwise, would require a number of words; but the greatest of these advantages seems to me to lie in the power it gives us to avoid the too frequent use of the Genitive, a power which, if rightly wielded, will impart great vigour, conciseness, and elegance to the student's style of writing. 5, were extraordinary high (groß). 6, nach; 'charge', here Fracht, f.; 'to be', here betragen; £7, sieben Pfund Sterling. 7, The def. art. is used in stating the price of goods, when the English use the indef. art.; as—

Dieser Kattun kostet fünfzig Pfennige die Elle. This cotton is sixpence a yard. (10 pfennigs = 1½d.)

8, The pron. 'which' referring to a whole clause, and not to a particular word in that clause, should be rendered by the indef. rel. pron. **was**; as—

She acted without thinking about the consequences, *which* was very wrong. Sie handelte, ohne über die Folgen nachzudenken, was sehr unrichtig war.

9, berechnen; turnpike-road, Chaussee, f. 10, von, followed by the def. art.; to demand, beanspruchen. 11, Steinkohlen, used in the pl. without the art. Use the active voice with man, S. 4, N. 4. 12, gewinnen. 13, or — sea, oder wohin sie verschifft werden konnten. 14, Say 'and it was (sie wurden) in the South of England therefore (daher auch) only called sea-coal (Schiffskohlen)'.

Section 34.

THE MEANS OF CONVEYANCE IN THE TIME OF CHARLES II.

II.

The rich¹ (S. 5, N. 2) commonly travelled in² their own iron carriages with at least four horses. A³ coach and six is in our time never seen,

except as part of some procession. The frequent mention, therefore, of such equipages⁴ in old books is likely to mislead us. We⁵ attribute to magnificence what was really⁶ the effect of⁷ disagreeable necessity. People⁸ in the time of Charles II travelled with six horses, because⁹ with a smaller number there was danger of sticking¹⁰ fast in the mire.—*Abridged from MACAULAY'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.*

1, **Adjectives used as nouns** are declined as they would be if the noun, which is understood, were to follow them. They are always written with a capital initial. 2, in ihren eigenen mit wenigstens vier Pferden bespannten eisernen Kutschen. 3, 'A — seen'. This clause must be construed thus: 'Except (Außer) in processions a coach and six (eine sechsspännige Kutsche, see App. § 14) is now never seen'. Supply the words 'bei uns' before the p. p. 4, Staatsfuhrwerke; therefore ... is likely to mislead us = can therefore easily mislead (irre führen) us. The object 'us' must be placed immediately after the copula 'can'. 5, Wir schreiben der Prachtliebe zu. 6, really = in reality; 'effect', here = consequence. 7, Say 'of a'. 8, One (S. 5, N. 2). 9, because ... there was danger, weil man ... Gefahr lief; 'small', here gering. 10, to stick fast, stecken bleiben. Use the Supine, for: When the **English Gerund** (i.e. the verbal in -ing) is governed by a noun, a verb, or an adjective, it is generally rendered by the **Supine**. Comp. S. 78, N. 14. Examples: He possesses the gift of speaking well. Er besitzt die Gabe gut zu sprechen. Do not begin talking! Fangen Sie nicht an zu sprechen!

Section 35.

SIR¹ WILLIAM HERSCHEL.

When² pursuing his musical avocations in the pump-room at Bath, Sir William Herschel had a small workshop close³ at hand, and when (S. 18, N. 6) the⁴ exacting loungers in the pump-room admitted of a pause in the music, he slipped off⁵ to (S. 19, N. 7) complete the polishing of a speculum⁶, or the grinding⁷ of a lens. Scarcely, however, had he heard the signal⁸, when⁹ he was ready to snatch up his instrument and¹⁰ to be the first in the orchestra. Thus¹¹ he gathered up the fragments of time, and this made (S. 27, N. 4) him at last the friend of monarchs¹², and the first¹³ of astronomers.—REV. DR. LEITCH.

1, Friedrich Wilhelm Herschel (später **Sir William Herschel**) wurde am 15^{ten} Nov. 1738 in Hannover geboren. Er kam als Musiker nach England, beschäftigte sich jedoch in seinen Mußestunden eingehend mit der Astronomie, welcher er sich endlich ganz widmete. Er entdeckte mit selbst verfertigten Spiegelteleskopen von bis dahin unbekannter Größe den Uranus, zwei Saturnsmonde, zahlreiche Doppelsterne, Sternhaufen und Nebelflecken, und lieferte höchst wichtige Beobachtungen über die Planeten. Diese Entdeckungen, welche der Welt durch die von der königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften veröffentlichten Journale mitgetheilt wurden, machten ihn bald zum berühmten Manne. Er wurde von dem Könige Georg III zum königlichen Astronomen ernannt und genoß Ehre, Ruhm und Wohlstand, als er am 25^{ten} Aug. 1822 zu Slough bei Windsor starb. Es ist unmöglich, hier nicht auch zugleich seiner geliebten Schwester Karoline zu gedenken, welche mit seltener Hingebung sich den Bestrebungen und Arbeiten des älteren Bruders angeschlossen und so nicht wenig zu den glänzenden Erfolgen dieses großen und höchst merkwürdigen Mannes beitrug. Sie starb im Jahre 1848 in ihrer Vaterstadt Hannover. Ihre unlängst veröffentlichten Memoiren und Briefe verdienen im höchsten Grade das allgemeine Interesse, welches sie nicht allein in Deutschland, sondern auch in England hervorgerufen haben. 2, This passage requires a different construction in

German, thus: 'When Sir W. H. was still officiating (*fungie' ren*, see S. 32, N. 11) in the pump-room (*Trinkhalle*) at Bath as *a* member of the band (*Rapelle*), he had', etc.

3, close at hand, ganz in der Nähe, which place before the object. 4, die vielbegehrten Müßiggänger; to admit of something, etwas gestatten, w. v. tr. 5, hinaus'schlüpfen. 6, Spiegel, m. 7, Schleifen, n.

8, das Zeichen zum Anfangen. 9, when — ready, so war er auch schon bereit; to snatch up, ergreifen, see S. 1, N. 2. 10, and — first = and as the first to

take (ein'nehmen) his place. 11, Thus — time = Thus (*So*, adv.) he used every spare-moment; the spare-moment, der freie Augenblick. 12, 'monarch', here Fürst. 13, zum ersten Astronomen seiner Zeit.

Section 36.

THE¹ AIR-OCEAN.

I.

Enveloping² this solid globe of ours are two oceans, one³ partial, and the other universal. *There is* the⁴ ocean of water, which has⁵ settled down into all the depressions⁶ of the earth's surface⁷, leaving⁸ dry above it all the high lands, as mountain-ranges, continents, and islands; and⁹ *there is* an ocean of air, which enwraps¹⁰ the whole in one transparent mantle.

Through¹¹ the bosom of that ocean, like fishes with their fins (App. § 14), birds¹² and other winged creatures swim; whilst man¹³ and other mamalia creep like¹⁴ crabs at the bottom of this aerial sea¹⁵.

1, Das Luftmeer. 2, Say 'Two oceans envelop (*umgeben*) our solid globe (*Erdfugel*).

3, the one partial (*theilweise*) and the other universal (*ganz*). The subsequent sentence is best introduced by a colon (:), which we use to direct attention to what is following. The words '*There is*' must then be omitted. 4, das Weltmeer. 5, 'which — all', say 'which fills (*erfüllen*) all'.

6, Vertiefung, f. 7, To render 'of the earth's surface', form a compound noun by combining the corresponding German terms of the nouns 'earth' and 'surface'.

A. When the component parts of **Compound Nouns** are substantives, we combine them often without any connecting link; as—das Lastthier, beast of burden; das Stadtviertel, the quarter of a town, ward.

B. Neither do we require a connecting link for the formation of **Compound Nouns** the first component of which is an adjective or a particle; as—die Großmutter, grandmother; das Unglück, misfortune; der Urquell, fountain-head.

C. The **Gender of Compound Nouns** (with the exception of a few compounds with *Mut*, m.) is determined by the last component, which is always a noun.

8, 'leaving — islands'. This passage may be rendered thus: 'so that all the high lands (*Erhöhungen*), as (*wie*) mountain-ranges, etc. . . . rise dry above the same; to rise, *sich erheben*.

9, und das Luftmeer. 10, umhül'len; say 'the whole globe' (*Kugel*, f.); 'in', here mit. 11, In this ocean of air. 12, Since the four subsequent nouns in this passage represent a whole class, the def. art. is required before each (S. 3, N. 2). 13, Use this noun in the plural, since the noun with which it is connected by the conj. 'and' stands in the same number.

14, gleich Kriechen; to creep, *umherkriechen*. The word 'whilst' being a subordinative conj., the verb must be placed? 15, Luftmeer.

Section 37.

THE AIR-OCEAN.

II.

The air-ocean, which everywhere¹ surrounds the earth, and feeds and maintains it, is even² more simple, more grand, and more majestic than the³ 'world of waters'; more⁴ varied and changeful in its moods of storm and calm, of ebb and flow, of brightness and gloom. The⁵ atmosphere is, indeed, a wonderful thing, a most perfect example of the economy of nature. Deprived of⁶ air, no animal would live, no plant *would* grow, no flame *would* burn, no⁷ light *would* be diffused. The⁸ air, too, is the sole medium of sound. Without it, mountains might⁹ fall, but¹⁰ it would be in perfect silence. Neither whisper¹¹ nor thunders¹² would¹³ ever be heard.—MAURY, PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE SEA.

- 1, Place the adverb before the verb. 2, sogar noch. 3, jene mächtige Wasserwelt, after which put a full stop and begin a new sentence. 4, This passage may be construed thus: 'It offers a greater variety (Mannigfaltigkeit) and changeableness in the transitions from storm to (zu) calm, from ebb to flow, and from light to gloom (Dunkel, n.)'. The article (which, if practicable, should be contracted with the preceding preposition) must be used with the last six nouns, see S. 3, N. 2. 5, Der Luftkreis ist in der That höchst wunderbar und gewährt ein vollendetes Beispiel von dem häuslicherischen Wesen der Natur. 6, Without (App. § 14); would = could, Impf. Subj. 7, und kein Licht sich verbreiten. 8, Also (def. art.) sound can only be transmitted (fort'pflanzen) through the air. 9, might = could; to fall, ein'stürzen. 10, Say 'and yet the prevailing silence would not be interrupted'. 11, leises Geflüster, acc. 12, lauten Donner, acc. 13, 'would — heard', use the active voice with the indef. pron. man.

Section 38.

CHEERFUL¹ CHURCH-MUSIC.

When the poet Carpani inquired² of his friend Haydn³ how it happened⁴ that his church-music was⁵ always so cheerful, the great composer made⁶ the following beautiful reply:

"I cannot make it otherwise⁷," said he, "I⁸ write according to the thoughts I feel. When⁹ I think of God, my heart is so full of joy that (App. § 16) the¹⁰ notes dance and leap, as it were, from my pen; and since God has given me a cheerful heart, it¹¹ will be pardoned me that¹² I serve him with a cheerful spirit."—REV. R. K. ARVINE.

- 1, fröhlich. 2, inquired of = asked. 3, Joseph Haydn (geb. den 31^{sten} März 1732 zu Rohrau in Osterreich, † den 31^{sten} Mai 1809 in Wien, bildete sich durch eigenes Studium in der Musik aus und lebte dann namentlich als Kapellmeister des Fürsten Esterhazy in Wien. Er ist der Schöpfer der Symphonie und des Streichquartetts; auch hat er sich durch die Begründung der neueren Instrumentationskunst ein besonderes Verdienst erworben. Seine Werke sind ebenso zahlreich, wie mannigfaltig; durch die beiden Oratorien: 'Die Schöpfung' (1799) und 'die Jahreszeiten' (1801) hat er jedoch seinen Namen mit ehernen Lettern in die Geschichte der Kunst eingetragen. 4, Use the Pres. Subj. of kommen, since the clause contains an indirect question; see App. §§ 28 and 30. 5, was — cheerful, stets einen so fröhlichen Charakter trage. 6, to make a reply, eine Antwort geben; 'beautiful', here

finnig; for the construction see App. § 15. 7, anders; for the place of the negation see App. § 12. 8, Translate the passage 'I write — feel' briefly by saying: 'I write just as (so wie) I feel', since it would not be in accordance with the genius of the German language to render the sentence in a literal way. (Gedanken kann man nicht fühlen.) 9, Denke ich an Gott, so ist, etc.; full of, voller. 10, Construe this clause after the following model:

The notes danced and leapt, as it were, from *his* pen. Die Noten tanzten und hüpfen ihm gleichsam aus der Feder.

11, so wird man mir hoffentlich verzeihen. 12, that = if.

Section 39.

OUR INDUSTRIAL¹ INDEPENDENCE DEPENDS UPON OURSELVES.

Truer² words were never uttered than those spoken by Mr. Dargan, the Irish railway-contractor, at a public meeting in Dublin.

"I have³ heard a great deal⁴," he said, "about the independence that we are⁵ to get from this or that source, yet⁶ I have always been deeply impressed with the conviction, that our industrial independence depends upon ourselves. Simple⁷ industry and careful exactness would⁸ be the making of Ireland. We have, it⁹ is true, made a step in advance, but perseverance is¹⁰ indispensably necessary for eventual success."—S. SMILES.

1, industriell. 2, A greater truth than that which Mr. D., the Irish railway-contractor (Eisenbahn-Unternehmer), spoke (ausprechen) at (in) a public meeting in (zu) Dublin, has never been uttered. 3, The words 'he said' should follow here; see S. 32, N. 5. 4, a great deal = much. 5, are to get, erlangen sollen; for the construction see App. § 16; from, aus. 6, yet I have always had the firm conviction. Render 'to have' here by haben. 7, schlicht; 'industry', here Fleiß, m.; careful, streng; exactness, Pflichterfüllung, f. 8, would establish (begründen) Ireland's prosperity (Wohlstand, m.). 9, it is true, zwar; see S. 15, N. 3; 'to make', here thun; in advance, vorwärts. 10, Here follow the words 'for (zu, contracted with the def. art.) eventual (eventuell) success'.

Section 40.

ENGLAND'S¹ TREES.

The principal native² trees are the³ oak, ash, elm, poplar, aspen, birch, larch, alder, hawthorn, hazel, and willow. The beech, maple, horse-chestnut⁴, Spanish chestnut⁵, walnut⁶, sycamore, acacia, weeping willow, cedar, and Lombardy poplar have been introduced.

The moist climate of⁷ England is⁸ eminently suited to the growth of⁹ forest-trees, and we find that in ancient times the larger part of the country presented one¹⁰ vast scene of forest, as¹¹ the¹² uncleared districts of America do now. The¹³ few scattered patches of natural wood which remain, show¹⁴ what was once the character of nearly the whole country.—HEWITT, PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF ENGLAND AND WALES.

1, See S. 14, N. 3. 2, einheimisch. 3, die Gide. The article is repeated in this passage only when the subsequent noun is of different gender or number from the preceding one. 4, die Rosskastanie. 5, die echte Kastanie. 6, der Walnussbaum. 7, Englands. 8, to be suited

to a thing, einer Sache zuträglich sein; eminently, außerordentlich, which place before 'zuträglich'. 9, Use the gen. of the def. art. The definite article should be used in all cases where an object is individualised or singled out from other objects. 10, one — forest = an almost uninterrupted scene of forest, Waldlandschaft, f. 11, as . . . do now, wie noch jetzt. 12, die ungelichteten Waldgegenden. 13, The — remain, Die wenigen zerstreut liegenden Überreste natürlicher Gehölze. 14, Say 'show the character which formerly belonged almost to the whole country'.

Section 41.

THE INDIAN CHIEF¹.

I.

During the war in America, a company² of Indians attacked a small body³ of British troops⁴, and defeated⁵ them. As⁶ the Indians had⁷ greatly the advantage in swiftness of foot, and were eager in the pursuit, very few of the English escaped; and those who⁸ fell into their hands, were treated with a cruelty of which there⁹ are not many examples, even in that country.

Two of the Indians came up¹⁰ to a young officer, and attacked him with great fury. As⁶ they were armed with battle-axes, he had no hope of¹¹ escape. But, just at¹² this crisis, another Indian came up¹³, who was advanced in years, and was armed with a bow and arrows. The¹⁴ old man instantly drew his bow; but, after¹⁵ having taken his aim at the officer, he suddenly dropped his arrow, and¹⁶ interposed between the young soldier and his pursuers, who were about¹⁷ to cut him to pieces. The two Indians retired with respect.

1, Der Indianerhäuptling. 2, Haufe, m. 3, Schar, f. 4, troops = soldiers. 5, to defeat, in die Flucht schlagen. 6, When the conjunction 'as' stands for 'since', it must be rendered by 'da'. 7, had — foot, den Britten im Laufen bedeutend überlegen waren; and — pursuit = and eagerly pursued the same. For the following clause see S. 27, N. 8, and say 'only few of the Britons succeeded to escape (davonkommen)'. I succeed, es gelingt mir. 8, welche den Indianern in die Hände fielen. 9, there are, es giebt. The subject 'es', which must be placed immediately after the relative pronoun, should be followed by the adverbial clause 'even in that country'. 10, to come up to a person, sich einem nähern. 11, auf Rettung. 12, at = in; crisis = critical (entscheidungs-voll) moment. 13, to come up = to appear; who — arrows = of advanced (vorge-schritten) age and armed with bow and arrows. 14, der Alte; to draw, spannen; immediately, unverzüglich, which may be emphasized by being placed at the head of the clause (App. § 14). 15, Say 'after he had aimed (zielen) at (auf) the officer'; to drop, fallen lassen. 16, and interposed, und stellte sich. 17, to be about, im Begriff sein; to cut to pieces, zerstückeln; with respect = respectfully.

Section 42.

THE INDIAN CHIEF.

II.

The¹ old man then took the officer by the hand, soothed him into confidence by caresses, and, having conducted him to his hut, treated him with a kindness which did honour to his professions². He made (S. 27,

N. 4) him less a^s slave than a^s companion, taught^t him the language of the country, and instructed him in^b the rude arts that were practised by the inhabitants. They^e lived together in *the* most perfect harmony, and the young officer, in⁷ the treatment he met with, found nothing to regret, but⁸ that (App. § 16) sometimes the old man fixed his eyes upon him, regarded⁹ him for some minutes with steady and silent attention, and then burst into tears.

1, Say 'Hereupon the old man seized the hand of the officer, sought by caresses to gain his (bessen) confidence, conducted him to (in) his hut, and treated', etc. 2, *Verprechung*, f. 3, his. 4, The verb *lehren*, to teach (old German *lêran*, Gothic *laisjan*), etymologically signifies 'to cause a person to know a thing'. This is the reason that it is in German most generally used with two accusatives: that of the person and that of the thing; as—*Er lehrt mich die Landessprache*, he teaches me the language of the country. *Lehre mich Deine Rechte!* (Luther.) *Wer hat dich solche Streiche gelehrt?* (Uhland.) 5, in — arts, in den geringen Geschicklichkeiten; to practise, üben; by, von; 'inhabitants', here Eingebornen. 6, They = both; together = with one another, which place after 'harmony' (*Eintracht*, f.). 7, in — with, in der ihm zuteil werdenden Behandlung. Where must the verb be placed? Supply the word 'andereß' after 'nothing'; 'to regret', here beklagen. 8, als. 9, Say 'regarded him silently for a while (App. § 9, A) with steady (unverwandt) attention'.

Section 43.

THE INDIAN CHIEF.

III.

In¹ the meantime the spring returned, and the Indians again took the field. The old man, who was still vigorous, and able to bear the fatigues of war², set out with them, *and was* accompanied by his prisoner. They marched above³ two hundred leagues across the forests, and came at length to⁴ a plain, where the British forces⁵ were encamped. The old man showed his prisoner the tents at a distance⁶: "There," said he, "are thy countrymen. There is the enemy who⁷ waits to give us battle. Remember⁸ that I have saved thy⁹ life, that I have taught¹⁰ thee to conduct a canoe, to arm thyself with¹¹ bow and arrows, and to surprise¹² the beaver in the forest. What wast thou when I first took thee to my hut? Thy hands were those of an infant. They could neither procure¹³ thee sustenance nor safety. Thy soul was¹⁴ in utter darkness. Thou wast ignorant of everything. Thou owest all things to me. Wilt thou, then¹⁵, go over to thy nation, and take up the hatchet against us?"

1, Say 'Meanwhile it became spring'; to take the field, ins Feld ziehen. 2, die Kriegsbeschwerden; 'to set out', here ziehen. 3, more than. 4, to = into. 5, forces = troops; to encamp, sein Lager aufschlagen. 6, von weitem, which place before the accusative. 7, who waits, der darauf lauert; to give battle = to attack. 8, Bedenke. 9, A. The definite article is often used instead of the possessive adjective pronoun in cases where the possessor is clearly seen from the context; as—

Ich habe die Feder in der Hand.

I have the pen in *my* hand.

B. The possessor is often indicated by a personal pronoun in the dative case; as—

Ich will mir die Hände waschen.

I will wash *my* hands.

The latter mode of construction must be applied in this case. 10, 'I have taught thee to conduct a canoe.' Read once more S. 42, N. 4, and mark further that: that which is taught is often expressed in the form of a **Supine**, as in this instance. 11, We say 'mit Pfeil und Bogen'. 12, überfallen. 13, gewähren; sustenance, Nahrung, f. 14, lag in Finsternis gefüllt. 15, also; nation = people; to take up = to seize.

Section 44.

THE INDIAN CHIEF.

IV.

The officer replied that¹ he would rather lose his own life than take away that of his deliverer. The Indian, bending² down his (S. 43, N. 9, A) head, and covering his face with both *his* hands, stood³ some time silent. Then, looking⁴ earnestly at his prisoner, he⁵ said, in a voice that was at once softened by tenderness and grief: "Hast thou a father?" "My father," said the young man, "was⁶ alive when I left my country⁷." "Alas!" said⁸ the Indian, "how wretched⁹ must he be!" He paused¹⁰ a moment, and then added: "Dost thou know that¹¹ I have been a father? I¹² am a father no more. I saw my son fall in¹³ battle. He fought at my side. I saw him expire. He was covered with wounds, when he fell¹⁴ dead at my feet."

1, that — deliverer = that he would rather die than kill his deliverer. See App. §§ 28 and 30. 2, The two Participles in -ing are best rendered by using the Imperfect. 3, stood — silent, und stand so eine Weile schweigend da. 4, Say 'Upon this (Hierauf) he looked', etc. 5, he — grief, und fragte mit von Bärtlichkeit und Kummer gedämpfter Stimme. 6, war noch am Leben. 7, Heimat, f. 8, exclaimed. 9, unhappy. 10, zögern, i. e. to hesitate. 11, daß auch ich einst Vater war? 12, Say 'But now I (App. § 14) am it no more'. 13, We use here the def. art. 14, nieberfallen.

Section 45.

THE INDIAN CHIEF.

V.

He pronounced¹ these words with the utmost vehemence. His² body shook with a universal tremour. He³ was almost stifled with sighs, which⁴ he would not suffer to escape him. There⁵ was a keen restlessness in the eye, but no tears flowed to⁶ his relief. At⁷ length he became calm by degrees: and, turning towards the east, where the sun had just risen, "Dost thou see," said he to the young officer, "the beauty of that sky, which sparkles with prevailing day? and hast thou pleasure in the sight?" "Yes," replied the⁸ young officer, "I have pleasure in the beauty of⁹ so fine a sky." "I have none!" said the Indian, and¹⁰ his tears then found their way.

A few minutes after, he showed the young man a¹¹ magnolia, in full bloom. "Dost thou see that beautiful tree?" said he, "and dost thou look¹² upon it with pleasure?" "Yes," replied the officer, "I¹³ look with pleasure upon that beautiful tree." "I have no longer any pleasure in¹⁴ looking upon it!" said the Indian hastily¹⁵, and¹⁶ immediately

added: "Go, return to thy father, that¹⁷ he may still have pleasure, when (S. 18, N. 6) he sees the sun rise in¹⁸ the morning, and the trees blossom in the spring!"—WASHINGTON IRVING.

1, spoke. Begin the clause with 'These words' (S. 7, N. 2). 2, Say 'A universal tremour shook (erschüttern) his body'. 3, Er ersüßte fast unter den Seufzern. 4, Say 'which he endeavoured (bemüht sein) to suppress'. 5, His eyes (sing.) looked restlessly about. 6, zur Linderung seines Schmerzes. 7, Say 'Gradually he became calmer'. The following passage requires altogether a different structure in German. Say 'He turned towards the east (sich gen Osten wenden), where the sun had just risen. "Dost thou see the beauty of the sky, which sparkles (erglänzen) with (von) the breaking (anbrechen) day (Tageslicht, n.)? and hast thou pleasure (Freude, f.) in (an) the sight (Anblick, m.)?" he asked the young officer'. 8, the — officer, dieser, to avoid a useless repetition. 9, of such a (S. 28, N. 9) sky. 10, 'and his', say 'whose'; found their way, hervorbrachen. 11, eine in voller Blüte stehende Magnolie. 12, 'to look upon', here betrachten. 13, Say 'I rejoice in its splendour', to avoid monotony. To rejoice in a thing, sich einer Sache freuen. 14, 'in — it', may be briefly rendered by 'in the sight'. 15, rasch. 16, 'and — Go'. Begin a new clause here, and say: "Go," he added (fügte er dann hinzu). 17, auf daß (followed by the Pres. Subj. of haben). 18, des Morgens, App. § 9. The verb 'sees', being the governing verb in both clauses, takes the last place. See App. § 19.

Section 46.

RICE.

Rice forms the¹ chief subsistence of the people² in India, China, Japan, and other eastern³ countries. Indeed, it supports⁴ more persons than any other article of food⁵. In Asia it (S. 2, N. 1) is chiefly cultivated in India, China, and⁶ Ceylon; in Europe: in Lombardy⁷ (Italy) and Spain; in Africa: in Egypt; in South America: in Brazil; and in North America: in⁸ the Carolines and⁹ Louisiana. Its¹⁰ cultivation requires an¹¹ immense quantity of moisture. It¹² grows best in¹³ fields which can be inundated. Indeed¹⁴, the fact that it is usually sown upon watery soil makes it probable that the first Verse of the eleventh Chapter in¹⁵ Ecclesiastes refers to Rice. In Egypt, for example, it is always sown while¹⁶ the waters of the Nile cover the land, and when the floods subside¹⁷, (S. 27, N. 8) it is deposited¹⁸ in the mud. A strong spirit¹⁹, called arrack, is distilled from²⁰ rice, and²¹ the straw is used for making plait for hats and bonnets.—NELSON'S READERS.

1, das hauptsächlichste Nahrungsmittel. 2, Say 'of the inhabitants of India (Indiens)', etc. 3, orientaisch. 4, ernähren. 5, Nahrungsartifel, m. 6, Supply here the prep. auf, which should always be used to render the English 'in' before names of islands. 7, in der Lombardei. 8, auf den Carolinen. 9, Supply the prep. in. 10, Der Reisbau, i.e. the cultivation of rice. 11, an — of = extraordinary much. 12, The noun 'rice' must here be repeated, since the pron. 'er' would refer to 'Reisbau'. 13, auf. 14, Ja, die Thatfache, daß, etc. 15, im Prediger Salomonis; to refer to something, sich auf etwas beziehen. The above mentioned passage reads as follows: 'Cast thy bread upon the waters: for thou shalt find it after many days'. 16, Say 'when the land is still covered by (von) the waters of the Nile'. 17, sich zurückziehen, i.e. withdraw. 18, sich ablagern (see S. 4, N. 4, A); 'mud', here Schlamm, m. 19, Spiritus, m. 20, aus. 21, and — bonnets, und das Stroh gebraucht man zur Anfertigung von Männer- und Frauenhüten.

Section 47.

THE WHITE SHIP.

(A.D. 1120.)

I.

King Henry I went¹ over to Normandy with his son Prince (S. 10, N. 2) William and a great retinue, to have the prince acknowledged² as his successor by the Norman nobles, and to contract³ the promised marriage between him and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. When both⁴ these things had been done with great show⁵ and rejoicing, the whole retinue prepared⁶ to *embark* for the voyage home.

When⁷ all was ready, *there* came to the king Fitz-Stephen⁸, a sea-captain, and said: "My⁹ liege, my father served your father all his life, upon the sea. He steered¹⁰ the ship¹¹ with the gold boy upon the prow, in¹² which your father sailed¹³ to conquer England. I beseech you to grant¹⁴ me the same office. I¹⁵ have a fair vessel in the harbour here, called the White Ship, manned by fifty sailors of renown. I pray you, Sire¹⁶, to¹⁷ let your servant have the honour of steering¹⁸ you in the White Ship to England."

1, to go over, *sich begeben*. The words 'to Normandy' (S. 19, N. 4) must be placed after 'retinue'. 2, to have acknowledged, *huldigen lassen*. See S. 19, N. 7. The words 'by (von) the Norman nobles' must be placed after 'prince'. The nobles, *der Äbte*. 3, to contract a promised marriage, *einen verabredeten Heirathsvertrag abschließen*. The pron. 'him' should be turned by 'the prince', to avoid ambiguity. 4, both — things = this. 5, *Pomp*, m.; rejoicing, *viele Freudenbezeugungen*; to be done, *geschehen*. 6, *sich zur Heimreise anschicken*. 7, Supply the adverb 'nun' after 'when'. 8, The subject and apposition must be placed immediately after the predicate. Comp. App. § 15. 9, Say 'My father, O prince (Fürst), served yours (use the second pers. sing. of the posses. pron., and continue the address in the same person) his whole life long at (zur) sea'. 10, *lenken*. 11, *das am Vordertheile mit einem goldenen Knaben verzierte Schiff*. 12, *auf*. 13, sailed — England = sailed (*sich einschiffen*) for (zu) the conquest of England. 14, *verleihen*. 15, Say 'I possess in this (hier) harbour a fair with fifty renowned (bewährt) sailors (Seeleute) manned vessel (Fahrzeug), called (App. § 1) the White Ship'. Comp. S. 7, N. 3. 16, *o Herr*. 17, to let ... have = to grant; use the Supine. 18, 'to steer', here = to conduct, *gleiten*. See S. 1, N. 3.

Section 48.

THE WHITE SHIP.

II.

"I am sorry," replied the king, "that¹ my vessel is already chosen, and *that* I cannot therefore sail with the son of the man who served² my father. But³ the prince, with all his company, shall go along with you in the fair White Ship manned by fifty sailors of renown."

An⁴ hour or two afterwards, the king (App. § 15) set sail⁵ in⁶ the vessel he had chosen, accompanied by other vessels, and⁷, sailing all night with a fair and gentle wind, arrived upon the coast of England in the morning. While⁸ it was yet night, the⁹ people in some of the ships heard a faint wild cry come¹⁰ over the sea, and wondered what¹¹ it was.

1, Say 'that I have already chartered (*bebingen*) a ship'. 2, Use the Perfect, which is used in German to express an action or occurrence both perfect and past, without reference to any other action or occurrence. 3, Render 'but' by *jedoch*, which place after 'shall'; with — company, *samt seinem ganzen Gefolge*; 'to go along', here *fahren*, to be placed at the end of the whole clause, which construe accord. to S. 48, N. 6. 4, An — afterwards = Soon after. 5, to set sail, *ab'segeln*. 6, To place the qualifying parts before the word qualified is one of the most striking peculiarities of German Grammar. This construction, called **attributive construction**, has been explained in Section 7, Note 3 with respect to the rendering of the Perfect (or Past) Participle qualifying a preceding noun; but it must here be pointed out that it may likewise be used for rendering the Present Participle qualifying a preceding noun (comp. S. 16, N. 4), and that it is sometimes even suitable for translating short relative clauses. This, as long as it is not too much indulged in, imparts to the construction great conciseness and vigour, and avoids the too frequent use of relative pronouns, which, contrary to English construction, cannot be omitted in German. (Comp. S. 16, N. 10.)

EXAMPLES.

When the fleet, *favoured* by the finest weather, was about to set sail, there arose a shout of joy, *proceeding* from many thousands of voices, and resounding mightily from the shore.

The child, gently *sleeping* in his mother's arms, was suddenly roused by his father's noisy entrance.

The church, *which was damaged by the siege*, is now being restored.

The clause 'in — vessels' requires the attributive construction, since the two relative clauses, otherwise required, would make the rendering very lengthy and monotonous. To avoid a useless repetition, translate the first noun 'vessel' by *Schiff* and the second by *Fahrzeug*, and connect the two clauses by the conjunction *und*.

7, The passage 'and — morning' may be briefly rendered thus: and arrived, *favoured* (*begünstigt*, App. § 1) by a gentle (*mäßig*) wind, the (am) next morning in England.

8, Say 'During the night'. 9, the people = one, after which supply the conj. *jedoch*; in ships = upon some ships. 10, come — sea, *von der See herüber*, which place after 'ships'; wild cry, *Angstschrei*.

11, was dies zu bedeuten habe.

Als die von dem schönsten Wetter begünstigte Flotte im Begriff war abzusegeln, erhob sich ein von vielen tausend Stimmen erschallender Jubelruf, von dem das Ufer mächtig wiederhallte.

Das in den Armen der Mutter sanft schlafende Kind wurde plötzlich durch den lärmenden Eintritt des Vaters aufgeweckt.

Die durch die Belagerung beschädigte Kirche wird jetzt wiederhergestellt.

Section 49.

THE WHITE SHIP.

III.

The prince went¹ aboard the White Ship with *one* hundred and forty youthful nobles, among whom were eighteen noble ladies of the highest rank. All² this gay company, with their servants and the fifty sailors, made three hundred souls aboard the White Ship.

"Give three³ casks of wine, Fitz-Stephen," said the prince, "to the fifty sailors of renown. My⁴ father the king has sailed out of the

harbour. What⁵ time is there to make merry here, and yet reach England with the rest?"

"Prince⁶," said Fitz-Stephen, "before morning my fifty and the White Ship shall overtake the swiftest vessel in attendance on your father the king, if we sail at midnight."

1, to go aboard ship, *sich auf ein Schiff begeben*; the young noble, *der junge Adelige*; 'to be', here *sich befinden*; eighteen — rank, *achtzehn dem höchsten Range angehörige Damen*. The words 'aboard the White Ship' take the last place in the clause.

2, This clause requires the following construction: With the servants (*Dienerſchaft*, f.) and the fifty sailors consisted the whole gay company upon the White Ship of (aus) three hundred persons.

3, Construe according to App. § 5.

4, Say 'My royal father'; has sailed out of = has left. Supply the adverb *ſehen* after the auxiliary. This will greatly improve the rendering.

5, Also the two following passages require a different construction; say 'How long can we still make merry (*sich glücklich thun*) here (to be placed before 'still'), if we will arrive in England at the same time (*zugleich*) with the others?' The words 'in England' should stand before the verbs, which arrange according to App. § 18.

6, Say "If we sail at (um) midnight, O prince (see S. 27, N. 8), my fifty men (*Leute*) and the White Ship shall nevertheless (*dennoch*) before the coming morning overtake the swiftest ship in the service of thy royal father," replied Fitz-Stephen.—'The swiftest — father' = the swiftest in the service of thy royal father standing ship. (Comp. S. 48, N. 6.)

Section 50.

THE WHITE SHIP.

IV.

Then¹ the prince commanded to² make merry; and the sailors drank out the three casks of wine, and the prince and³ all the noble⁴ company danced in the moonlight on the deck of the White Ship.

When at last she⁵ shot⁶ out of the harbour of Barfleur, there⁷ was not⁸ a sober seaman on⁹ board. But the sails were all set¹⁰ and¹¹ the oars all going merrily, Fitz-Stephen at the helm.

The gay young nobles and the beautiful ladies talked, laughed, and sang. The prince encouraged¹² the fifty sailors to row harder¹³ yet, for¹⁴ the honour of the White Ship.

1, Hereupon. 2, that they (man) should make merry. The verb must stand in the Present Subjunctive, as will be seen from §§ 28–30 of the App.

3, *samt*. 4, *adelig*; company = *retinue*. 5, *dieses*, to be placed after

'When'. 6, shot out of = left. 7, there to be, *sich befinden*. 8, not a,

auch nicht ein einziger. 9, Say 'upon the ship'. 10, *gespannt*. 11, Say

'and the oars moved (*sich bewegen*) merrily (*lustig*), whilst F.-St. stood at the

helm'. 12, *an'treiben*. 13, harder = faster. 14, *dem weißen Schiff*

zu Ehren.

Section 51.

THE WHITE SHIP.

V.

Crash¹!—a terrific cry broke from three hundred hearts. It was the cry (S. 16, N. 10) the people² in the distant vessels of the king had faintly³ heard on the water. The White Ship had struck upon a rock, and⁴ was going down!

Fitz-Stephen hurried⁶ the prince into a boat with some few nobles. "Push off," he whispered, "and row to⁶ the land. It is not far, and the sea is smooth⁷. The⁸ rest of us must die."

But⁹, as they rowed away fast from the sinking ship, the prince heard the voice of his sister Mary calling¹⁰ for help. He (S. 5, N. 2) never in his life had been so good as¹¹ he was then. He¹² cried, in an agony: "Row back at any risk! I cannot bear¹³ to leave her!"

1, *Krach!*—*es erhob sich ein aus drei hundert Rehlen erschallender fürchterlicher Angstschrei.* 2, the people = one; in = upon. 3, faintly on the water, unvollkommen von der See herüber. 4, und war im Sinken begriffen! 5, to hurry into a boat, schnell in ein Boot steigen lassen; with = and. 6, an, contracted with the def. art. 7, ruhig. 8, The — us = We others. 9, Render 'but' by jedoch, which place before the adverb 'fast' (schnell); to row away, sich entfernen. 10, See S. 16, N. 4; for, um. 11, Say 'as at (in) this moment'. 12, The remaining passage will greatly improve by placing the clause 'Row — risk' before the words 'He — agony'. In an agony, voll Seelenangst; at any risk, koste es, was es wolle. 13, When there is in a principal clause a transitive verb, the object of which is contained in a following objective clause, which often assumes the form of a supine (i.e. an infinitive with zu, see S. 1, N. 2), the object in the principal clause is frequently supplied by the pronoun *es*, which then may be called the grammatical object. This is more particularly the case when special emphasis is given to the verb contained in the principal clause; as—

He *liked to bear* good music.

Er liebte es, gute Musik zu hören.

The deed proves, that she speaks the truth.

Die That beweist es, daß sie die Wahrheit spricht.

Section 52.

THE WHITE SHIP.

VI.

They rowed back. When¹ the prince held out his arms to catch² his sister, such³ numbers lept in, that the boat was upset; and in the same instant the White Ship went⁴ down.

Only two men floated⁵: a nobleman, Godfrey by name, and a poor butcher of Rouen. By and by⁶ another man came swimming towards them, whom⁷ they knew, when he had pushed aside his long wet hair, to be Fitz-Stephen.

When he heard that the prince and all his retinue had⁸ gone down, Fitz-Stephen, with a ghastly face⁹, cried: "Woe, woe to me!" and sank¹⁰ to the bottom.

1, Supply here the conj. *aber*. 2, auf-fangen. 3, Say 'so many persons jumped into the boat, that it capsized'. 4, Supply the adverb *auch* after the verb. 5, to float, auf dem Wasser schwimmen; of Rouen, aus Rouen. 6, Kurz darauf; supply the adverb *noch* before 'another'. He comes swimming towards me, er kommt auf mich zu-geschwommen. 7, Say 'in whom they recognised Fitz-Stephen, when he', etc.; to push aside = to throw back. 8, had gone down, den Tod erlitten. The auxiliary verb (had) may here be omitted, for: In subordinate clauses, the auxiliary verbs (haben, sein, and werden) are often omitted for the sake of conciseness and elegance; as—

Daß sie mir genommen (wurde), ist That she *was* taken from me is my
mein größtes Leid. greatest sorrow.

9, with — face, totenbleich, adv. How must the words be arranged here?
10, to sink to the bottom, in die Tiefe hinab'sinken. Supply the adv. dann after
the verb, which will establish a closer connection between this clause and the
preceding one.

Section 53.

THE WHITE SHIP.

VII.

The other two clung¹ to the yard for some hours. At length (App. § 14) the young noble said faintly²: "I am exhausted, and benumbed³ with cold, and can hold⁴ no longer. Farewell, good friend. God preserve (App. § 34) you!"

So⁵ he dropped and sank, and of all the brilliant crowd⁶, the poor butcher of Rouen alone was saved. In⁷ the morning, some fishermen saw him floating in his sheep-skin coat⁸, and got⁹ him into their boat,—the sole relater of the dismal tale.

For¹ three days no one dared to carry¹⁰ the intelligence to the king; at length they¹¹ sent into his presence a little boy, who, weeping¹² bitterly, and kneeling at his feet, told him that the White Ship was¹³ lost, with all on board.

The king fell to the ground like¹⁴ a dead man, and¹⁵ never afterwards was seen to smile.—C. DICKENS, A CHILD'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

1, to cling to the yard, sich an eine Segelstange anflammern; for some hours, einige Stunden lang; for three days, drei Tage lang. 2, fraßlos. 3, vor Kälte erstarrt. 4, 'to hold', here sich halten. 5, Say 'Upon this (Here-upon) he fell into the water and sank to the bottom (in die Tiefe hinab'sinken)'. 6, crowd = company. 7, In the morning, am Morgen. 8, sheep-skin coat, Schafpelz, m. 9, nehmen; the appositional clause 'the sole relater (Überbringer) of the dismal (traurig) tale (Kunde)' must be placed immediately after the pronoun 'him', to which it belongs; and mark that: **The apposition must always agree in number, gender, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.** 10, to carry an intelligence to a person, Einem eine Botschaft verkünden. See App. § 5. 11, man; into his presence = to (zu) him, which place after 'boy'. 12, **The Present Participle may be used adverbially, as in English, to denote manner or state.** Say 'who told him kneeling and weeping bitterly, that', etc. 13, was — board, mit Mann und Maus gesunken sei. 14, like — man = as if dead (wie tot), which place after 'fell'. 15, Say 'and never has one seen him smile again'.

Section 54.

BARLEY (S. 3, N. 2).

Barley is (S. 2, N. 1) now principally used⁶ to make¹ malt for² brewing beer and distilling spirits. It serves, however³, as food⁴ in the form of pearl barley, used⁵ for thickening soups. It is also used⁶ as food for poultry. Barley⁷ meal is used for fattening pigs and turkeys. Barley straw furnishes us fodder⁸ for cattle and horses. Barley is chiefly produced⁹ in the northern regions of Europe, in Central Asia, and in North

America. It is much hardier¹⁰ than wheat, resists¹¹ *both* heat and drought better, and¹² may therefore be raised from poorer soils. It¹³ is said to be the most ancient food⁴ of (S. 3, N. 2) man.—NELSON'S READERS.

1, bereiten, see S. 19, N. 7. 2, for — spirits, zur Bierbrauerei und Branntweinbrennerei, after which supply daraus. 3, indessen. 4, Nahrungsmittel, n. 5, Say 'which one uses for thickening soups', zur Verdickung der Suppen. 6, benutzen and gebrauchen, which use alternately; as — poultry, als Hühnerfutter. 7, Say 'With barley meal one fattens (mästen) pigs and turkeys (türkische Hühner)'. 8, Vieh- und Pferdefutter. 9, gebaut. Where must the p. p. be placed here? 10, kräftig. 11, 'to resist' here = to bear, vertragen. Use the def. art. before the first noun. 12, Say 'and can therefore be cultivated (an'bauen) upon poorer soil'. Supply the adverb auch after 'therefore'. 13, It is said to be, sie soll ... sein. The verb *sollen* is frequently used to express an assertion of another person, when it answers to the English 'it is said', 'it is reported', 'they say'.

Section 55.

THE SOLDIER AND HIS FLAG (Fahne).

On seeing¹ a young Prussian soldier who was pressing his flag to his bosom in the agonies of death, Napoleon said to his officers: "Gentlemen², you see that a soldier has for his flag a sentiment almost approaching³ idolatry. Render⁴ funeral honours at once to this young man. I regret that I do not know his name, that⁵ I might write to his family. Do not take⁶ away his flag; its silken folds will be an honourable shroud⁷ for him.—GENERAL BOURRIENNE⁸.

1, When the Present Participle is used in adverbial clauses of time, it must generally, by the help of one of the conjunctions *als* (when), *nachdem* (after), *indem* (while, whilst), and *während* (while, whilst), be changed into a finite verb, i. e. one with a personal termination; thus—

Hearing his opponent speak in this way, his features assumed an expression of contempt.

Having given his orders, the officer rode quickly away.

Looking at me in a suppliant manner, a tear glittered in her eye.

I saw it *when passing* the house this morning.

Als er seinen Gegner so sprechen hörte, nahmen seine Züge den Ausdruck der Verachtung an.

Nachdem er seine Befehle erteilt hatte, ritt der Offizier schnell von dannen.

Indem sie mich bittend ansah, glänzte eine Thräne in ihrem Auge.

Ich sah es, als ich heute Morgen beim Hause vorüberging.

Consequently, the above passage must be rendered thus: 'When Napoleon saw (*bemerken*) a young Prussian soldier who was pressing his flag to (an) his (S. 43, N. 9, A) bosom (*Herz*) in the agonies of death (im Todeskampfe, which place after 'flag'), he said to his officers': etc. 2, Say 'You see, gentlemen'.

3, 'to approach' here = to border (an etwas grenzen). For the construction see S. 16, N. 4. 4, Say 'Bury this young man (Jüngling) without delay with military honours'.

5, that — write, um ... schreiben zu können. He writes *to* me once a month, Er schreibt einmal monatlich an mich.

6, Supply the pronoun *ihm* (from him) after the Imperative. 7, Leichentuch, n.; 'for him' must be rendered by the dat. of the pers. pron., which place after the copula 'will'. 8, Der General Bourrienne war Privatsekretär und späterer Biograph Napoleons des Ersten.

Section 56.

OUR CULTIVATED¹ NATIVE² PLANTS.

Most³ of the fruits which grow on trees, *such* as our apples and pears, have⁴ been greatly⁵ improved and raised⁶ above their natural state by grafting and other artificial means.

Of⁷ cultivated native plants, the chief are celery⁸, parsley, the cabbage, turnip, carrot, parsnips, and the hop. The onion is⁹ a native of South France, the lettuce of Greece, the radish of China, and the rhubarb, now¹⁰ so largely used in pies and puddings, of Russia. Cress comes from¹¹ Persia, spinach from some¹² part of Asia, and the Jerusalem artichoke¹³ from Brazil.—HEWITT, PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF ENGLAND AND WALES.

1, verebelt. 2, einheimisch. 3, The clause 'Most — trees' may be briefly rendered by 'Die meisten Baumfrüchte'. 4, Here follows the adverbial clause 'by grafting — means'. 5, bedeutend. 6, 'raised — state' may be elegantly rendered by the p. p. 'cultivated' (verebelt). 7, Say 'The principal cultivated native plants are', etc. 8, See S. 3, N. 2. I should recommend to repeat the art. before each of the following six nouns. 9, is a native of, stammt aus. 10, 'Now — puddings'. This elliptic clause must be completed in German. Say 'which is now so largely (much) used in pies (Pasteten) and puddings'. 11, aus. 12, 'some', here irgend ein. 13, Erdartichoke, f.

Section 57.

THE BEQUEST¹.

I.

An old avaricious English gentleman² had three sons, of whom one³ was a good-natured but light-minded fellow. Whenever (S. 18, N. 6) he fell⁴ into any trouble, he excused himself on⁵ the ground that⁶ he was seeing life. His prodigality, however, annoyed⁷ his father so much⁸, that he resolved to disinherit (S. 1, N. 2) him. His friends interceded⁹ in his favour, but their efforts were in vain.

When the old gentleman¹⁰ felt his end approaching, he called his sons together¹¹, and said to them: "I leave¹² to my son John my whole estate¹³, and desire him¹⁴ to be frugal." John¹⁵, in a sorrowful tone, as is usual on such occasions, prayed heaven to prolong his father's life, and give him health to enjoy the gift¹⁶ himself.

1, Das Vermächtnis. 2, Engländer. 3, Say 'the one'. 4, to fall into trouble, in Verlegenheit geraten. 5, on the ground, damit. 6, daß er das Leben kennen lerne. Comp. App. §§ 28 and 30. 7, verdrießen. See S. 5, N. 2. 8, sehr. 9, to intercede in a person's favour, zu gunsten einer Person sprechen. He interceded in my favour, er sprach zu meinen gunsten. Supply the adverb zwar (it is true) after the verb. 10, Herr; to feel one's end approaching, sein Ende heran'nähen fühlen. 11, together, zu sich. 12, 'to leave', here = to bequeath. 13, Befizung, f. 14, The construction of the Infinitive with an Accusative, so frequently employed in English as an imitation of the Latin and Greek, is unknown in German. Such constructions must be rendered by a subordinate clause introduced by the conjunction daß; as—

I know *him* to be an industrious man. Ich weiß, daß er ein fleißiger Mann ist.

See also App. § 34, and say 'and wish that he may be frugal (*sparsam*)'. 15, This passage requires the following construction: 'As (*wie*) it is usual (*üblich*) on (*bei*) such occasions, John (App. § 15) implored heaven in (*mit*) a sorrowful tone to prolong', etc. The noun *Himmel* is always used with the article. 16, *Vermächtnis*.

Section 58.

THE BEQUEST.

II.

The father continued: "I leave to my son James my money¹, amounting² to four thousand pounds³." "Ah, father," said⁴ James, of course in⁴ great affliction, "may (App. § 34) heaven give you life and health to enjoy the gift yourself." The⁵ father, then addressing the spendthrift, said: "As⁶ for you, Dick, you⁷ will never come to good; you will never be rich. I leave you a shilling to (S. 19, N. 7) buy⁸ a halter." "Ah, father," said Dick in a most⁹ melancholy voice, "may heaven give you life and health to enjoy the gift yourself!"—ANONYMOUS.

1, 'money', here = ready money, *bares Geld*. 2, to amount to something, *sich auf etwas belaufen*. See S. 16, N. 4. 3, *Das Pfund*, one pound English money, never takes the sign of the Plural in German, and the same refers to '*die Mark*', a German coin corresponding to one shilling English. 4, said = exclaimed; in = with. 5, Say 'Upon this the father addressed himself (*sich wenden*) to (an) the spendthrift and said'. 6, As—Dick, *Was dich betrifft, Richard*. 7, Introduce this clause by the adverbial conjunction *so*, and see App. § 15; to come to good, *zu etwas Bistem kommen*. 8, The German language, as a rule, requires that the person for whose benefit an action is performed, is clearly indicated. When this is not done by a noun in the dative case, it is generally done by means of the dative of a personal pronoun; as—

I will buy a hat.

We have built a house.

Ich will mir einen Hut kaufen.

Wir haben uns ein Haus gebaut.

Supply, therefore, the necessary pronoun after the conjunction *um*; a halter = a rope, *Strick*, m. 9, Render 'most' here by '*höchst*'.

Section 59.

WHEAT.

Wheat is the most valuable¹ of all grains, because² from it, chiefly, we obtain the flour of which bread is made. In order to make³ flour, the grains of wheat⁴ are crushed⁵ between stones in a mill. The crushed mass is then separated⁶ into two parts,—bran⁷ and flour. Bran is the outer husk of the grain, which is used (S. 4, N. 4) for⁸ fattening cattle, etc.⁹ It¹⁰ does no harm, however, to mix the bran with the flour; the mixture is more nourishing than the pure flour. The bran makes the flour and the bread darker in colour; but this is no disadvantage, for brown bread is both¹¹ cheaper and more nourishing than white bread. Bread¹² is often artificially whitened by¹³ the addition of alum and other injurious substances. Wheat is¹⁴ chiefly grown in France, Germany, Austria, Southern Russia, (S. 46, N. 6) the British Isles, Australia, the United States, Canada, Egypt, and Northern Africa.—NELSON'S READERS.

- 1, wertvoll; 'grain', here Kornart, f. 2, Say 'because it yields (liefern) us chiefly the flour for our bread'. 3, bereiten. 4, Form a compound noun of 'wheat' and 'grains' (Körner). 5, zermahlen. 6, sondern. 7, The prep. 'in' must be repeated before this and the following noun. 8, for — cattle, zur Viehfütterung. 9, u. s. w., i. e. und so weiter. 10, It — however, Übrigens schadet es nichts. 11, both ... and, sowohl ... als auch. 12, Say 'Bread receives (erhalten) often an artificial whiteness through an addition', etc. 13, When 'by' is equivalent to 'through', it must be rendered by *durch*. 14, Say 'grows chiefly', in order to make the construction more concise than it would be by using a p. p., which would have its place at the end of the whole clause, and would thus make the construction too lengthy.

Section 60.

OCCUPATION OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

Fishing (S. 40, N. 9) was a principal occupation, owing¹ to the frequent abstinences from flesh-meat, enjoined² by (S. 59, N. 13) a superstitious ritual³. Eels were taken⁴ in immense numbers in the marsh lands of the Eastern counties; salmon in the river Dee; herrings along the shores of Suffolk, Kent, and Sussex, in⁵ their annual migration; while larger species, as⁶ the whale and grampus⁷, were captured in the open sea. Hunting and falconry were the field-sports⁸ of the great. The beasts of the forest or chase, which were protected by fines, and reserved⁹ for privileged persons, were the¹⁰ stag, roebuck, hare, and rabbit. The wolf, fox, and boar might¹¹ be killed by¹² any one with impunity, if (S. 27, N. 7) found without¹³ the limits of the chase or forest. The wild duck and heron were the¹⁴ common quarry.—MILNER, HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

- 1, Say 'in consequence of the frequent fasting'. 2, an'ordnen. See S. 7, N. 3, B. 3, Ritus, m. 4, 'to take', here = to catch; numbers = multitudes, Menge, f.; marsh lands, Marschgegenden. 5, in = upon. 6, as = like, wie. 7, der Schwertfisch (Delphinus orca). 8, Vergnügungen. 9, reservieren. 10, I propose to use the following seven nouns in the plural and without the article, in order to avoid the frequent repetition of the same. 11, Use the Imperf. of dürfen. 12, by — impunity, von jedermann ungestraft. 13, without = outside, außerhalb. 14, Say 'the booty of all'.

Section 61.

TENDER¹, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

I.

(Extract from a Sermon preached to a congregation of children at Chicago.)

When² I was in the Sunday-school, and had just begun to read about³ David, I⁴ did not feel sure he ever was a real baby, and had to be fed with a teaspoon; or that he ever was a real little boy⁵ that⁶ went to school as I did, and played marbles⁷, and had a peg-top⁸, a jack-knife⁹, some slate pencils, ever¹⁰ so many buttons, and a piece of string¹¹, all in one pocket; that¹² he ever had to try hard not to cry when he went to school very cold¹³ mornings; or¹⁴ that the teacher spoke sharp to him,

when the little chap had tried ¹⁵ his best to get ¹⁶ his lesson, and ¹⁷ did not get it very well.

- 1, Barfüßend, zuverlässig und treu.
- 2, Say 'When I went to the Sunday-school', and supply the adverb *noch* after the subject.
- 3, über.
- 4, Say 'I could scarcely imagine, that he ever really had been a little child and had to be fed with a teaspoon (und mit einem Theelöffel habe gefüttert werden müssen)'.
- By carefully reading §§ 29 and 30 of the Appendix, the student will see that the verbs depending on the governing verb '*imagine*' must stand in the Perfect of the Subjunctive Mood. According to S. 52, N. 8, however, the auxiliary '*sei*' may be omitted in the clause 'that he ever really had been a little child'.
- 5, Junge. The auxiliary '*sei*' may again be omitted here.
- 6, that = who; as I did = 'like myself', which place immediately after the relat. pron.
- 7, Schuffer. Remember that both this and the next clause are depending on the relative clause 'that — did'; place, therefore, the verb 'played' after 'marbles', and the verb 'had' after 'peg-top'.
- 8, Kreisel, m.
- 9, Taschmesser, n.
- 10, ever so many, eine Unzahl von, i. e. no end of.
- 11, ein Stück Bindfaden.
- 12, that — hard, daß er sich je habe anstrengen müssen.
- 13, cold mornings, an einem sehr kalten Morgen, which place after the subject. 'To go to school', zur (or in die) Schule gehen.
- 14, Say 'or that the teacher had ever scolded (schelten) the little fellow (Bursche), when he had', etc.
- 15, to try one's best, sich Mühe geben.
- 16, to get one's lesson = to learn one's lesson, seine Lektion erlernen.
- 17, Say 'and had not learnt it well', and supply the adverb *noch* (nevertheless) after the objective pronoun 'it'. For the position of the verb see App. § 17.

Section 62.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

II.

But you¹ know, ministers² have to find out all about such men as David; and I have found out enough to³ make me feel sure he was once a little boy, *just like one of you*; that he had⁴ to learn verses, like you; and didn't like (S. 20, N. 2, A) it, like you; and that he did not like to go to bed early, or to get up early, like you.

I rather⁵ fear that, in the summer, he⁶ ate green apples, unripe melons, hard peaches, and sour plums, as⁷ you *do*; and⁸ got sick, and was very sorry, and had to take⁹ medicine, as you *do*; that he said he would (App. § 28) never do it again, and that he¹⁰ then never did *do* it again, as¹¹ I hope you will neither.

- 1, Use the 2nd pers. pl., and after the verb supply the adverb '*ja*', which will be equivalent to the English 'I am sure'.
- 2, die Pfarrer, before which supply the conj. *daß*. Have to = must; to find out, ausfindig machen; all — David = all (S. 3, N. 7) that relates (sich beziehen) to (auf) such men as David.
- 3, Say 'to (S. 19, N. 7) be convinced, that', etc. Just — you, wie ihr.
- 4, The auxiliaries '*to have*' and '*to be*' followed by the infinitive of another verb, must generally be rendered by the auxiliary verb of mood '*müssen*'; as — I have to do it, Ich muß es thun.
- 5, fast, adv.; see S. 5, N. 2.
- 6, The subject 'he' must immediately follow the conj. 'that'.
- 7, as you do, wie ihr.
- 8, that he became (werden) ill; 'and — sorry', say 'felt (empfinden) bitter repentance'.
- 9, 'to take', here einnehmen.
- 10, Here follows the pron. 'it'.
- 11, wie ihr es hoffentlich auch nicht wieder thun werdet.

Section 63.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

III.

Now¹, just here I was trying to see what² sort of boy David was when he grew³ bigger; and, when I shut my eyes, and so tried⁴ to see it all clearly, I heard a noise right⁵ under my study window. This was⁶ about⁷ four o'clock, Friday afternoon; the schools were out, and the children running home⁸. I turned my head to see what was the matter⁹, and then (App. § 14) I saw what I want¹⁰ to tell you. About ten boys were standing together¹¹. All at once a big boy knocked¹² a little boy¹³ down, and rolled him in the snow¹⁴. The little boy got up¹⁵, and said: "What¹⁶ did you do that for?" Then¹⁷ the big boy again approached the little boy¹⁸, and I believe¹⁹ he would have knocked him down again¹⁹, had not the little boy¹³ walked sobbing away²⁰ towards home.

- 1, Hier wollte ich nun sehen. 2, what sort of, was für ein. 3, werden.
4, sich bemühen. 5, just under the window of my study. 6, Here follow the words 'on Friday afternoon'. 7, Supply here the prep. 'at', um. 8, The English 'home', after a verb denoting motion, must be rendered by *nach Hause*, and 'at home', after a verb denoting rest, by *zu Hause*. 9, the matter is, es giebt, verb impers. Use the Present of the Subj., according to App. § 32. 10, The auxiliary verb of mood 'wollen' expresses wish and want; as—

Was wollen Sie?

What do you wish?

Zu wem wollen Sie?

Who is it you want?

- 11, neben einander. 12, to knock down, zu Boden schlagen. 13, The noun 'boy' need not be repeated here. 14, Supply here the adverb 'about' (umher). 15, to get up, aufstehen. 16, What ... for = Why. Use the 2nd pers. sing. 17, Upon this, S. 44, N. 4. 18, Supply here the conj. daß. Read carefully § 36 of the App., and construe accordingly. Use the Pluperfect Subj. in both clauses, and observe that the verb gehen always requires the auxiliary sein. See S. 29, N. 3. 19, noch einmal. 20, away towards home = home.

Section 64.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

IV.

"There," I said, when I had seen that, "I know what David never did do: he (S. 5, N. 2) never struck a boy that¹ was no match for him; he never was a coward like that big boy; for he² is a coward to³ strike a small boy so; and those⁴ others are not the boys (S. 16, N. 10) they ought⁵ to be, to⁶ stand by and see it done." I saw such⁷ a thing in a picture once, which was called the Wolf and the Lamb. A great, cruel boy⁸ meets a small, delicate lad⁹ who has lost his father, and stands over him with¹⁰ his fist doubled, just as I saw that boy stand under my study window. I think¹¹ if¹² any¹³ boy in this church were¹⁴ to see that picture, he would instantly say¹⁵: "What a shame to use¹⁶ a boy so who is not your match!"

- 1, that — him, der ihm nicht gewachsen war. 2, the pron. 'he' is used demonstratively in this clause. 3, Say 'because he can strike a small boy so'. 4, those = the. 5, To render 'ought', use the Imperf. of 'sollen'. 6, Say 'because they stand by (dabei stehen) and look at it (es mit an'sehen)'. 7, such a thing, etwas Ähnliches. The adv. 'once' must stand immediately after the verb. 8, Bube, m. 9, lad, Burſche, m. The clause 'who — father' may be briefly rendered by the adj. 'fatherless', which place before 'lad'. 10, mit geballter Faust. 11, When the verb 'to think' is used in the meaning of 'to be of opinion', it must be rendered by 'glauben', and when it is used in the meaning of 'to be engaged in thinking', by 'denken'. 12, The conj. 'if' must always be rendered by 'wenn'. 13, any boy = any (irgend) one of you. 14, Render the words 'were to see' by the Imperf. Subj. of ſehen. 15, auſ'rufen. 16, to use = to abuse, miß'handeln.

Section 65.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

V.

Once I read in the Life¹ of Dr. Channing, who was one of the best men that ever (je) lived² (a³ great deal better than David, because he lived⁴ in a better time), what he once did, when he was a⁵ boy and saw a⁶ thing like that. Little Channing was one of the kindest⁷ and most tender-hearted boys I⁸ ever heard of. I will tell you a story to show you how⁹ kind he was, and tender, and true. One day he found in a bush a nest full¹⁰ of young birds just out of the shell. Children, did¹¹ you ever see a¹² nest full of birds just out of the shell?—little tiny¹³, downy things¹⁴, with¹⁵ hardly more feathers than an oyster? The birds which William Channing found, were just of that kind; and when he touched them with his fingers, and felt how soft and warm they were, they all began to gape¹⁶, very¹⁷ much as you do when I preach¹⁸ a very long sermon.

- 1, Lebensbeschreibung, f. The Genitive relation must be expressed by the Gen. of the def. art. See S. 10, N. 2. Proper names are not inflected when they are preceded by an article and a common name.—Dr. William Ellery Channing, berühmter amerikanischer Geistlicher und Schriftsteller, wurde im Jahre 1780 zu Newport auf Rhode-Island geboren und starb im Jahre 1842 zu Bennington in Vermont. Seine zahlreichen ausgezeichneten Schriften haben seinen Namen auch in europäischen Kreisen berühmt gemacht. Coleridge, dessen Bekanntschaft er machte, als er im Jahre 1822 England besuchte, war so sehr von ihm eingenommen, daß er ausrief: 'He has the love of wisdom, and the wisdom of love!' 2, Use the Perfect. See S. 48, N. 2. 3, a great deal = much. 4, lived in = belonged to, an'gehören, which governs the dat. 5, Substitute the adverb noch for the indef. art. 6, See S. 64, N. 7. 7, best and most tender-feeling. 8, Say 'of whom I have ever heard'. 9, Say 'how good, tender and true he was'. 10, voll von erst soeben aus der Schale gekrochenen Vögeln. 11, Use the Perfect. 12, To avoid repetition, turn the words 'a — shell' by 'such (so) young little birds', and render 'little birds' by forming a diminutive of Vogel. 13, zart. 14, Dingerchen. 15, Say 'almost as naked as an oyster'. 16, 'to gape', here den Schnabel auf'sperren. 17, very — do, fast wie ihr den Mund aufsperrt. 18, to preach a sermon, eine Predigt halten.

Section 66.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

VI.

Well, little (S. 10, N. 2) Channing knew¹ the birds did not gape because he preached a long sermon, but (S. 6, N. 10) because they were hungry. So² what did he do? He ran straight³ home (S. 63, N. 8), got⁴ some nice soft crumbs of bread, and fed the little birds with them (S. 4, N. 5, *B*); and⁵ after that he fed them regularly every day after⁶ having come home from school. But⁷ one day (S. 19, N. 2), when he went to⁸ the nest, there it lay on the ground, torn and bloody, and the little birds all dead; and the father-bird⁹ was crying¹⁰ on a wall, and the mother-bird¹¹ was crying on a tree. Then little Channing tried¹² to tell them that he did not kill¹³ their poor young brood; that¹⁴ he never could do such a mean, cruel thing as that, and that¹⁵, on the contrary¹⁶, he had tried to feed them. But it was no use; the little birds could not understand him, and¹⁷ kept on crying; and at last he sat down, and wept bitterly.

- 1, Supply here the conj. *daß*.
- 2, Say 'What did he therefore (also) do?'
- 3, *stracks*.
- 4, *holte sich*.
- 5, and — that, *und von da an*.
- 6, *so bald* er von der Schule nach Hause gekommen war.
- 7, This passage will read more elegantly by beginning with the conj. 'when', which must be followed by the subject 'he'. 'But' should then be rendered by *jedoch*, which takes the third place.
- 8, *nach*.
- 9, *das Männchen*.
- 10, *jammern*; on = upon.
- 11, *das Weibchen*.
- 12, *sich bemühen*.
- 13, Use the Perf. Subj. according to App. §§ 28 and 30.
- 14, *daß* er eine so gemeine Grausamkeit nie begehen könne.
- 15, In subordinate clauses, the subject stands in most cases immediately after the conjunction or relative pronoun.
- 16, *im Gegenteil*.
- See S. 15, N. 3.
- 17, *und jammerten weiter*.

Section 67.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

VII.

Now¹ this was the sort of boy Channing was; and I was going² to tell you that (S. 66, N. 15) one day he heard of a big boy beating (S. 16, N. 4) a little one³, like that bad boy⁴ under my window. Channing was a little boy; he was a little man when he was full grown⁵; but *then* he had a big soul. I was going² to say he had a soul as big as a church; but indeed⁶ his soul was bigger than all *the* churches in⁷ the world;—and when he heard of that⁸ cruel boy, who was ever⁹ so much larger than himself, he went right up to him, and said: "Did¹⁰ you strike that little boy?" "Yes, I did¹¹; and what then?"—"Then," said Channing, "you are a coward, because he was no match for you; and now I am going² to whip¹² you for *doing* it." Because he had a big soul, and though he was a small boy, he¹³ went in, and fought for the right. That was the only time he¹⁴ ever fought in his life. But¹⁵ I, standing in¹⁶ this pulpit, honour him more for it than if he had (App. § 36) never¹⁷ fought at all.

1, Say 'This was (supply here the adv. also = now) little Channing's character'. Comp. S. 12, N. 2. 2, The auxiliary verb of mood 'wollen' corresponds to the English 'to be going' or 'to be on the point', followed by the infinitive of another verb. Comp. S. 6, N. 4. 3, 'One' following an adjective or a pronoun, and representing a noun understood, is not to be translated; as—Which pen shall I give you,—this *one* or that *one*? Welche Feder soll ich Ihnen geben,—diese oder jene? 4, der böse Bube. 5, tull grown, ausgewachsen. 6, in der That, which place after the verb. 7, Render 'in the' by the gen. of the def. art. 8, Use the dat. of the demonstr. pron. der; 'boy', here Bube. 9, ever so much, ich weiß nicht wie viel. 10, Use the Perfect according to S. 48, N. 2. 11, I did, das habe ich gethan. 12, züchtigen. 13, 'to go in', here in den Kampf treten. 14, he — life, in seinem Leben, daß er sich schlug. 15, Place the conj. 'but' after the subject, and, for the sake of emphasis, repeat the pron. 'I' after the rel. pron. 'der', which must introduce the next clause. 16, 'in', here auf. 17, never ... at all, nie.

Section 68.

TENDER, TRUSTY, AND TRUE.

VIII.

Boys, I like peace; I like (S. 51, N. 13) to see you play like good, true-hearted little men¹. Never² fight if you can help³ it; but⁴ never strike a boy who is no match for you, and never stand⁵ by quietly whilst another boy is doing (S. 32, N. 11) it. Tender, trusty, and true, boys; tender and true. King David, King Alfred, George Washington, William Channing, Theodore Parker⁶, more great men than I can name, were all of that sort; and⁷ they came out right, because they went in right. Brave as lions⁸, true as steel, with kind⁹ hearts for doves, ravens, and sparrows, they (App. § 14) would never tear¹⁰ birds' nests, or sling stones to¹¹ kill birds, because they felt as Jesus *did* when he said: "Blessed are the merciful."—REV. ROBERT COLLYER, THE LIFE THAT NOW IS.

1, 'man', here Bursche. 2, The adverb cannot precede the Imperative in German. 'To fight', here sich schlagen. 3, to help = to avoid. 4, Render 'but' by jedoch, which place immediately after the verb. 5, to stand by quietly, müßig dabei stehen. 6, Theodore Parker, berühmter amerikanischer Geistlicher und Gelehrter, wurde im Jahre 1810 zu Lexington in Massachusetts geboren und starb im Jahre 1860 zu Florenz, wo er sich seiner Gesundheit wegen aufhielt. Durch seine ausgezeichnete Gelehrsamkeit, große Willenskraft und seltene Menschenliebe übte er auf seine Zeitgenossen einen bedeutenden Einfluß aus, namentlich aber in Bezug auf die Befreiung der Sklaven, deren Sache er oft mit Gefahr seines Lebens und seiner Freiheit verteidigte. 7, and — right, und sie traten als Sieger aus dem Kampfe hervor, weil sie für das Recht in den Kampf traten. 8, Use the noun 'lions' with the def. art., but not the noun 'steel'. 9, 'kind' here = feeling. 10, zerstören. 11, See S. 19, N. 7, and supply the prepositional adverb damit before the object.

Section 69.

DESPATCH OF BUSINESS¹.

You² must beware³ of stumbling over a propensity, which easily begets⁴ you from⁵ the habit of not having your time fully employed⁶. I mean⁷ what the women very expressively⁸ call dawdling⁹. Your motto

must be "Hoc age." Do instantly whatever¹⁰ is¹¹ to be done, and take¹² the hours of recreation after business¹³, and not before it¹⁴. When a regiment is¹⁵ under march, (S. 27, N. 8) the rear is¹⁶ often thrown into confusion, because the front do¹⁷ not move¹⁸ steadily¹⁹ and without interruption. It²⁰ is the same thing with business. If²¹ that which is first in hand is not instantly, steadily²², and regularly despatched²³, other²⁴ things accumulate, till affairs²⁵ begin to press all at once, and no human being can²⁶ stand the confusion.—SIR WALTER SCOTT, LETTERS TO HIS SON.

1, Schnelle Geschäftserledigung. 2, Use the 2nd pers. sing. **Personal and Possessive Pronouns used in letters, and referring to the person addressed, require a capital initial in German.** 3, to beware of stumbling over a propensity, sich hüten, einem Gange zu verfallen. See S. 1, N. 3, and S. 34, N. 10. 4, beschleichen. 5, from the habit, wenn Du Dich daran gewöhnst. 6, 'to employ', here ausfüllen. 7, Supply here the pronominal adverb damit. 8, bezeichnend. 9, Zeitvergeudung. 10, was. 11, is to be done = must be done. See S. 62, N. 4, and S. 2, N. 1. 12, choose your hours of recreation (Erholungsstunde, f.). 13, business = work, which use with the def. art. 14, it = the same. 15, to be under march, auf dem Marsch begriffen sein. 16, to be thrown in confusion, in Unordnung geraten. 17, **The verb must be in the singular after a collective noun in the singular.** 18, 'to move', here fort'marschieren. 19, gleichmäßig. 20, Say 'And so it is likewise (auch) with business (Arbeit)'. 21, If — hand, Wenn die gerade vorliegende Arbeit. 22, stetig. 23, erledigen. 24, other — accumulate, so häufen sich inzwischen andere Sachen an. 25, die Arbeiten, after which place the words 'all at once', alle auf einmal. For the place of the verbs see App. § 19. 26, can — confusion, der Verwirrung gewachsen ist.

Section 70.

ON PERFUMERY¹.

I.

The² exquisite pleasure we enjoy from the smell of sweet flowers is³ alone sufficient to account for the love of perfumery. Flowers pass away⁴ so quickly that we naturally desire to preserve their sweetness⁵ as⁶ long as we can, and in this our perfumers succeed⁷ admirably. The perfume⁸ of most flowers depends upon an oil, which⁹ is peculiar to the plant, almost every sweet-scented¹⁰ plant having its own peculiar oil; and, what is of¹¹ more importance: these oils belong to a class called¹² essential or volatile, because they become¹³ volatile when¹⁴ heated.

1, Ueber Parfümerien. 2, Say 'the great enjoyment which the smell (Duft, m.) of sweet (wohlriechend) flowers affords (gewähren) us'. Place the pron. 'us' immediately after the rel. pron. 3, is — perfumery = explains sufficiently (zur Genüge) our love for perfumery. 4, to pass away, verwelken. 5, Wohlgeruch, m. 6, as — can, so lange wie möglich. For the position of the verbs see App. § 19. 7, to succeed, gelingen, v. intr. (used with sein), governs the dative of the person; as—

He succeeds admirably in this.

Dies gelingt ihm vortreflich.

Construe the above clause accord. to the preceding example; perfumer, Parfümeur.

8, 'perfume', here = scent, Duft, m. 9, The relat. clause 'which — plant' is best rendered by the attributive construction, as explained in S. 48, N. 6; peculiar, eigentümlich. 10, odorous, wohlriechend; its own

particular oil, ihr besonderes Öl. The clause 'almost — oil' must be construed accord. to S. 30, N. 4. 11, of — importance = still more important. 12, Say 'which one calls essential (ätherisch) or volatile (flüchtig) oils'. 13, to become volatile, sich verflüchtigen. 14, when heated = when they are heated (erwärmen). Comp. S. 27, N. 7.

Section 71.

ON PERFUMERY.

II.

The common or fixed¹ oils, on the contrary, *such* as olive² or linseed-oil, do not evaporate. This³ may be easily illustrated, thus: If a piece of writing-paper be touched⁴ with a fixed oil or grease, (S. 27, N. 8) it leaves⁵ a stain, which⁶, upon being held before the fire, will not disappear.

Now⁷, if any⁸ plant has a peculiar smell or taste, it is⁴ generally found that its essential oil is the cause of this (S. 4, N. 5, B). Consequently⁹, if we extract this, we really obtain¹⁰ the essence.—PROF. ASCHER.

1, fest; on the contrary, hingegen. See S. 15, N. 3. 2, as olive or linseed-oil, wie das Oliven- oder Leinsamenöl. When two compound nouns which have the last component in common follow each other, the last component is generally omitted in the first noun, which is connected with the next one by means of hyphens.—To evaporate, sich verflüchtigen. 3, Dies läßt sich auf folgende Weise leicht beweisen. 4, Turn the Passive Voice here into the Active Voice by means of the pron. man, as explained in S. 4, N. 4. 5, 'to leave', here = to leave behind; it = this. 6, The passage 'which — disappear' may be briefly rendered, thus: 'which does not disappear before the fire'. See S. 32, N. 11. 7, Reverse the order of the first two words in this clause. 8, any = a. 9, Consequently = therefore, also, which place after the subject 'we'. 10, to obtain, gewinnen; the essence (as a Nom.), der der Pflanze eigenthümliche Wohlgeruch.

Section 72.

ON INSTINCT¹.

The² following most curious instance of a change of instinct is mentioned by Darwin. The bees carried³ over to⁴ Barbadoes and the Western Isles ceased⁵ to lay up any honey after the first year, as⁶ they found it not useful *to them*. They found the weather so fine, and the materials⁷ for making honey so plentiful, that they quitted⁸ their grave, prudent⁹, and mercantile¹⁰ character, became exceedingly profligate and debauched¹¹, ate¹² up their capital, resolved to work no more, and¹³ amused themselves by flying about the sugar-houses and stinging the blacks. The¹⁴ fact is, that¹⁵, by¹⁶ putting animals in different situations¹⁷, you may¹⁸ change, and even reverse, *any of* their original propensities. Spallanzani¹⁹ brought²⁰ up an eagle upon²¹ bread and milk, and fed a dove on²² raw beef.—REV. S. SMITH.

1, über den tierischen Instinkt. 2, This clause requires a different rendering; let us say 'Darwin gives the following most (höchst) curious example of a change of the animal instinct'. The last noun requires the def. art., as explained

in S. 3, N. 2. 3, to carry over, *hinüberbringen*. The Perfect Participle qualifies the noun 'bees'. According to S. 7, N. 3, the words 'carried — Isles' may be rendered either by the attributive construction or by forming of them a relative clause. I venture to propose the use of the attributive construction as the more elegant of the two modes of rendering, and more especially in order to avoid a repetition of subordinate clauses. 4, When the preposition 'to', in connection with a verb denoting motion, stands before the names of countries, towns, islands, etc., it must be rendered by 'nach'. 5, Here follow the words 'after — year'; to lay up honey, *einen Vorrat von Honig an'sammeln*. 6, See S. 41, N. 6; it = this; not useful, *nicht mehr von Nutzen*. 7, materials — plentiful, *Materialien zur Honigbereitung in solchem Überflusse vorhanden*. 8, auf'geben. 9, prudent = cautious. 10, merzantilisch. 11, unmäßig. 12, to eat up, auf'zehren. 13, und sich daran ergösten. For rendering the passage 'by — blacks' see S. 1, N. 3. To fly about, umschwär'men, v. tr. 14, The — is, Es ist eine ausgemachte Thatsache. 15, Here follows the subject 'you' (comp. S. 66, N. 15), which translate by the impers. pron. man. 16, by — animals, durch Versehung der Tiere, i.e. by a removal of the animals. In = into; different = other. 17, Here follows the object and its attributes, 'their original (angeboren) propensities (Trieb, m.)'. 18, may = can; reverse, in entgegengesetzte Richtungen leiten. 19, Lazzaro Spallanzani, berühmter italienischer Anatom und Naturforscher, geb. 1729, + 1799. 20, to bring up, groß ziehen. 21, bei. 22, mit.

Section 73.

PETER THE GREAT AND THE MONK.

Peter the Great ordered¹ many foreign books to be translated into the Russian language, and among others² "Puffendorf's³ Introduction to the Knowledge of the States of Europe." A monk, to whom the translation of this book was committed⁴, presented⁵ it some time after⁶ to the Emperor. The monarch examined⁷ the translation; at⁸ a certain chapter, however, he suddenly changed⁹ countenance, turned indignantly to the monk, and said: "Fool, what did I order¹⁰ thee to do? Is this a translation?" He¹¹ then referred to the original and showed the poor monk a paragraph in which the author had spoken with great asperity¹² of the Russians, but which had not been translated. "Go," resumed the monarch, "and instantly carry out¹³ what I have bidden thee to do. It is not to (S. 19, N. 7) flatter my subjects *that* I¹⁴ have ordered this book to be translated, but (S. 6, N. 10) to instruct¹⁵ and reform¹⁶ them!" — ANONYMOUS.

1, Use the auxiliary verb of mood 'lassen' as a translation of 'to order', 'to command', and 'to cause', when these verbs are connected with the auxiliary 'to be' and the Past Participle of another verb; as—

The emperor *ordered* the ringleaders *to be shot*. Der Kaiser ließ die Anführer erschießen.

The admiral *commanded* the ships *to be drawn up* in order of battle. Der Admiral ließ die Schiffe in Schlachtabordnung aufstellen.

He *caused* the money *to be paid* to me. Er ließ mir das Geld auszahlen.

2, Supply here the adverb auch. 3, Puffendorfs Beiträge zur europäischen Staatenkunde. 4, an'vertrauen. 5, überreichen; it = the same, which must agree with its antecedent 'translation'. 6, after, darauf. 7, prüfen.

8, bei. 9, to change countenance, die Farbe wechseln. 10, 'to order', here befehlen. See S. 48, N. 2. 11, Say 'Hereupon he opened (aufschlagen) the original'. 12, Scharfe, f.; had spoken . . . of = had expressed himself (sich ausdrücken) . . . about. 13, verrichten. 14, Inverted construction. 15, belehren 16, reformieren; the prep. zu must be repeated before this verb.

Section 74.

THE BEAUTY OF THE EYE.

I.

Look¹ how beautiful the human eye is, excelling² in beauty the eye of every creature! The eyes of many *of the* lower animals are doubtless very beautiful. All³ of us must have admired the bold, fierce, bright eye of the eagle; the large, gentle, brown eye of the ox; the treacherous green eye of the cat, waxing⁴ and waning⁵ like the moon, as⁶ the sun shines upon it (S. 4, N. 5) or⁷ deserts it; the pert eye of the sparrow; the sly eye of the fox; the peering⁸ little bead⁹ of black enamel in¹⁰ the mouse's head; the¹¹ gem-like eye which¹² redeems the toad from ugliness; and the intelligent, affectionate expression, which¹³ looks out from the human-like eye of the horse and dog. There¹⁴ are these and the eyes of many other animals full of beauty; but¹⁵ there is a glory which excelleth in the eye of man.

1, Use the 2nd pers. sing. 2, Say 'and how it excelleth in (an) beauty the eye of every other creature!' The words 'in beauty' should be placed before the verb. 3, All of us, wir alle; all of them, sie alle; all of you, ihr (or Sie) alle. Render the words 'must have' by 'have certainly'. The p. p. should be placed after 'eagle'. 4, sich vergrößern. 5, sich verkleinern. 6, as = according as, je nachdem. 7, or deserts it = or not. 8, forschend. 9, Perlenauge. 10, im Mauseförschen. 11, das einem Edelsteine gleichende Auge. 12, Say 'which lets us forget the ugliness of the toad'. 13, which — the = in the. 14, There are these . . . full = These . . . are full. Full of, voller. 15, im Auge des Menschen jedoch liegt eine alles übertreffende Pracht.

Section 75.

THE BEAUTY OF THE EYE.

II.

We realise¹ this fully only when² we gaze into the faces of those we love. It³ is their eyes (S. 16, N. 10) we look at⁴ when we are near them, and⁵ recall when we are⁶ far away. The face is a⁷ blank without the eye, and the eye seems to concentrate every⁸ feature in itself. *It is* the eye *that* smiles, not the lips; *it is* the eye *that* listens⁹, not the ear; it¹⁰ that frowns, not the brow; it¹¹ that mourns, not the voice. Every sense and every faculty¹² seems to¹³ flow toward it, and find expression through it¹⁴, nay¹⁵, to be lost in it; for all must have felt at times as¹⁶ if a man's eye was not a part of him, but (S. 6, N. 10) the man himself; as¹⁷ if it had not merely life, but also a¹⁸ personality of its own;—as¹⁹ if it was not only a living, but also a thinking being.—PROF. G. WILSON.

1, 'to realise', here = to comprehend, begreifen. The object 'this' may be emphasized by being placed at the head of the clause. Fully only, erst ganz. 2, Say 'when we look upon (betrachten) the face (Antlitz, n.) of our loved ones (unserer Lieben)'. 3, Es sind. 4, anblicken. 5, and which we recall (sich zurückrufen). 6, are far away, fern von ihnen weilen. 7, a blank = expressionless. 8, Supply here the adj. 'individual' (einzeln). 9, lauschen. 10, Say 'the eye frowns (zürnen, i.e. to look angry)'. 11, Say 'the eye is sad'. 12, Gemütsstimmung, f. 13, to — it, dahin zu strömen. 14, 'it', here = the same. 15, ja, darin aufzugehen. 16, as if ... was, als wäre; a man's eye = the eye of a man. 17, as if it had, als hätte es. 18, a personality of its own = a self-dependent personality. 19, as if it was, als wäre es.

Section 76.

A FUNERAL DANCE¹.

Drums were beating², horns blowing³, and⁴ people were seen all running in one direction. The cause was a funeral dance. I joined⁵ the crowd, and soon found myself in⁶ the midst of the entertainment⁷. The dancers were most (höchst) grotesquely⁸ got up⁹. About a dozen huge ostrich feathers adorned their helmets. Leopard or black and white monkey-skins¹⁰ were suspended¹¹ from their shoulders, and a leather, tied (S. 7, N. 3, A) round the waist, covered a large iron bell which was strapped¹² upon the loins of each dancer; this they rang¹³ to the time of the dance. A large crowd got up in¹⁴ this style¹⁵ created¹⁶ an indescribable hubbub, heightened¹⁷ by the blowing of¹⁸ horns and the beating of seven nogaras¹⁹ of various notes²⁰. Every dancer wore²¹ an antelope's horn²² suspended round the neck, which he blew occasionally in²³ the height of his excitement.—SIR S. BAKER, THE ALBERT N'YANZA.

1, Ein Tanz zur Leichenfeier. 2, were beating = were being beaten. See S. 2, N. 1. To beat a drum, eine Trommel rühren. 3, horns (were) blowing = horns resounded (ertönen). 4, Say 'and one saw all (alles) people run in (nach) one direction. 5, sich anschließen, which requires the dat. 6, in the midst, inmitten, which requires the gen. 7, entertainment = festivity. 8, grotesk. 9, 'to get up', here ausstatten. 10, 'skin', here Fell, n., of which form a compound expression with the pl. of the nouns 'leopard' and 'monkey', as explained in S. 71, N. 2. 11, were suspended = hung; from = von ... herab. 12, to be strapped, mit einem Riemen befestigt sein; 'upon' here an. 13, schellen; to — dance, während des Tanzens zum Takte. 14, auf. 15, style = manner. 16, created = made. 17, Say 'which was (Passive) still heightened', according to S. 7, N. 3, B. 18, Use the gen. of the def. art. 19, 'nogaras'—which use in its unaltered form in German—are a kind of drum. 20, notes = sounds. 21, wore ... suspended = had ... hanging; 'round', here an. 22, To render 'antelope's horn' form a compound noun of the pl. of the noun 'antelope' and the singl. of the noun 'horn'. Comp. S. 36, N. 7, A, B, and C, and mark further:

A. Although the first component of **Compound Nouns** is generally in the singular, some require the plural; as—Kinderstube, f., nursery; Bildergalerie, f., picture-gallery.

B, 1. The first component takes sometimes one of the **genitive inflections** **s, es, u, en, or ens**, according to the declension it belongs to; as—Königsmantel, m., royal mantel; Tageslicht, n., day-light; Selbennut, m., heroism; Friedensliebe, f., love of peace.

2. We find, however, the terminations **s** or **es** used as a connecting link between the two components for the mere sake of euphony, even in cases where the first component is a feminine noun; this is more especially the case when the first component is in itself a compound expression, when it has one of the derivative suffixes *heit, ing, ling, feit, schaft, tum, ung*, or when it is a noun of foreign origin terminating in *ion, at, and ät*; as—*Geburtstag, m.*, birthday; *Hochzeitsgeschenk, n.*, wedding present; *Weisheitslehre, f.*, philosophy; *Religionsbildung, f.*, toleration; *Universitätsgericht, n.*, university court.

C. In a few compound nouns we find one of the euphonic terminations **e, er, and l** used as a connecting link between the two components; as—*Tageswerk, n.*, day's work; *Ashermittwoch, m.*, Ash-Wednesday; *Heidelbeere, bilberry*.

D, 1. When the first component consists of the stem of a verb, it is often joined to the second component without a connecting link; as—*Schreibbuch, n.*, copy-book.

2. Sometimes a euphonic **e** is used as a connecting link; as—*Zeigefinger, m.*, forefinger; *Haltepunkt, m.*, place of stopping.

23, in — excitement = in the highest excitement.

Section 77.

ABSOLUTION BEFOREHAND¹.

When Tezel² was at Leipzig, in the sixteenth century (App. § 9), and had collected³ a great deal of money from all ranks⁴ of people, a nobleman, who suspected imposition, put⁵ the question to him: "Can you⁶ grant absolution for a sin which a man⁷ shall intend to commit in future?" "Yes," replied the frontless commissioner, "but on⁸ condition that a proper⁹ sum of money be actually¹⁰ paid down." The noble (S. 5, N. 2) instantly produced the sum demanded, and in return¹¹ received a diploma¹², sealed and signed by Tezel, absolving¹³ him from the unexplained crime which he intended to commit. Not¹⁴ long after, when Tezel was about (S. 6, N. 4) to leave Leipzig, the nobleman made¹⁵ inquiry respecting the road he would probably travel¹⁶, waited¹⁷ for him in ambush at a convenient place, attacked and robbed him, then¹⁸ beat him soundly with a stick, sent him back to Leipzig with¹⁹ his chest empty, and²⁰ at parting said: "This is the fault²¹ I intended to commit, and for which I have your absolution²²."—REV. R. K. ARVINE.

1, Der im voraus erteilte Ablass.

2, Johann Tezel (eigentlich Diezel) wurde um 1460 zu Leipzig geboren, trat 1489 in den Dominikanerorden, ward 1502 vom Papst zum Ablassprediger bestellt, später zum apostolischen Kommissar ernannt und mit dem Ablasshandel in Sachsen betraut, zog sich jedoch, von Luther seit dem 31^{sten} Oktober 1517 wegen seiner unverschämten Anmaßungen bekämpft, in das Paulinerkloster zu Leipzig zurück, wo er im Jahre 1519 verstarb.

3, einnehmen; a great deal of, eine Masse

4, ranks = classes; people, Bevölkerung, f., see S. 3, N. 2.

5, 'to put a question to somebody' here = to ask somebody.

6, I propose to use the 2nd pers. pl. in this case, and to supply the adverb auch after the pron.

7, a — future = which one only (erst)

8, unter, followed by the def. art.

9, angemessen; to render 'sum of money' form a comp. n. of which the noun

'money' forms the first component and the noun 'sum' the last.

10, actually = directly; to pay down, auszahlen.

11, in return, dafür, which place after the verb.

12, 'diploma', here Ablassbrief, m.

13, absolvieren. See S. 16, N. 4; unexplained, ungenannt.

14, Not — after = Soon

upon that. See S. 4, N. 5, B. 15, to make inquiry respecting something, *sich nach etwas erkundigen*. 16, 'to travel', here *ein'schlagen*. 17, to wait in ambush for somebody, *einen in einem Hinterhalte auf'lauern*. 18, the adverb *dann* must be placed after the object. To beat a person soundly with a stick, *einen tüchtig durch'prügeln*. 19, say 'with empty chest (Kasten, m.)', which place immediately after the object. 20, *und rief ihm beim Abschied noch zu*. 21, 'fault', here = *sin*. 22, Supply here the adverb *schon*.

Section 78.

STAND UP¹ FOR WHATEVER IS TRUE, MANLY, AND LOVELY².

I.

In³ no place in the world has individual character more⁴ weight than at a public school. Remember⁵ this, I beseech⁶ you, *all* you boys who⁷ are getting into the upper forms. Now⁸ is the time when you may⁹ have more¹⁰ influence for good or evil in the society you live in than you ever can have¹¹ again. Quit¹² yourselves like men, then; speak out¹³ and stand up for whatever is true, manly, and lovely. Never (S. 68, N. 2) try to be popular¹⁴, but *only* do your duty, and help¹⁴ others to do theirs; and when you leave the school (S. 27, N. 8), the¹⁵ tone of feeling in it will be higher than you found it, and so you¹⁶ will do good to¹⁷ generations of your countrymen yet unborn. For boys follow one another in herds like sheep, for¹⁸ good or evil; they¹⁹ hate thinking, and²⁰ have rarely *any* settled²¹ principles.

1, Use the 2nd pers. pl.; whatever = all that; see S. 3, N. 7. 2, *schon*. 3, In no place = Nowhere. 4, more weight = greater influence. 5, Remember this = Think (2nd pers. pl.) of it; see S. 4, N. 5, B. 6, *bitten*. 7, *Der* (m. sing.), *die* (f. sing.), and *die* (pl.) must be used as relative pronouns in reference to a personal pronoun of the first or second person of either number, and also in reference to the personal pronoun of the third person plural (*Sie*) used instead of the second person plural. For the sake of emphasis the personal pronoun is frequently repeated after the relative pronoun, and the verb must then agree with the personal pronoun, as the following examples will show.

<i>Verächtest du mich, die ich deine Freundin bin?</i>	<i>Dost thou disdain me, who am your friend?</i>
<i>Ich, der ich dich von deinen Feinden befreite.</i>	<i>I, who delivered thee from thy enemies.</i>

Construe the clauses 'who — forms' accordingly; to get into the upper forms, in die obern Klassen versetzt werden. 8, Say 'The time has [is] come'; when, *wo*. 9, may have = exercise (*aus'üben*) likely. 10, Say 'more good or evil influence upon (auf) the company surrounding you (*Eure Umgebung*)'. 11, have = exercise. 12, Say 'Be therefore manly'. 13, 'to speak out', here *gerade und frei heraus'sprechen*; 'to be popular', here *sich beliebt machen*. 14, When the following verbs are used in connection with another verb governed by them, that verb stands in the Infinitive without the preposition *zu* (Comp. S. 34, N. 10):

A. The auxiliary verbs of mood: *dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, and lassen*. (See Expl. 1.)

- B. The verbs: *bleiben*, *fahren*, *gehen*, *finden*, *fühlen*, *heißen* (to bid, to command), *helfen*, *hören*, *lehren* (also with *zu*, Comp. S. 43, N. 10), *lernen*, *machen*, *sehen*, and *reiten*. (See Expl. 2.)
- C. The verb *haben* in phrases like Expl. 3.
- D. The verb *thun* followed by *nichts*. (See Expl. 4.)

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ich mag gern schreiben. | I am very fond of writing; I like to write. |
| 2. Der Diener fand seinen Herrn tot am Boden liegen. | The servant found his master lying dead on the floor. |
| 3. Er hat gut reden. | It is all very well for him to talk. |
| 4. Er thut nichts als essen und trinken. | He does nothing but eat and drink. |
- 15, the — higher = the moral tone of the same (gen.) will be a higher *one* (S. 67, N. 3). 16, Supply here the adverb *noch*. 17, *an*; remember that the p. p. 'unborn' is used as an adj. and qualifies the noun 'generations'. 18, Say 'as well in evil as in good'. 19, *das Denken ist ihnen unbequem*. 20, Supply here the pron. 'they'. 21, *fest bestimmt*.

Section 79.

STAND UP FOR WHATEVER IS TRUE, MANLY, AND LOVELY.

II.

Every school (S. 5, N. 2), indeed, has its own traditionary standard¹ of right and wrong, which cannot be transgressed with impunity, marking² certain things as low³ and blackguard, and certain others as lawful and right. This standard is ever⁴ varying, though *it changes* only slowly and little by little. It⁵ is the leading⁶ boys only, who (S. 15, N. 3), subject⁷ to such standard, give, for⁸ the time being, the tone to⁹ all the rest, and¹⁰ make the school either a noble institution for¹¹ the training of Christian Englishmen, or a place¹² where a *young* boy will get¹³ more evil than if he were turned out¹⁴ to make his¹⁵ own way in London streets.—THOS. HUGHES, TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS.

- | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|
| 1, Maßstab, m.; 'of', here für. | 2, bezeichnen, see S. 16, N. 4, and introduce the clause with the conj. und. | 3, schändlich und gemein. | 4, beständig. |
| 5, 'It is', here Es sind. | 6, tonangebend. | 7, diesem Maßstab unterworfen. | |
| 8, zur Zeit. | 9, to = for. | 10, Supply here the rel. pron. 'who'; to make the school a noble institution, aus der Schule eine sittliche Anstalt machen. | |
| 11, to (S. 19, N. 7) educate Christian (christlichgesinnt) Englishmen. | 12, Stätte, f. | 13, 'to get', here sich an'eignen. | 14, hinausstoßen; use the First Conditional. |
| 15, his — streets = his fortune in (auf) the streets of London. | | | |

Section 80.

WORK¹ IS A GREAT COMFORTER.

Two neighbouring gardeners had the misfortune of² having their crop of early peas killed by frost. The one called³ upon the other to condole⁴ with him. "Ah," cried he, "how unfortunate⁵ we have been, neighbour!

Do you⁶ know? I have done nothing but fret ever since⁷. But it seems you have there a fine healthy⁸ crop⁹ coming¹⁰ up already; what¹¹ is it?" "This?" cried the other gardener, "why¹², it is a crop of peas (S. 16, N. 10) I sowed (S. 48, N. 2) immediately after my loss." "What¹³, coming up already?" replied the fretter¹⁴. "Yes, while you were fretting¹⁵, I¹⁶ was working." "What! don't you fret when you have a loss?" "Yes, but I always put it off¹⁷ until *after* I have repaired¹⁸ the mischief¹⁹." "Why, then you have no need to fret at all." "True²⁰," replied the industrious gardener, "I²¹ find working better than fretting." —ANONYMOUS.

- 1, Die Arbeit ist eine süße Trösterin. 2, of — frost = that (S. 1, N. 3) their young peas were (S. 2, N. 1) destroyed by (durch, followed by the def. art.) frost. 3, to call upon a person, einen besuchen. 4, to console with a person, einem sein Beileid bezeigen. 5, I have been unfortunate, es ist mir unglücklich ergangen. 6, Use the 2nd pers. sing. 7, ever since = 'the whole time', which place after the auxiliary; 'but fret', als mich geärgert. 8, kräftig. 9, Saat, f. 10, 'to come up' here hübsch grün aussehen. 11, Was ist's für eine? 12, ei; it — peas = they are (es sind) young peas. 13, Wie; coming up already? = and they look already so (supply hübsch) green? 14, der Trauernde. 15, sich ärgern. 16, Say 'I have worked'. 17, aufschieben. 18, wieder gut machen. 19, Schade, m. 20, Nichtig. 21, Say 'I find it better to work than to fret'.

Section 81.

PERSEVERANCE FINDS ITS REWARD.

Robert Bruce, restorer¹ of the Scottish monarchy, being² pursued one day by the enemy, was³ obliged⁴ to seek refuge in a barn and to spend⁵ the night there. In⁶ the morning, when he awoke, he saw a spider climbing up⁷ the⁸ beam of the roof. The spider fell⁹ down to the ground, but immediately tried to climb up again, when it a¹⁰ second time fell to the ground¹¹. It made a third attempt, which also failed. Twelve times did (S. 32, N. 11) the little spider try to climb up the beam, and twelve times it fell down again, but the¹⁰ thirteenth time it succeeded¹² and¹³ gained the top¹⁴ of the beam. The king (S. 5, N. 2) immediately got up¹⁵ from his lowly¹⁶ couch, and said: "This little spider has taught (S. 42, N. 4) me perseverance; I will follow its example. Twelve times have¹⁷ I been beaten by the enemy. I will try my fortune once more!" He did so¹⁸, and won the next battle. The king became the spider's scholar.—N. GOODRICH.

- 1, Use the noun with the def. art. 2, Construe according to S. 55, N. 1, and use the Imperf. of the Passive Voice; by, von. 3, The pron. er must be supplied here. 4, genötigt; 'to seek refuge', here sich flüchten. 5, zu bringen. 6, Say 'When he awoke in the (am) morning'. 7, hinaufstiegen . . . an; see S. 16, N. 4. 8, Use the indef. art. instead of the def. art. 9, auf den Boden fallen. 10, zum zweiten Male. 11, herunterfallen, to avoid monotony. 12, I succeed, es gelingt mir. 13, The pron. sie must be supplied here. 14, das oberste Ende. 15, sich erheben. 16, beschelden. 17, The Active Voice will read better in German. 18, so = it.

Section 82.

THE NECESSITY OF¹ VOLCANOES.

The² remarkable proofs which modern geology has presented of vast accumulations of heated³ and melted matter⁴ beneath the earth's crust⁵, make it evident that (S. 3, N. 2) volcanoes are essential⁶ to the preservation of the globe. If (App. § 36) there⁷ were no safety-valves through⁸ the crust, such vast accumulations of heat would rend asunder⁹ even¹⁰ a whole continent. Volcanoes are¹¹ those safety-valves¹², more than two hundred of which are scattered¹³ over the earth's surface. But if no such passages¹⁴ existed (see S. 27, N. 8), nothing could prevent the¹⁵ pent-up gases from accumulating till they had (Impf. Subj.) gained strength¹⁶ enough to rend a whole continent, and¹⁷ perhaps the whole globe, into fragments.—REV. PROF. HITCHCOCK.

1, Use the gen. of the def. art. 2, Use the attributive construction explained in S. 48, N. 6, and say 'The by (von, followed by the def. art.) modern geology presented (aufstellen) remarkable proofs of (von) a vast accumulation', etc. 3, *erhitzt*. 4, matter = masses. 5, *Erdrinde*, f. 6, essential = necessary; to = for. 7, 'There is' and 'there are', used in a general sense, are generally rendered by the impers. v. '*es giebt*'. 8, Say 'in the earth's crust'. 9, *auseinanderreißen*. 10, *sogar*. 11, are = form. 12, Here follow the words 'of which'. 13, *verteilen*. 14, passages = openings. 15, the — accumulating = the accumulation of the pent-up (*ein gesammelten*) gases. 16, *Kraft*, f.; enough, *hinreichend*, adj., to be placed before the noun 'strength'. 17, 'and' here *ja*. The verb 'to rend into fragments' (*auseinanderreißen*, of which form the Supine, S. 1, N. 2) must of course be placed at the end of the whole passage.

Section 83.

THE POWER OF BEAUTY.

In one of the worst parts of London there is¹ an institution² which I visited. In one room I found about³ thirty-five men listening (S. 16, N. 4) to the teaching⁴ of the daughter of a small shopkeeper⁵ in⁶ the neighbourhood. She was one of the prettiest women (S. 16, N. 10) I ever saw⁷ in my life. I noticed that the young girl was quite alone with those rough⁸ men, and said to the superintendent⁹: "Are¹⁰ you not afraid to leave the pretty young girl alone with all those men?" He replied: "I¹¹ am." "Then, why don't you go to her?" "You mistake¹² my fear. I¹³ am not afraid of their doing her any harm. They love her so much that they would lick¹⁴ the ground on which¹⁵ she walks, but I am afraid¹⁶ that some¹⁷ person may step in, who, not¹⁸ knowing the manner of the place, may¹⁹ say something impertinent²⁰ to her; and if he²¹ did, he would not leave the place²² alive²³."—LORD SHAFTESBURY.

1, Render 'there is' by the Pres. of *bestehen*. 2, *Anstalt*, f. 3, *ungefähr*. 4, *Unterricht*, m. 5, *Krämer*. 6, *aus*. 7, saw = have seen. The auxiliary may be omitted, according to S. 52, N. 8. 8, *roh*. 9, This noun

may be used in its unaltered form. 10, Furcht haben. 11, Ja, doch, which place before the words 'he replied'. 12, mistake = misunderstand. 13, I — harm = I fear not that they will do her any harm (etwas zuleide thun). 14, 'to lick', here = to kiss. 15, worauf. 16, befürchten. 17, Say 'a stranger' could (Impf. Subj.) come in. 18, not — place, unbekannt mit den Sitten dieser Anstalt. 19, Impf. Subj. 20, Ungehöriges. 21, Supply here the object 'das'. 22, Haus. 23, lebendig, before which supply the adverb 'wieder'.

Section 84.

THE ENGLISH CLIMATE.

The air is generally very moist, most¹ so near the western coast, and less so² as³ we go eastward.

It⁴ is to the abundant moisture of the air that the beautiful foliage of our trees and the rich verdure of our fields and gardens, so much praised by foreigners who visit England, are chiefly owing. Moisture is one of the two things⁵ most necessary to⁶ vegetation, and hence⁷ our fields, trees, and woods possess during the greater part of the year a continuous richness of⁸ verdure, which⁹ cannot be found under¹⁰ the sunny skies of the shores of the Mediterranean.

The weather is at¹¹ times liable to very sudden changes, depending (S. 16, N. 4) mainly on the changes of the wind¹².—HEWITT, PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF ENGLAND AND WALES.

1, most so near, und zwar am feuchtesten an. 2, so = moist. 3, je mehr. 4, Say 'To the great moisture of the air owe (verdanken) our trees chiefly their beautiful foliage and our fields and gardens their rich verdure, which by foreigners, who visit England, is praised so much'. 5, The words 'most (höchst) necessary', qualifying the noun 'things', must precede it. Things = conditions. 6, für. 7, daher, adverbial conjunction, see App. § 24, B. 8, an. 9, Say 'as (wie) one cannot find it (ihn)'. 10, under — shores, an den sonnigen Küstenstrichen. 11, mitunter. 12, Windewechsel, m.

Section 85.

THE LONDON DOCKS.

I.

Seemingly¹ boundless is the region of the docks, and the visitor who sets out with ever so definite an idea of the course he intends to pursue, will constantly find himself allured from the path. He passes² a door from³ which issues a delicious fragrance of spice, and he turns in⁴ to (S. 19, N. 7) explore⁵ it. At⁶ the top of a stone staircase he finds an enormous floor⁷ piled⁸ with bales of cinnamon and boxes of nutmeg. Here and there are great heaps which, on⁹ close inspection, prove¹⁰ to be cloves. Others, of¹¹ a brilliant sienna colour, he¹² finds to be heaps of mace. The¹³ floor above this is stored¹⁴ with Peruvian bark¹⁵. This article is used for the preparation¹⁶ of quinine, but¹⁷ it is imported in

such quantities¹⁸ as¹⁹ to render it difficult to believe that²⁰ it can all be used medicinally.

1, Say 'The region (Bereich, m.) of the docks seems (erscheinen) almost boundless (unbegrenzt), and even when the visitor begins his course (Wanderung, f.) with ever so (mit einem noch so) definite a plan about (über) the direction he intends to pursue (die einzuschlagende Richtung, Comp. S. 48, N. 6), (so) he will constantly find himself allured (ablenken) from his path'. Supply the adverb doch before the adv. 'constantly'. 2, an etwas vorbeigehen. 3, aus der ihm ein köstlicher Wohlgeruch von Gewürzen entgegenströmt. 4, hinein'gehen. 5, besichtigen; the pron. 'it' must be rendered by the persnl. pron. of the 3rd pers. pl. to agree with its antecedent 'Gewürze'. 6, Am Ende. 7, Lagerraum, m. 8, anfüllen; for the constr. see S. 7, N. 3, B. 9, bei näherer Besichtigung. 10, Construe according to the following model: This proves to be false, dies erweist sich als falsch. 11, von prächtiger Ockerfarbe. 12, Say 'he recognises as heaps'. 13, Der darüberliegende Lagerraum. 14, anfüllen. 15, Chinarinde. 16, To render 'preparation of quinine' form a comp. n. of the corresponding German terms 'quinine' and 'preparation' (Vereitung); to use, verwenden. 17, doch, adverbial conjunction, see App. 24, B. 18, Menge, f., only used in the sing. 19, as — believe, daß es sich kaum glauben läßt. 20, that — medicinally = it (to agree with Artikel) could (Pres. Subj.) only be used (benutzen) for (zu) medical purposes (Zweck, m.).

Section 86.

THE LONDON DOCKS.

II.

On¹ another floor of the same building may² be found bundles of Pimento³ sticks and Malacca⁴ canes, a great store of mother-of-pearl, a heap of delicate⁵, richly-tinted ear-shells⁶, and a quantity of ivory. Here are elephants' teeth, some⁷ of which are larger than bricks and weigh fourteen pounds. Passing⁸ out of this building, we find⁹ ourselves in an enormous shed with little black boards, hung¹⁰ at intervals, and bearing the names of vessels. Beneath these boards are¹¹ goods lying ready for shipment, and these are at least as varied¹² as the imports¹³. Here are pickles¹⁴, blacking, a¹⁵ cartload or so of bricks, and scores¹⁶ of anvils. There¹⁷ are church-bells, a chest of drawers, a rocking-horse, a mangle, and boxes, bales, and barrels innumerable¹⁸.—'THE GLOBE' NEWSPAPER.

1, In. 2, Use the Active Voice with 'man', and say 'one finds'. Comp. S. 4, N. 4. For the constr. see App. § 14. 3, Pfefferkörner, m. 4, Malakakane. 5, zart. 6, Schneckenmuscheln. 7, The clause must commence with the words 'of which'. 8, 'To pass out' here = to leave, v. trans. Construe according to S. 55, N. 1. 9, to find oneself, sich befinden. 10, aufhängen; at, in. Construe according to S. 7, N. 3, B. 11, are — shipment, liegen zur Einschiffung bestimmte Waren. 12, verschiedener Art. 13, Einfuhrartikel. 14, Use this noun in its unaltered form. 15, Say 'one or two loads of bricks'. 16, scores of, eine Unzahl von. 17, Dort sind. Comp. S. 82, N. 7. 18, in zahlloser Menge.

Section 87.

DR. JOHNSON ON¹ DEBT.

Dr. Johnson held² that³ debt is ruin. His⁴ words on the subject are weighty, and worthy of being held in remembrance. "Do not," said⁵ he, "accustom⁶ yourself to consider debt only as⁷ an inconvenience. You⁸ will find it a calamity. Poverty takes⁹ away so many means of doing good, and¹⁰ produces so much inability to resist evil, that it¹¹ is by¹² all virtuous means to be avoided. Let¹³ it be your first care, then, not to be in any man's debt. Resolve¹⁴ not¹⁵ to be poor. Whatever¹⁶ you have, spend less. Poverty¹⁷ is a great enemy to *human* happiness. It destroys liberty. It makes some¹⁸ virtues impracticable¹⁹ and others²⁰ extremely difficult. Frugality²¹ is not only the basis of²² quiet, but²³ of beneficence²⁴. No²⁵ man can help others that wants himself. We must have²⁶ enough, before²⁷ we have to spare."—S. SMILES, SELF-HELP.

1, über das Schuldenmachen. 2, 'to hold' here = to be of opinion, der Ansicht sein. 3, Say 'that debt (das Schuldenmachen) leads (Pres. Subj.; Comp. App. §§ 28 and 31) to ruin'. 4, Say 'What he says on (über) this subject (Gegenstand, m.) is important and worthy of our notice (Beachtung, f.)'. 5, Place the words 'said he' at the end of the whole clause. 6, When verbs and adjectives, governing a preposition, are used in a principal clause and are followed by a subordinate clause, either in the form of a supine (i.e. an infinitive with zu, see S. 1, N. 2) or beginning with a subordinative conjunction, the adverb *da*, in connection with the preposition required, is generally placed in the principal clause; as—

We will accustom ourselves to be thrifty.

Wir wollen uns daran gewöhnen, sparsam zu sein.

Do not excuse yourself with having had no time.

Entschuldigen Sie sich nicht damit, daß Sie keine Zeit gehabt haben.

The verb *sich gewöhnen* requires the prep. *an*. Construe accordingly, and use the 2nd pers. sing.

7, an inconvenience, als etwas Lästiges. 8, Say 'You will find that it leads to poverty', see S. 3, N. 2. 9, to take away, entziehen, after which supply the pron. *uns* (from us). 10, and—inability = and makes us so often incapable. 11, it is... to be avoided = we must avoid it (to agree with *Armut*), see S. 62, N. 4. 12, by—means, nach besten Kräften. 13, Say 'Beware therefore (*sich hüten*) of running into debt'. To run into debt, *Schulden machen*. Use the Supine according to S. 34, N. 10. 14, *sich etwas vornehmen*. 15, not—poor = not to get (*geraten*) into poverty. 16, Say 'However little (*Wie gering*, after which supply the adverb *auch*) thy income (*Einnahme*, f.) may be, lay up a part of the same (so lege doch einen Teil derselben zurück)'. 17, *Armut ist dem Glücke feind*. 18, einzelne. 19, impracticable = impossible. 20, Supply here the adverb *wiederum* (again). 21, 'frugality' here = thrift (to be used without the art.). 22, of quiet, des innern Friedens. 23, Supply here the adverb *auch*, and see S. 6, N. 10. 24, *Bohlthun*, n., to be used with the gen. of the def. art. 25, Say 'He who (*Wer*, after which supply the pron. *selbst*) needs (*bedürfen*, requires the gen. of the def. art.) help, cannot help others'. 26, to have enough, zur Genüge haben. 27, Say 'before (*ehe*) we can have to spare (*etwas übrig haben*)'.

Section 88.

A CURIOUS¹ INSTRUMENT.

I.

A gentleman², just returned³ from a journey to (S. 72, N. 4) London, was surrounded by⁴ his children, eager⁵, after the first salutation was over, to hear the news, and still more eager to see the contents⁶ of a small portmanteau, which⁷ were, one by one, carefully unfolded and displayed to view. After⁸ having distributed amongst the children a few small presents, the⁹ father took his seat again, saying, that¹⁰ he must confess he¹¹ had brought from town¹², for his own use, something far more curious and valuable than any¹³ of the little gifts (S. 16, N. 10) they had received. It was, he said¹⁴, too good to¹⁵ present to any of them; but he would, if¹⁶ they pleased, first give them a brief description of it (S. 4, N. 5, B), and¹⁷ then perhaps they might be allowed to inspect it.

- 1, merkwürdig. 2, The noun 'gentleman' may be used in its unaltered form in German. 3, heim'kehren; for the constr. see S. 7, N. 3, B. 4, um; to surround, umrin'gen. 5, Say 'who after the first salutations were eager (begierig)'. 6, der Inhalt, which has no plural. 7, Since the antecedent of the pron. *welches* (i.e. Inhalt) has no plural in German, the constr. of the passage 'which — to view' must be altered. Let us say 'from which (aus welcher, to agree with Reisetasche in the fem. sing.) then (supply the adverb auch in this place) every piece was carefully unpacked (aus'packen) and shown round (umher'zeigen)'. 8, Construe accord. to S. 55, N. 1; to distribute, verteil'en; amongst, unter, with the acc. The direct object must be placed before the words 'amongst the children'. 9, Say 'he sat down again and said'. 10, that he must confess, er wolle es nur gestehen. 11, This passage is best introduced by the conj. daß. Read carefully App. §§ 28 and 30. 12, aus der Stadt, which place before the p. p. (mitgebracht). 13, irgend eins. 14, Say 'he continued'. 15, See S. 19, N. 7, and supply here the pron. es; to any = to one. 16, Say 'if they wished it'. 17, und dann dürften sie es sich vielleicht ansehen.

Section 89.

A CURIOUS INSTRUMENT.

II.

The children were accordingly¹ all attention, while the father thus² proceeded³: "This small instrument displays⁴ the most⁵ perfect ingenuity of⁶ construction, and⁷ exquisite nicety and beauty of workmanship. From⁸ its extreme⁹ delicacy¹⁰, however, it¹¹ is so liable to injury, that it is always protected by a¹² sort of light curtain, adorned¹³ with a beautiful fringe, and¹⁴ so placed as to fall in a moment on the approach of the slightest danger. The¹⁵ external appearance of the instrument is always more or less beautiful, though in this respect there¹⁶ is a great diversity in the different sorts. The¹⁷ internal contrivance, however, is the same in all of them, and is so curious, and in its power¹⁸ so astonishing, that no one who knows it¹⁹ can suppress his surprise and admiration."

- 1, natürlich die Aufmerksamkeit selbst. 2, folgendermaßen. 3, proceeded = continued. 4, displays = shows. 5, most perfect = highest. 6, Use the gen. of the def. art. 7, Say 'and is most exactly (unübertrefflich genau) and beautifully worked'. 8, From = On account of, Wegen. 9, extreme = extraordinary. 10, Empfindlichkeit, f. 11, it — injury = it is so easily exposed (aussetzen) to (S. 3, N. 2) injury. 12, a sort of = a certain. 13, Use the attributive constr., S. 7, N. 3. 14, Say 'which is placed (angebracht) so that it falls down at (bei) the approach of the slightest danger in a moment'. 15, The — appearance, Das Äußere. 16, Render 'there is' in this instance by 'besteht (there exists), which must be placed at the end of the passage, on account of the preceding subordinate conj. obgleich. 17, The internal contrivance, Der Mechanismus. 18, power = efficacy, Wirksamkeit, f. 19, it = the same (to agree with Mechanismus).

Section 90.

A CURIOUS INSTRUMENT.

III.

"By a slight *and* momentary movement, which the owner can easily effect, he can¹ ascertain² with considerable accuracy the size, colour, shape, weight (S. 10, N. 9), and value of³ any article whatever. A⁴ person possessed of one is⁵ thus saved from the necessity of asking *a* thousand questions and⁶ trying a variety of troublesome experiments, which would otherwise be necessary; and such a slow and laborious process⁷ would, after⁸ all, not succeed⁹ half so well as a single application of this admirable instrument."

GEORGE. "If it is such a very useful thing¹⁰ (S. 27, N. 8), I wonder¹¹ that¹² everybody, that can at all afford it, does not have one."

- 1, To avoid repetition render the verb 'can' here by *imstande sein*. 2, bestimmen, which use in the form of a Supine and place at the end of the whole clause. 3, of — whatever, irgend eines Gegenstandes. 4, A — one = The possessor. 5, is — questions = needs therefore (also) not (to) ask *a* thousand questions. To ask a question, eine Frage stellen. 6, and — experiments = and to make various troublesome experiments. 7, Verfahren, n. 8, after all not, doch nicht, which must not be placed between commas. Comp. S. 15, N. 3. 9, gelingen. 10, thing = object. 11, I wonder, es wundert mich; we wonder, es wundert uns; you wonder, es wundert Sie. 12, that — one = that not everybody, who can at all (irgend) make it possible, possesses the same (to agree with 'object').

Section 91.

A CURIOUS INSTRUMENT.

IV.

FATHER. "These instruments are not so uncommon as you suppose; I myself *happen* to know several individuals¹ who² are possessed of one or two of³ them."

CHARLES. "How large are they, father? Could I hold one in my hand?"

FATHER. "You⁴ might; but⁵ I should be very sorry to trust⁶ mine to you."

GEORGE. "You must take⁷ very great care of it, then⁸?"

FATHER. "Indeed⁹ I must. I intend every night to envelop¹⁰ it in¹¹ the light curtain I mentioned; it must, besides, occasionally be washed in¹² a certain colourless liquid kept¹³ for the purpose; but this is such a delicate¹⁴ operation, that¹⁵ persons, I find, are generally reluctant to perform it. But notwithstanding the tenderness¹⁶ of this instrument, you¹⁷ will be surprised to hear that¹⁸ it may be darted to a great distance, without¹⁹ suffering the least injury, and without any danger of losing it."

1, individuals = persons. 2, who — one = who possess one. 3, of them = of the same. 4, Das könntest du wohl. 5, but — sorry = but I should be very unwilling. 6, to trust anything to a person, einem etwas anvertrauen. 7, to take great care of a thing, etwas sehr inacht nehmen. 8, then = thus, also, which place after the object. 9, Gewiß muß ich das! 10, umhüllen. 11, in — mentioned = with the above-mentioned light curtain. 12, in = with. 13, die man sich zu diesem Zwecke hält. 14, delicate = critical, bedenklich or gefährlich. 15, that — it = that one, as I have found, performs (vollziehen) the same generally but (nur) very unwillingly (ungerne). 16, Empfindlichkeit. 17, you — hear = you will hear with astonishment. 18, that — distance, daß man es in weite Fernen werfen kann. 19, Say 'without that it suffers the least injury, and without that one runs any danger of losing [to lose] it.' Comp. S. 1, N. 3.

Section 92.

A CURIOUS INSTRUMENT.

V.

CHARLES. "Indeed¹ and how high can you dart it?"

FATHER. "I² should be afraid of telling you to what a distance it will reach, lest you should think I am jesting with you."

GEORGE. "Higher than this house, I³ suppose?"

FATHER. "Much higher."

CHARLES. "Then⁴, how do you⁵ get it again?"

FATHER. "It⁶ is easily cast down by a gentle movement that does it no injury."

GEORGE. "But who can do that?"

FATHER. "The⁷ person whose business it is to take care of it."

CHARLES. "Well⁸, I cannot understand you at all; but do⁹ tell us, father, what it is chiefly used for!"

1, Das wäre! 2, Say 'I almost fear to tell you what distances it can reach, that (damit) you may not believe that I am jesting with you'. 3, 'I suppose', in interrogative sentences, may be elegantly rendered by the adverb wohl:

You have prepared your lesson well Sie haben Ihre Lektion heute wohl gut to-day, I suppose? studiert?

In elliptic sentences, where the verb is omitted, wohl generally occupies the first place. 4, The adv. denn must stand after the object es. 5, The

pron. 'you', used in a general sense, is mostly rendered by the indef. pron. man. 6, It — down, Es senkt sich . . . leicht wieder nach unten. The place of

the words by — injury' is indicated by the three dots. 7, Derjenige. 8, Well = Alas, Ach. 9, The English 'do', in sentences of entreaty, may colloquially be rendered by the adverb *doch*; as—

Do give me the book, my child! *Gieb mir doch das Buch, mein Kind!*

Section 93.

A CURIOUS INSTRUMENT.

VI.

FATHER. "Its¹ uses are so various that I know not which² to specify. It³ has been found very useful in deciphering (S. 1, N. 3) old manuscripts, and⁴, indeed, has its use in modern prints. It⁵ will assist us greatly in acquiring⁶ all kinds of knowledge, and without it⁷ some of the most sublime parts⁸ of⁹ creation would be matters¹⁰ of mere conjecture. It¹¹ must be confessed, however, that very much depends on a¹² proper application of it, being (S. 30, N. 4) possessed by many *persons* who appear to have no¹³ adequate sense of its value, but¹⁴ who employ it only for the most low and common purposes, without *even* thinking, apparently, of the noble uses¹⁵ for which it is designed, or of the exquisite¹⁶ gratification¹⁷ (S. 16, N. 10) it is capable of affording. It¹⁸ is indeed in order to excite in your minds some higher sense of its value than you might otherwise have entertained, that I am giving you this previous description."

GEORGE. "Well *then*, tell us something more about it (S. 4, N. 5, *B*)."

FATHER. "It is also of¹⁹ a very penetrating quality, and *it* can often discover secrets which can be detected by no other means. It²⁰ must be owned, however, that²¹ it is equally prone to reveal them²²."

1, Its — various = It serves for (zu) such (so) various purposes (Zweck, m.).
2, which — specify = which I shall specify (anführen). 3, It — useful = One has found it of great use.
4, and — prints = and also in (bei) our modern printing it is indeed of great use. 5, It — greatly = It helps us much.
6, sich erwerben; all kinds of, allerlei. 7, it = the same. 8, 'parts' here Gebiete.
9, Use the gen. of the def. art. 10, matters = objects.
11, It — however = I must however confess. 12, Use the def. art.; proper = right; of it = of the same. 13, no — sense = a wrong idea (Begriff, m.).
14, und. 15, uses = purposes (Zweck, m.). 16, unvergleichlich, i.e. incomparable. 17, Genuß, m., i.e. enjoyment. 18, Say 'Only to awaken in you a higher idea of its value than you probably (vermutlich) otherwise (sonst) would have had (Pluperfect Subj.), I give you this previous (vorläufig) description'.
19, of — quality = very penetrative (scharfsichtig). 20, Say 'But (Doch) I must confess. 21, that — prone = that it is just as much (eben so sehr) prone; prone = disposed, geneigt. 22, them = the same, to agree with 'secrets'.

Section 94.

A CURIOUS INSTRUMENT.

VII.

CHARLES. "What! can it speak then?"

FATHER. "It is sometimes said (S. 54, N. 13) to¹ do so, especially when² it happens to meet with³ one of its own species."

GEORGE. "What colour are ⁴ these instruments?"

FATHER. "They vary ⁵ considerably in this respect."

GEORGE. "Well, what colour is yours?"

FATHER. "I believe it is of *a* darkish colour; but if I shall confess the truth (S. 27, N. 8), I must say that I never saw (S. 48, N. 2) it ⁶ in my life."

BOTH. "Never ⁷ saw it in your life?"

FATHER. "No, nor ⁸ do I wish; but I have seen a representation of it, which (S. 48, N. 6) is so exact that my curiosity is quite satisfied."

GEORGE. "But why don't you look ⁹ at the thing itself?"

FATHER. "I should be in great danger ¹⁰ of losing it, if I ¹¹ did."

CHARLES. "Then you could buy (S. 58, N. 8) another."

FATHER. "Nay ¹², I believe I could not prevail ¹³ upon any one to part with such (S. 28, N. 9) a thing ¹⁴."

GEORGE. "Then, how did you get yours?"

FATHER. "I am so fortunate as ¹⁵ to be possessed of more than one; but ¹⁶ how I got them I really cannot recollect ¹⁷."

CHARLES. "Not recollect! Why ¹⁸, you said you brought ¹⁹ them from London to-night!"

FATHER. "So ²⁰ I did; I should be sorry if I had left them behind me (see App. § 36)."

CHARLES. "Now ²¹, father, *do* tell us the name of this curious instrument!"

FATHER. "It is—the Eye."—JANE TAYLOR.

1, 'to do so', referring to the preceding verb 'speak', must be rendered by the infinitive of that verb. 2, when — with = when it accidentally comes together with. 3, with — species, mit einem feinesgleichen. 4, are = have. 5, to vary considerably, sehr verschieden sein. 6, Supply the adverb noch after the object. 7, Never — life? = You have never seen it in your life? 8, ich wünsche es auch nicht. 9, to look at a thing, sich ein Ding ansehen. 10, 'to be in great danger', here Gefahr laufen. 11, Supply here the object 'es'. 12, O nein. 13, to prevail upon any one, jemand überreden. 14, 'thing', here Gegenstand, m. 15, noch mehr als eines zu besitzen. 16, but — them, aber wie ich dazu gekommen bin. 17, to recollect, sich etwas ins Gedächtnis zurück rufen. 18, The English 'why' is, in this instance, best rendered by the adverb 'ja', which place after the verb. 19, Use the Perf. Subj., according to App. §§ 28 and 30; here mitbringen. 20, Gewiß habe ich das. 21, Say 'But father, tell us at last,' and supply the adverb 'doch' after the pron. 'us'. Comp. Lange's German Manual, p. 354, L. 31, N. 4.

Section 95.

ANGLO¹-SAXON DRESS.

The dress of civilians in general consisted ² of a shirt and tunic descending ³ to the knee, of linen or wool, according ⁴ to the season. A belt was often worn round the waist ⁵, and a short cloak over the whole. Drawers, leather shoes or short boots and hose, or sandals, completed the ordinary costume. Labourers (S. 3, N. 2) are generally represented with shoes, but without hose. Females ⁶ of all ranks ⁷ wore long, loose

garments reaching⁸ to the ground, completely hiding (S. 16, N. 4) all⁸ symmetry of⁹ shape. Long hair, parted¹⁰ on the forehead, and falling¹¹ naturally down the shoulders, with *an* ample¹² beard and moustache, distinguish the Anglo-Saxons from the closely cropped¹³ Normans. Planche remarks that¹⁴ the character of face, as delineated in illuminations, immediately designates¹⁵ the age¹⁶ wherein¹⁷ the early¹⁸ portraits of our Lord¹⁹, which have²⁰ been reverently²¹ copied to²² the present day, were²³ originally fabricated.—MILNER, HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

1, Say 'The dress of the Anglo-Saxons'. 2, to consist of a thing, *aus etwas bestehen*. 3, to descend = to reach; to, *an* or *auf*. Use the attributive construction explained in S. 48, N. 6. 4, according to, *je nach*. 5, waist = body. 6, Females = Women. 7, *Stand*, m. 8, *jede*. 9, Use the gen. of the def. art.; form, *Gestalt*, f. 10, *gescheitelt*; on the forehead = in the middle. Use the attributive construction. 11, and falling = which fell. 12, *voll*. 13, *kurz geschoren*. 14, that — illuminations, *dass der Gesichtstypus in den Abbildungen*. 15, *bestimmen*. 16, *Zeitalter*, m., i.e. epoch. 17, wherein = in which. 18, 'early', here = first. 19, Lord = Saviour, *Heiland*, m. 20, Use the active voice with 'man'. Comp. S. 4, N. 4. 21, *so pietätvoll*. 22, *bis auf*. 23, Say 'were first (*zuerst*) made (*anfertigen*)'.

Section 96.

THE GLACIERS AT¹ SUNSET².

I.

At a distance these glaciers, as³ I have said before, look⁴ like frozen rivers (S. 26, N. 3); when⁵ one approaches nearer, or when they press⁶ downward⁷ into the valley, they look⁸ like immense crystals and pillars⁹ of ice piled¹⁰ together in every conceivable form. The effect¹¹ of this pile¹² of ice, lying (S. 48, N. 6) directly¹³ in the lap of¹⁴ green grass and flowers, is quite singular. Before we had entered¹⁵ the valley, the sun had gone down; the sky behind the mountains was clear, and it¹⁶ seemed *for* a few moments as if darkness¹⁷ was rapidly coming on. But¹⁸ in a few moments commenced a scene¹⁹ of transfiguration, more²⁰ glorious than anything I had witnessed yet. The cold, white, dismal fields²¹ of ice gradually changed²² into hues²³ of the most beautiful rose colour²⁴. A²⁵ bank of white clouds, which rested²⁶ above the mountains, kindled²⁷ and glared²⁸, as²⁹ if some spirit of light had entered into them.

1, *bei*, contracted with the dat. of the def. art. 2, Comp. S. 26. 3, Place the words 'as — before' at the head of the whole passage; 'at a distance', in *der Entfernung*. For the constr. see App. § 15. 4, 'to look like', here '*ähnlich sehen*', which requires the dat. 5, The clause 'when — nearer' may be briefly rendered by '*in der Nähe*', i.e. 'close by'. 6, *hineinbringen*. 7, *abwärts*. 8, 'to look' may here be rendered by *aussehen*, to avoid repetition; 'like' must then be turned by '*wie*'. 9, To render 'pillars of ice' form a comp. n. analogous to 'ice-pillars'. 10, to pile together, *aufschichten*; use the attributive constr. 11, *Eindruck*, m. 12, pile of ice, *Eismasse*, f. 13, *unmittelbar*. 14, Use the gen. of the def. art. 15, *betreten*, v. tr. 16, it seemed = it had the appearance. The adverbial circumstance of time '*for a few moments*' may be emphasized by being placed

immediately after the conj. 'and'. 17, Darkness is coming on, die Duns-
felheit bricht herein. 18, But — moments = But soon. 19, Form a
comp. n. 20, The passage 'more — yet' may be elegantly rendered by
'welche alles bereits Geschaute noch an Herrlichkeit übertraf'. 21, Form a comp. n.
22, to change into something, in etwas übergelien. 23, Farbkentöne. 24, Ro-
senrot, n. 25, A — clouds, Ein weißes Gewölk. 26, rested = hung.
27, kindled = reddened (erröten). 28, glared = glowed (erglühen).
29, as — them, wie von einem Lichtgeiste erfüllt.

Section 97.

THE GLACIERS AT SUNSET.

II.

You¹ did not lose your idea of the dazzling, spiritual whiteness of the
snow; yet you seemed to see it through a rosy veil, the sharp edges of
the glaciers and the hollows between the peaks reflecting wavering tints
of lilac and purple. The effect² was solemn and spiritual above every-
thing I have ever seen. These³ words, which⁴ had often been in my
mind through the day, and⁵ which occurred more often than any others
while I was travelling through the Alps, came into my mind with a pomp
and magnificence of meaning unknown before:—"For by (durch) Him
were all things created that are in⁶ heaven and that are in earth, visible
and invisible, whether⁷ they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities,
or powers⁸: all things were created by Him and for Him: and He is
before⁹ all things, and by Him all things consist¹⁰ (Col. i. 16, 17)."—
MRS. BEECHER STOWE.

1, Say 'The idea (Bisß, n.) of the dazzling, spiritual (geistig) whiteness of
the snow lost itself not; it seemed, however, as if one saw it (als sähe man es)
through a rosy veil, whilst the sharp edges (Zacke, f.) of the glaciers and the
hollows (Vertiefung, f.) between the peaks were beaming (erstrahlen) in wavering
(unbestimmt) colours of lilac and purple'. 2, Say 'The impression (Ein-
druck, m.) of it (S. 4, N. 5, B) surpassed in (an) solemnity and sublimity every-
thing (alles, S. 3, N. 7) that I had (App. § 22) ever seen'. 3, Say 'The
following words'. 4, which — mind, die mir . . . oft vor der Seele gestanden.
5, and — before = and of (an) which I was most reminded during my Alpine
journey (Alpenreise), revealed themselves only (erst) now to my mind in their
whole splendour and magnificence. 6, in — earth, im Himmel und auf
Erden. 7, whether they be, seien sie. 8, Gewalten. 9, is before
= stands above. 10, bestehen, which place after 'Him'.

Section 98.

THE LOST CHILD FOUND¹.

I.

A few years since, in the United States of America, a child was lost²
in the woods. Darkness (S. 3, N. 2) was rapidly coming on³, and the
alarmed father, accompanied by some of his neighbours, hastened away
in⁴ search of the lost child. The⁵ search continued in vain till nine
o'clock in the evening. Then the alarm bell was rung⁶, and the cry of

fire⁷ soon resounded through the streets. It⁸ was, however, ascertained that⁹ it was not fire which caused the alarm, and that the bell tolled¹⁰ to spread the more¹¹ solemn tidings¹² of a child lost¹³.

Every heart sympathised¹⁴ in the sorrows of the distracted¹⁵ parents, and multitudes¹⁶ of the people¹⁷ were seen (S. 4, N. 4) ascending the hill upon the declivity of which the village was situated¹⁸, to¹⁹ aid in the search. The night passed away, the morning dawned, and yet no tidings came. The sun arose. The whole landscape glittered in the rays of the morning sun. But the village was deserted and still; the shops were closed, and business was hushed²⁰. Mothers²¹ were walking²² the streets with sympathising²³ countenances and anxious¹⁵ hearts. There²⁴ was but one thought there :—What has become of²⁵ the lost¹³ child?

- 1, Das wiedergefundene Kind. 2, to be lost, sich verirren. 3, to come on, heranrücken. 4, in — child = to seek the missed child. 5, The — evening = Till 9 o'clock in the evening (abends) their endeavours had remained without success (erfolglos). Remember that the verbs **sein**, **werden**, and **bleiben** are conjugated with the auxiliary **sein**. 6, ziehen. 7, Form a compound noun by combining the corresponding German terms of the nouns 'fire' and 'cry' (S. 36, N. 7, A). 8, it — ascertained, Es stellte sich jedoch heraus. 9, that — alarm = that the alarm was not caused through fire. 10, ertönen. 11, more solemn = still more dreadful. 12, tidings = message. 13, Use the p. p. of the verb vermissen. See S. 7, N. 3, A. 14, Say 'shared the sorrow' (Kummer, m., which is only used in the Sing.). 15, angsterfüllt. 16, Scharen. 17, of the people = of country-people. 18, to be situated, liegen. 19, to — search, um mit suchen zu helfen. 20, 'to be hushed', here = to rest. 21, Say 'The women'. 22, to walk the streets, auf den Straßen umhergehen. 23, theilnehmend. 24, Es war nur ein Gedanke, der alle erfüllte. 25, aus.

Section 99.

THE LOST CHILD FOUND.

II.

About¹ nine in² the morning the signal gun was fired, which announced that the child was found (S. 4, N. 4), and for³ some time the suspense was dreadful. Was the child found a⁴ mangled corpse, or was it alive and well? Soon (App. § 14) a joyful shout⁵ proclaimed the safety of the child. A procession was formed⁶ by those engaged⁷ in the search. The child was placed upon a litter, hastily constructed⁸ from the boughs of trees (S. 36, N. 7, A), and borne⁹ in triumph at¹⁰ the head¹¹ of the procession.

When they arrived at the brow¹² of the hill, they stopped *for* a moment, and proclaimed their success with three loud *and* animated¹³ cheers¹⁴. The mother could no longer restrain her feelings. She rushed into¹⁵ the street, clasped her¹⁶ child to her bosom, and wept aloud. Every¹⁷ eye was suffused with tears, and *for* a moment all was silent.

But suddenly some one gave a¹⁸ signal for¹⁹ a shout. One long, loud, *and* happy note of joy²⁰ rose from²¹ the assembled multitude²², who then dispersed to (S. 19, N. 7) return home and to resume²³ their business.—

JACOB ABBOTT.

- 1, gegen. 2, in the morning, morgens. 3, for — time, eine Zeit lang.
 4, a = as a = als. 5, joyful shout, Freudengeschrei (S. 76, 22, B). 6, Use
 the reflective form sich bilden; by, von. 7, welche sich bei der Auffindung des
 Kindes beteiligt hatten. 8, Use the attributive construction pointed out
 in S. 7, N. 3; constructed, zusammengefügt; from, aus. 9, einhertragen.
 10, an. 11, Spitze, f. 12, brow = top. 13, animated = fiery.
 14, Hurra. 15, auf. 16, her = the. 17, Say 'No eye was with-
 out tears (thränenleer)'. 18, Use the def. art. 19, zu. 20, happy —
 joy, form a comp. noun of the corresponding German terms 'joy' and 'cry'.
 21, aus. 22, Menge, f. 23, to resume business, sich an sein Geschäft
 begeben.

Section 100.

PERSPIRATION.

Perspiration is the evacuation¹ of the juices of the body through the pores of the skin. It has been calculated (S. 4, N. 4) that there are² above three hundred millions of pores in the glands of the skin which covers the body of a middle-sized man. Through these pores more than one half⁴ of what we eat and drink passes off³ by⁵ insensible⁶ perspiration. If we consume eight pounds of food in⁷ a day (App. § 9; S. 27, N. 8), five pounds of it (S. 4, N. 5, B) are insensibly discharged⁸ by perspiration. During⁹ a night of seven hours' sleep we perspire about two¹⁰ pounds and a half. At an average we may¹¹ estimate the discharge¹ by¹² sensible and insensible perspiration at¹³ from half an ounce to¹⁴ four ounces per hour. This (Dies) is a most¹⁵ wonderful part¹⁶ of the animal economy, and¹⁷ is absolutely necessary to¹⁸ our health, and even to our *very* existence.—THE REV. DR. DICK.

- 1, Ausscheidung, f. 2, '(there) to be', here sich befinden. Place the re-
 flective pron. after the conjunction daß. The words 'above — pores' come
 after the relative clause 'which — man', after which place the verb befinden.
 3, entweichen. 4, die Hälfte. 5, mittelst. 6, unmerklich. 7, an.
 8, aus scheiden. 9, Say 'During a seven hours' (siebenstündig) sleep'. 10, two
 pounds and a half, dritthalb Pfund. 11, may = can. 12, durch. 13, auf.
 14, bis. 15, Use the superlative of the adv. hoch. 16, part — economy,
 Einrichtung im tierischen Organismus. 17, Substitute a relative pronoun for
 the conjunction 'and', which will improve the sentence very much. 18, für.

Section 101.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH¹ REVOLUTION OF 1848.

I.

Our first scene is a palace; the period² winter; the time³ morning, and the weather cold and miserable⁴. It is ten o'clock, and the King of France with his wife⁵ and family are⁶ discovered at the breakfast table. A splendid beginning! Calmness⁷ is the prevailing expression of every countenance save one—the king's daughter-in-law⁸, who looks anxious and disturbed. Light⁹ domestic talk, *such* as¹⁰ becomes princes and the gilded roof that¹¹ overhangs them, occupies¹² the moments. Hush¹³! Whilst the lacqueys, dressed (S. 7, N. 3, A) in gold and scarlet, move¹⁴ noiselessly about the room, a noise is heard without¹⁵. It¹⁶ becomes

more¹⁷ audible by degrees. Suddenly the door flies open, and two¹⁸ men enter, pale as ghosts. They¹⁹ are Ministers of State (S. 76, N. 22, A). They have news to communicate. Discontent prevails in the city; the²⁰ populace are out; the dragoons have surrendered their sabres, the soldiers their arms, within²¹ sight of the apartment in which the king had just now enjoyed his meal, and his daughter-in-law had looked²² so sad.

1, National adjectives require a small initial in German. 2, period = season. 3, time = day-time (S. 76, N. 22, B). Connect the two nouns by means of the genitive inflection *es*. 4, *rauh*. 5, wife, consort, **Gemahlin**, which term generally applies to the wife of a king, or to that of persons of the upper ranks of society.—The possessive adj. pron. is best repeated before the next noun. 6, Since the subject begins the sentence, the verb must be placed immediately after it. Say 'The king of France sits, etc.', and transl. the words 'at—table' briefly thus: *beim Frühstückstische*. 7, Calmness—disturbed. This period is best construed thus: With the exception of the king's daughter-in-law (i.e. the daughter-in-law of the king), who looks anxious and disturbed, bear (App. § 14) all the faces the expression of (S. 3, N. 2) calmness.—Der König war Ludwig Philipp, geb. den 6. Oktob. 1773 zu Paris, ältester Sohn des Herzogs Ludwig Philipp von Orléans. Nach der Julirevolution von 1830 bestieg er kraft Kammerbeschlusses vom 7. Aug. als König der Franzosen den Thron. Durch die Februarrevolution von 1848 gestürzt, floh er nach England, wo er fortan in Claremont unter dem Titel eines Grafen von Neully lebte und im Jahre 1850 starb. Seine Gemahlin war Maria Amalie von Sicilien, welche ebenfalls in England starb. 8, Die Schwiegertochter des Königs war Helene, Herzogin von Orléans, verwitwete Gemahlin des im Jahre 1842 infolge eines Sprunges aus dem Wagen beim Durchgehen der Pferde verunglückten Herzogs Ferdinand von Orléans, des ältesten Sohnes des Königs Ludwig Philipp, welcher acht Kinder hatte. 9, Supply the indef. art. before the adj. 'light'; 'domestic', here = confidential; talk = conversation. 10, such as, wie, after which supply the pron. *sie* to agree with 'conversation'. It becomes princes, *es* paßt sich für Fürsten. 11, 'that—them', may be briefly turned by 'over them'. 12, occupies—moments, läßt die Zeit schnell dahingehen. 13, *herch!* 14, to move, sich bewegen; about the room = in the room. 15, without = outside. 16, Use here a demonstrative pronoun to agree with 'noise'. 17, more—degrees = louder and louder. 18, two men pale as ghosts, zwei geisterbleiche Gestalten. 19, They are, *Es* sind. 20, Der Pöbel ist auf den Beinen. 21, within—meal = and this almost (fast) immediately in front of (vor) the windows of the room in which the king had just now breakfasted.—Use the verb in the Imperfect, and render *just now* by *soeben*. 22, 'to look sad', here trübe einherblicken, which use likewise in the Imperfect.—The German Imperfect is chiefly used as a historical tense and to express a past action or occurrence with reference to another. It is, however, likewise used to denote the continuance of an action, to describe a certain state, and to express customary and habitual action. Comp. S. 48, N. 2, for the use of the Perfect.

Section 102.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1848.

II.

What is to be done? The king is thunderstruck¹, hesitates *for* a moment, and² then, urged³ by the queen, instantly leaves the room. The⁴ queen follows⁵ her husband with her (S. 43, N. 9, A) eyes from

the palace window. She sees⁶ him on horseback⁷ reviewing⁸ the National Guards⁹. She has no fear, neither¹⁰ has he. What¹¹ more? He returns, accompanied³ by¹² the man whom¹³, yesterday, to satisfy public clamour, he created Prime Minister. Has the Minister power to save his master? You (S. 92, N. 5) observe at¹⁴ a glance that¹⁵ he is far more anxious to save himself. He craves¹⁶ permission to resign. Permission¹⁷ is granted, when (S. 4, N. 2) a volley¹⁸ is (S. 4, N. 4) heard close¹⁹ to their ears. What does it mean? This²⁰ man will tell you who now enters. The King has a pen in his hand, with which he is about (S. 6, N. 4) to appoint his new Prime Minister. "Sign²¹ not," shouts the²² last comer, a²³ man of the press, with the face²⁴ of a student, and the spirit²⁵ of a soldier. "Sign rather²⁶ your own abdication." The situation is fine²⁷. The pen drops²⁸ from the King's fingers; the speaker²⁹ takes it up, and quietly³⁰ replaces³¹ it in the Monarch's hand (see S. 43, N. 9).

1, wie vom Donner gerührt. 2, Here place the verb 'leaves'. 3, The Past (Perfect) Participle is often used elliptically to denote an existing state or condition; as—

Urged by his father, he instantly left the room. Von seinem Vater gedrängt, verließ er eiligst das Zimmer.

4, Construe this period by beginning with the adverbial clause 'from the palace window', von den Fenstern des Palastes aus. The verb must then follow immediately. To denote a starting point with respect to place, the English preposition 'from' is generally translated by von followed by the prepositional adverb aus, or by aus ... hinaus when the verb indicates a motion from one place to another. In relation to time we use von ... an, which often corresponds to the English 'beginning with', or to 'from' followed by 'forwards'; as—

Beginning with to-morrow (From to-morrow forwards) you must take a walk every day. Von morgen an müssen Sie jeden Tag spazieren gehen.

5, folgen requires the dative. 6, See S. 78, N. 14. 7, zu Pferde. 8, mustern. 9, the National Guards, die Nationalgarde. 10, neither has he = and he also not. 11, Was giebt's weiter? 12, by the man, von einem Manne. 13, 'whom — Minister', construe 'whom he only (erst) yesterday appointed Prime Minister, to satisfy (genügen, with the dat.) the impetuous (ungestüm) demands of the people'. To appoint, to create, ernennen.

Verbs denoting choosing and appointing, as ernennen, machen, and erwählen, to choose, to elect, require in German an Accusative followed by the prep. zu with the dative, when in English they govern two Accusatives in the active voice; as—

The King appointed Prince Bismarck Prime Minister. Der König ernannte den Fürsten Bismarck zum Premierminister.

S. 27, N. 4 will show the construction in connection with the passive voice. 14, at a glance, augenblicklich. 15, that — anxious, daß es ihm viel mehr darum zu thun ist. 16, to crave permission to resign, um Erlaubnis bitten, sein Amt niederlegen zu dürfen. 17, Use the def. art. with this noun, and supply the dat. of the pers. pron. er after the auxiliary; the verb is in the passive voice. 18, Mustetensalve, f. 19, close to their ears = in the immediat neighbourhood. 20, 'This — enters' may be briefly rendered: Der soeben Eintretende wird es uns zu erkennen geben. 21, unterschreiben, insep. comp. str. v., which use in the 3rd pers. pl. of the Imperative mood. As a mark of respect, the word 'Eure' may be inserted after this clause. 22, the

—comer, der Hereingetretene. 23, ein Journalist. 24, 'face', here = impudence or boldness. 25, spirit = courage. 26, lieber. 27, fine = critical. 28, to drop from, entfallen, with the dat. 29, Form a noun of the present participle of the verb sprechen. The noun Sprecher applies, as a rule, to the Speaker in the English House of Commons. The Speaker in the Imperial German Reichstag is styled Präsident. 30, In German, when the subject stands before the verb, the adverb must never precede the latter or, in compound forms, the copula (auxiliary verb). Comp. App. § 9. 31, wieder geben.

Section 103.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1848.

III.

The audience¹ is already touched². The poor king looks around him for³ advice; no⁴ one offers it; even the Prime Minister of⁵ yesterday is dumb; and in⁶ another instant the⁷ deed is done. The King has abdicated in⁸ favour of his grandson⁹. Behind the scenes¹⁰ you (S. 92, N. 5) hear sounds¹¹ of tumult and disorder, and your¹² heart is already beating for the issue. The King doffs¹³ his robes¹⁴, places his sword upon the table, and¹⁵, dressed (S. 102, N. 3) as a private gentleman¹⁶, is *evidently* anxious¹⁷ to depart. The Queen would¹⁸ fain meet the coming danger, but his¹⁹ Majesty has already ordered the carriages. The horses are put²⁰ to, but horses and groom are shot²¹ by the multitude²². A broad path leads from²³ the palace garden²⁴, and at the end²⁵ of it a friendly hand²⁶ has brought two hired coaches²⁷. "Let²⁸ us go," exclaims the Monarch, and, leaning (S. 53, N. 12) heavily²⁹ upon the Queen, whose³⁰ head is high and erect, he hurries on. The coaches are³¹ reached; the fugitives escape³². They arrive at St. Cloud³³, at Versailles, but not to (S. 19, N. 7. Supply the adv. dort) stay. On³⁴ they go, and at half-past eleven o'clock at night they descend at Dreux³⁵.

1, Die Anwesenden. 2, tief ergriffen sein. 3, nach. 4, No — it, Keiner erbietet sich dazu. 5, of yesterday, gestern ernannt, which use attributively before the noun. 6, in another = in the next. 7, 'to do a deed', here eine Urkunde vollziehen. 8, zu gunsten. 9, Der Enkel war der älteste Sohn des verstorbenen Herzogs Ferdinand von Orléans und seiner Gemahlin Helene. Dieser Sohn, welcher noch heute (Dez. 1886) in England lebt, trägt den Namen Ludwig Philipp von Orléans und führt den Titel eines Grafen von Paris. Sein jüngerer Bruder ist Robert Philipp von Orléans mit dem Titel Herzog von Chartres, augenblicklich ebenfalls in England. 10, Use here the Sing. 11, sounds — disorder = confusion and noise. 12, your — issue = our hearts beat already in anxious expectation of the events to come (des Kommenden). 13, von sich werfen. 14, 'robes', here Staatskleider. 15, Here place the verb 'is'. 16, 'priv. gentl.', here Civilist. 17, begierig; 'to depart', here = to flee. 18, would fain = would willingly; use the Imperf. Subj. of mögen with the adv. gern. To meet danger, der Gefahr die Stirne bieten. 19, Se. (for Seine) Majestät, after which place the verb in the 3rd pers. pl., which is customary in speaking of Sovereigns. 20, to put to = to put the horses to, anspannen. 21, erschießen. 22, Böbel, m. 23, 'from', here aus ... hinaus. Comp. S. 102, N. 4. 24, Form a compound of 'castle' and 'garden'. 25, 'end', here Ausgang, m. 26, Form a comp. of 'friend' and 'hand' according to

S. 76, N. 22, B. 27, Mietsfutsche, f. 28, The King would address his Consort in the 2nd pers. sing. 29, to lean heavily upon, sich fest stützen auf (with Acc.). 30, welche mit stolzerhobenem Haupte einhereschreitet. 31, are reached, werden bestiegen. 32, entkommen. 33, Sanct Cloud bei Versailles war zu jener Zeit eine beliebte Residenz der königlichen Familie. 'Sanct' (abbreviated St.) comes from the Latin 'sanctus'. 34, Es geht weiter. 35, Dreur ist ein Städtchen im Departement Eure-Loire, an der Eure, mit 7000 Einwohnern und enthält ein Schloß mit Grabkapelle des Hauses Orléans, welche von der Mutter des Königs Ludwig Philipp gegründet wurde.

Section 104.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1848.

IV.

At one in the morning they are joined¹ by (von) one of the King's sons, who informs the unhappy pair that the claims² of the grandson *had³ been* disregarded, and *that* the republic had been declared by the people of Paris. It is enough. The King shaves off his whiskers, puts on green spectacles, buries⁴ his face in a handkerchief, speaks English, and calls himself Smith. The wind is⁵ high, the coast⁶ dangerous, embarkation⁷ is out of question at the moment, and before an opportunity offers, the rank of the runaways⁸ is discovered. Fortune (S. 3, N. 2), however, is⁹ with them: they escape¹⁰ capture and put to sea. Protected by Heaven, they reach in safety¹¹ the hospitable shores of England.

Meanwhile¹², what has happened in Paris? The whole city has given way¹³ to a handful of rioters—men (S. 53, N. 9) who meditated an "emeute¹⁴", and effected, to their astonishment, an *actual* revolution. But¹⁵ two individuals upon the side of the King evinced a¹⁶ particle of courage, and these were women—his wife and his daughter-in-law already¹⁷ mentioned. The¹⁸ rest of the city were¹⁹ faithless to themselves as well as to the King.

1, 'to be joined', here eingeholt werden (to be overtaken). 2, Here Thronansprüche. 3, According to the two rules in §§ 28 and 30 of the Appendix, the Perfect of the Subjunctive Mood is to be used in this and the following clause. The two clauses, however, can be joined by omitting the second conjunction 'that' and the copula 'had been' of the first clause. Turn 'to disregard' by nicht anerkennen; the words 'by — Paris' may be briefly rendered by von den Pariser, which place immediately after the conjunction 'and'. 4, 'to bury', here = to veil, umhüllen; the prep. 'in' must then be rendered by mit. 5, is high = blows violently. 6, Since the copula 'is' was changed into another verb in the previous clause, it must be inserted here. 7, The literal version of this clause would not read well. I propose to use the following construction: it is (Comp. N. 19) for the moment impossible to embark. 8, runaways = fugitives. 9, is with them, ist ihnen hold (propitious). 10, to escape capture, der Verhaftung entgehen; to put to sea, in die See stechen. 11, glücklich; 'shores', here Gestade. 12, Inzwischen, which place after the copula 'has'. The verb 'to happen' is conjugated with sein. 13, to give way = to yield, conj. with sein; handful, Häuflein. 14, Aufruhr, m.; rioter, Aufrührer. 15, but = only; individuals = persons. 16, a particle of = a little. 17, deren wir schon erwähnten. 18, All the others in the city. 19, were — King = 'were just as faithless towards

themselves as they were towards the King', and insert the grammatical subject *es* after the pronoun 'they'.—The grammatical subject *es* is frequently employed for emphasizing the real subject or to give more tone and life to the construction; as—*Es sprach die Leidenschaft aus seinen Zügen*. It is, moreover, used with all impersonal verbs; as—*es friert, es donnert, es giebt, es ist*.

Section 105.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1848.

V.

Princes, peers¹, soldiers, and statesmen were all sneaking² in hiding places whilst the capital was³ made over to the mercy of a few dozen incendiaries. The daughter-in-law, seeing (S. 55, N. 1) the King depart⁴, carries⁵ her child to the Chamber of Deputies⁶, and⁷ there, with womanly courage and queenly dignity, vindicates his rights. Her friends entreat her to withdraw. Firm⁸ in her purpose, she does not move⁹ an inch. She attempts to speak, but is interrupted; and¹⁰ he who interrupts is himself silenced by an armed mob that pours¹¹ into the hall¹². The Duchess is forced away¹³, and in that terrible extremity is separated from her son. The child is seized by (S. 106, N. 23) a rough hand, which¹⁴ is strong enough to strike¹⁵, but¹⁶ generous enough to save. The boy is brought¹⁷ to his mother, and mother and son pass¹⁸ from asylum to asylum, chased¹⁹ by scythes, sabres, muskets, and, worse²⁰ than all, the²¹ bloody passions of an infuriated "canaille". For²² four days they²³ creep into hiding places; on the fifth day they are beyond the frontier.

1, The Peers of France were called 'Pairs', which term is used in German, the final *s* being pronounced. 2, to sneak into hiding places, in den Winkel kriechen. 3, was made over = was left (überlassen), with the dat. Construe the sentence after the following model:—Die Festung wurde einer kleinen Anzahl Soldaten auf Gnade oder Ungnade überlassen. 4, davon reisen. Comp. App. § 19. 5, führen, before which the subjective pronoun 'she' must be supplied. 6, Deputiertenkammer, f. 7, and — rights = where she vindicates his rights with, etc. 8, Fest ihren Zweck verfolgend. 9, zurückweichen. 10, and — himself, und der sie Unterbrechende selbst wird. 11, to pour = to rush. 12, Saal, m. 13, gewaltsam hinwegdrängen. 14, After the rel. pron. insert the adverb *zwar* (certainly, it is true, indeed), which will give more force to the clause. 15, bareinzuschlagen. 16, 'but', here doch, or aber auch. 17, 'to bring', here = to bring back. 18, 'to pass', here = to flee. 19, chased = pursued; by, von. 20, what is still worse. 21, von dem blutigeren Zorn eines rasenden Pöbels. 22, Vier Tage lang. 23, they — places = they try to conceal themselves.

Section 106.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1848.

VI.

Everybody is escaping at¹ the same moment. There is the King's eldest son, pale and half-naked, throwing² aside his tinsel and putting on fustian, looking³ less than a man in his fear, trembling with⁴ emotion, and finally running⁵ like a madman for⁶ his life. There are your⁷

ministers, of⁶ European reputation and wisdom unapproachable, bounding⁹ like antelopes, northwards¹⁰, southwards, "anywhere, anywhere¹¹ out of the city", which they and all the rest give up¹² to indiscriminate riot. And¹³ now the crowning point of our first "tableau" is near. The (S. 107, N. 13) mob, masters¹⁴ of Paris, are sacking the Tuileries. The choicest moveables¹⁵ are broken to atoms; a group¹⁶ takes¹⁷ the places which Royalty filled a moment ago at the breakfast table; others are in the wine cellar drinking¹⁸ themselves ten times drunk; others, again¹⁹, are in the Queen's apartments, defiling²⁰ that²¹ domestic sanctuary. Outside the palace and on the top²² of it a flag is waved²⁴ by²³ a dozen men, whose²⁵ shouts and shrieks invite hundreds, whom²⁶ you see crawling up with no earthly object but immediately to (S. 19, N. 7) slide down again.

1, at — moment = with them. 2, 'throwing — life'. The rendering of this passage according to the rule of S. 16, N. 4 would be inelegant, since there are a number of Present Participles following one another. I propose, therefore, to begin a new period here, saying: He throws aside his tinsel (here *Glitterflaat*, m.), puts on fustian, etc.; to put on fustian, *sich in Barchent kleiden*. 3, to look less than a man, *faum einem Manne ähnlich sehen*. 4, vor; emotion = excitement. 5, davon laufen. 6, um sein Leben zu retten. 7, your = the. 8, of — unapproachable = incomparable in (an) European fame and wisdom. 9, Since a relative clause follows immediately, it would be bad taste to render this clause, beginning with a Present Participle, in the same form. It will be best to commence a new period. Comp. N. 2. 10, nach Nord und Süd. 11, The second 'anywhere' is best turned by *nur hinweg*. 12, dem allgemeinen Aufruhr preisgeben. 13, And — near = And now we approach (*sich nähern*, with Dat.) the end (*Ende*, m.) of our first tableau. The French 'tableau' is used with French pronunciation in the same sense in German. It is of the neuter gender and takes the inflection of an *s* in the Gen. Sing. 14, masters of Paris = which rules in Paris; to rule, *herrschen* (v. tr.). 15, moveables = objects; atoms = pieces. 16, Insert the noun 'men'. 17, einnehmen; Royalty = the Royal family; filled = occupied (*inne haben*, treated like a comp. sep. v.). The adverbial clause 'at the breakfast table' is best placed after the verb 'takes'. 18, drinking themselves drunk = and drink themselves drunk (*sich betrinken*). 19, wiederum andere. 20, and defile (*besudeln*). 21, diese geheiligte Stätte der Häuslichkeit. 22, top = roof; of it = of the same. 23, The preposition 'by' in connection with the passive voice and establishing a relation with the noun or pronoun that denotes the doer of the action expressed by the verb, is rendered by *von*. 24, hin und her schwenken. 25, To avoid a succession of relative clauses, which should always be avoided, begin again a new period here and say: The shouts and shrieks of these men invite (*herbeiführen*), etc. 26, whom — but = who seem only to climb up (*erklettern*) the roof. The adv. 'immediately' comes after the conjunction 'to'.

Section 107.

THE DRAMA OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1848.

VII.

There¹ is sentiment in all things. The apartments of the poor daughter-in-law are reached (S. 4, N. 4, man), but, strange² to say, are respected³ in the midst of the work⁴ of general destruction. Her

children's toys are ⁵ not even touched; the hat and (S. 10, N. 9) whip of her dead ⁶ husband are ⁷ still sacred; the books (S. 16, N. 10) she had been reading lie still open ⁸. It ⁹ is an incident that cannot fail to ¹⁰ elicit rounds of applause. And whilst ¹¹ anarchy and destruction prevail here, there ¹² is equal confusion and danger in the Chamber of Deputies. We have seen the ¹³ mob forcing their way into (zu) that deliberative assembly. Everybody ¹⁴ is now rushing to the tribune. Three ¹⁵ speakers become marked from the rest; their ¹⁶ names are Lamartine ²³, Crémieux ²³, and Ledru Rollin ²³; they ¹⁷ gain the popular ear, and undertake (S. 51, N. 13) to establish ¹⁸ order—a superhuman responsibility! A Provisional Government is announced, named ¹⁹, and approved on the spot. “To (S. 72, N. 4) the Hôtel de Ville!” exclaims one ²⁰. “To the Hôtel de Ville!” respond a hundred; and amidst ²¹ yells and hootings, cries of “Vive la République!” “Vive Lamartine!” “A bas tout le monde!” *Monsieur* Lamartine ²³ sets out for that celebrated building, followed by a train made ²⁴ up of the dregs of a seething metropolis. In the middle ²⁵ of the shouting the curtain falls, and ²⁶ the first act terminates. Search ²⁷ the dramatic annals of the world for such another.—ESSAYS FROM “THE TIMES”.

1, Es findet sich jedoch überall noch eine Spur von Gefühl. 2, strange to say, sonderbarerweise. 3, are respected, werden dieselben ... verschont. 4, work — destruction, allgemeines Zerstörungswerk. 5, bleiben; not touched = untouched. 6, verstorben. 7, sind dem Andenken noch heilig. 8, Supply here the adverb *ba*, which will make the sentence more emphatic. 9, It is, Es ist dies. Comp. S. 104, N. 19. 10, to — applause, den allgemeinsten Beifall hervorzurufen.—Dieser Vorfall erklärt sich durch die große Popularität des verstorbenen Herzogs und seiner Gemahlin, der Herzogin Helene von Orléans. 11, Place the adv. ‘here’ after whilst, and use the adverb *noch* with it. 12, ‘there is’, here findet man, after which place ‘in — Deputies’. 13, the — way = how the mob forces its way (sich einen Weg bahnen). In German the verb agrees in the Singular with a collective substantive in the Singular. 14, Alles; to, auf. 15, Drei Redner hört man über die andern hinaus. 16, sie heißen. 17, they = these; to gain the popular ear, sich beim Volke Gehör verschaffen. 18, wieder herstellen. 19, mit Namen benannt. 20, Say ‘one voice’, and afterwards ‘hundred other voices’. 21, unter. 22, und unter wiederholten Ausrufen von ... 23, ‘to set out’, here die Prozedur ansetzen; for, nach. The verb must of course appear before the Subject Lamartine. Louis Alphonse Lamartine erregte zunächst durch seine zarten Jugenddichtungen in den zwanziger Jahren allgemeine Aufmerksamkeit. Nachdem er durch den Tod eines Heims ein bedeutendes Vermögen ererbt hatte, bereiste er 1832 den Orient, worauf er die politische Laufbahn betrat und einer der glänzendsten Redner der Deputiertenkammer wurde. Nach der Februarrevolution von 1848 wurde er Mitglied der provisorischen Regierung und Minister des Auswärtigen, zog sich jedoch 1851 unzufrieden zurück und + am 1. März 1869 zu Passy, wo er in dürftigen Verhältnissen gelebt hatte. Isaac Adolphe Crémieux, Israelit, wurde 1830 Advokat am Kassationshofe zu Paris, bekämpfte, seit 1842 Mitglied der Kammer, heftig das Ministerium Guizot und förderte die Reformbewegung. Nach der Februarrevolution von 1848 ward er Mitglied der provisorischen Regierung, in der er kurze Zeit das Justizministerium bekleidete. Nach der Wahl des Prinzen Louis Napoléon zum Präsidenten trat er zur Opposition über, ward beim Staatsstreich am 2. Dez. 1851 verhaftet, jedoch bald wieder freigelassen, worauf er sich auf seine Praxis beschränkte. Im Jahre 1870, nach dem Sturze des Kaiserreichs, nochmals zum Mitglied der provisorischen Regierung gewählt, hielt er sich zu Gambetta und ward später Mitglied der Nationalversammlung.

Alexandre Auguste Ledru Rollin ward Advokat, und trat 1844 in die Kammer der Deputierten, nachdem er als Advokat in vielen politischen Prozessen plaidiert hatte. Er beteiligte sich lebhaft bei der Reformagitation von 1847, ward 1848 Mitglied der provisorischen Regierung und Minister des Innern, trat jedoch schon im Juni desselben Jahres von der Regierung zurück. Im Juni 1849 mußte er wegen politischer Intriguen nach England fliehen, ward abwesend zur Deportation verurteilt und lebte seitdem als Mitglied des dortigen Revolutionskomitees in London. Im Jahre 1857 wurde er mit Mazzini eines Komplots gegen Napoleon III. angeklagt und abermals verurteilt, und kehrte endlich am 26. März 1870 infolge der Erklärung der Republik und der Amnestie nach Paris zurück, ohne sich aber an den dortigen Ereignissen hervorragend zu beteiligen. 24, made up of, welcher sich aus . . . gebildet hat; seething, gährend. 25, In-mitten, followed by the Gen. 26, After 'and' supply the adv. so, which requires the constr. to be inverted. 27, Search — another. This passage would not read well in a literal version, which may be altered thus:—Where can we find in the dramatic annals of the history of the world (comp. n.) a similar *one* (einen gleichen).

Section 108.

EXPERIENCE IS THE BEST TEACHER¹.

A French student of (S. 3, N. 2) medicine lodged² in the same house in London with a man in a fever. This poor man was constantly plagued by the nurse to drink, though³ he nauseated the insipid liquids that were presented to him. At last, when she⁴ grew more and more importunate, he whispered in her (S. 43, N. 9, *B*) ear:—“For⁵ God's sake bring me a salt herring, and I will drink as much as you please⁶!”

The woman indulged⁷ him in his request; he devoured the herring, drank plentifully, underwent⁸ a copious perspiration, and recovered⁹.

The French student inserted this aphorism¹⁰ in his journal¹¹:—“A salt herring cures¹² an Englishman in a fever.”

On¹³ his return to (S. 72, N. 4) France he prescribed the same remedy to the first patient in a fever² to whom he was called.

The patient died; on which¹⁴ the student inserted¹⁵ in his journal *the* following note:—“N.B. Though a salt herring cures an Englishman, it¹⁶ kills a Frenchman.”—W. C. HAZLITT, ANECDOTES.

- 1, Lehrerin, to agree with 'experience', which is feminine in German.
- 2, Here place the words 'in London — fever'; a man in a fever, ein Fieberkranker.
- 3, Construe the sentence 'though — him' after the following model: Die mir gereichten geschmacklosen Getränke widern mich an.
- 4, Here place the adv. 'at last'; more and more importunate, immer zudringlicher.
- 5, Um Gotteswillen.
- 6, wollen.
- 7, to indulge a request, einer Bitte willfahren.
- 8, to undergo a copious perspiration, in tüchtigen Schweiß geraten (str. v.).
- 9, genesen, str. v.
- 10, Lehrsatz.
- 11, Form a comp. n. of 'day' and 'book' according to S. 76, N. 22, C.
- 12, furiere; in a, vom.
- 13, Say 'When he had returned to France'.
- 14, on which = whereupon.
- 15, schreiben, after which place 'following note'.
- 16, so stirbt ein Franzose daran.

Section 109.

ON¹ SELF CULTURE.

(From² an address delivered to an assemblage of young men at Edinburgh.)

I³ stand before you a self-educated man. My education was⁴ that which was supplied at the humble parish schools of Scotland; and *it was*⁵ only⁶ when I⁶ went to Edinburgh, a poor boy, *that* I devoted my evenings, after the labours of the day, to the cultivation of⁷ that intellect which the Almighty has given me. From seven or eight in the morning till nine or ten at night⁸, was I at⁹ *my* business as *a* bookseller's apprentice¹⁰, and¹¹ *it was* only during hours after these, stolen from sleep, *that* I could devote myself to study. I assure you that I did not read novels¹²; my attention was devoted¹³ to physical science and other useful matters¹⁴. During¹⁵ that period I taught myself French. I look back¹⁶ to that time with great pleasure, and am almost sorry I have not to go¹⁷ through the same troubles again. I¹⁸ reaped more pleasure when I had not a sixpence in my pocket, studying in a garret in Edinburgh, than I now find when sitting amidst all the elegancies and comforts of a parlour.

—WILLIAM CHAMBERS.

1, Über Selbstbildung. 2, Aus; to deliver an address to an assemblage, vor einer Versammlung eine Rede halten; young men, junge Leute. 3, I — man. This sentence does not allow of a literal rendering; say 'You see before you a man who has educated himself' (sich selbst bilden or ausbilden). 4, was — Scotland = was such as (it) (eine solche, wie sie) is given (erteilen) at (in) a simple Scottish village-school. 5, The adverb 'only', when used in reference to time, is turned by 'erst', but in reference to number by 'nur'; as—
This man has *only* (but) one coat. Dieser Mann hat nur einen Rock.
It is *only* one o'clock. Es ist erst ein Uhr.

6, when — boy = when I, a poor boy, came to (S. 72, N. 4) Ed. 7, Construe the clause 'of — me' according to S. 48, N. 6; intellect, Geist. 8, 'at night', here *abends*, since *Nacht* applies only to the hours between 11 P.M. and 5 A.M. 9, at = in, contracted with the Dat. of the def. art. 10, Supply here *thätig* (engaged). 11, Say 'and only during the later (später) hours, which I stole from sleep (dem Schlaf ab'stehlen), could I', etc. 12, Roman', m. 13, auf naturwissenschaftliche Studien . . . gerichtet. 14, Gegenstand, m. 15, 'During that period' may be briefly rendered by *damals*; to teach oneself German, ohne Lehrer Deutsch studieren. 16, zurückblicken. 17, to go through troubles, Beschwerden durchmachen; again, noch einmal. For the constr. see App. § 19. 18, Say 'When (S. 4, N. 2) I had no sixpence (Sechshenningstück, n.) in my pocket and studied in a garret in E., I felt (sich fühlen) happier than now, when (da) I sit in an elegant and comfortable (bejaglich) parlour'.

Section 110.

GOETHE'S¹ DEATH.

I.

The² following morning—it was the 22nd March 1832—he tried to³ walk a little up and down the room, but⁴ after a turn, he found⁵ himself too feeble to continue. Reseating⁶ himself in the easy chair, he chatted

cheerfully with Ottilie [(S. 53, N. 9) his daughter-in-law] on⁷ the approaching spring, which would⁸ be sure to restore him. He⁹ had no idea of his end being so near. The name *of* Ottilie was frequently on his lips. She sat beside him, holding¹⁰ his hand in both of hers. It was now observed that his thoughts began to wander¹¹ incoherently. "See," he exclaimed, "the lovely woman's head, with black curls, in splendid colours—a¹² dark background!" Presently¹³ he saw a piece of paper on the floor, and asked *them* how¹⁴ they could leave Schiller's letters so carelessly lying about. Then¹⁵ he slept softly, and, on¹⁶ awakening, asked¹⁷ for the sketches¹⁸ (S. 16, N. 10) he had just seen—the¹⁹ sketches of his dream.

1, Johann Wolfgang von Göthe, geboren den 22. August 1749 zu Frankfurt a/M., gestorben den 22. März 1832 zu Weimar, kann wohl mit Recht der unversälfte Genius seiner Zeit genannt werden, deren Litteratur er unbestritten beherrschte. Er war Dichter, Biograph, Naturforscher, Altertumsforscher, Kritiker, Ästhetiker und Staatsmann. In fast allen poetischen Gattungen zeigte er sich als vollendeter Künstler, am bedeutendsten aber war er als Lyriker. Er hinterließ einen einzigen Sohn, dessen Frau (Ottilie) unten erwähnt wird. 2, Am nächsten Morgen. 3, im Zimmer auf und ab gehen. 4, but — turn = but already after a few steps. 5, sich fühlen; 'to continue' may be briefly rendered by dazu. 6, After he had seated himself again, etc. 7, über. 8, would be sure = would surely (see App. §§ 28 and 30). 9, He — near = He had no idea of it (davon), that his end was so near. 10, und hielt seine Hand mit beiden Händen umschlossen. 11, umher'irren. 12, a = upon a. 13, Then. 14, warum man Schillers Briefe so sorglos herumliegen lasse. 15, Hereupon. 16, beim Erwachen. 17, forderte er. 18, Bilder. 19, the — dream, seine Traumbilder.

Section 111.

GOETHE'S DEATH.

II.

In silent anguish they¹ now awaited the close now so surely approaching (S. 48, N. 6). His speech was becoming less and less distinct. The last words audible² were: "More Light!" The final³ darkness⁴ grew apace, and he⁵ whose eternal longings had been for more light, gave a parting cry for it as he was passing under the shadow of death.

He continued to express himself by signs, drawing⁶ letters⁷ with his forefinger in the air, while he⁸ had strength, and finally, as life (S. 3, N. 2) ebbed⁹, drawing¹⁰ figures slowly on the shawl which covered his legs. At¹¹ half-past twelve he composed¹² himself in the corner of the easy chair. His faithful watcher¹³ placed a finger on her lips to intimate that he was asleep¹⁴. It was a sleep in which a life glided¹⁵ from the world. He¹⁶ woke no more.—G. H. LEWES, LIFE OF GOETHE.

1, they = his friends, die Seinen. 2, In ordinary prose adjectives qualifying a noun should precede it. 3, final = last. 4, Dunkel (n.) stieg hernieder. 5, he — death = he who had always longed (sich sehnen) for (nach) more light, cried still parting for it (danach) when the night of death overshadowed him. 6, The conjunction *indem* with a finite verb is

frequently employed for rendering the English Participle in -ing used in adverbial clauses of manner; as—

Supporting himself on her arm he slowly ascended the stairs. *Indem er sich auf ihren Arm stützte, stieg er langsam die Treppe hinauf.*

7, Buchstaben, which place after 'forefinger'. 8, After 'he' insert the adverb *noch*. 9, *dahin'stuten*. 10, drew he slowly figures (*Zahlen*), etc. 11, *Um halb eins*. 12, to compose oneself in the corner, *sich ruhig in die Ecke zurücklegen*. 13, *Wärterin*. 14, Use the Present of the Subj. App. § 28 and § 30. 15, *scheiden*; from, aus. 16, Say 'Goethe' instead of 'he'; woke = awoke; no more, *nicht wieder*.

Section 112.

ON TRAVELLING (S. 3, N. 2).

I¹ wish folks² in general would keep their eyes a little more open when they travel by rail³. When I see young people rolling along in a luxurious⁴ carriage, absorbed (S. 102, N. 3) in a trashy⁵ shilling novel⁶; and⁷ never lifting up their eyes to look out of the window, unconscious⁸ of all that⁹ they are passing;—of¹⁰ the reverend antiquities, the admirable¹¹ agriculture, the rich *and* peaceful scenery¹², the¹³ like of which no other country upon earth can show (App. § 18); unconscious¹⁴, too, *of* how much they might¹⁵ learn *of* botany *and* geology, by¹⁶ simply watching the flowers along the railway banks, and the sections¹⁷ in the cuttings¹⁸;—then it grieves me to see what¹⁹ little use people make of the eyes and the understanding which God has given them. They complain of²⁰ a dull²¹ journey: but²² it is not the journey which is dull; it²³ is they who are dull. Eyes²⁴ have they, and see not; ears have they, and hear not; mere²⁵ dolls in smart clothes, too many of them, like the idols of the heathen.—CHARLES KINGSLEY, TOWN GEOLOGY.

1, *Ich möchte wohl*. 2, Say '(the) people (*die Leute*) would use (Imperf. Subj. of *brauchen*, App. § 32) in general the eyes a little more', etc. 3, *mit der Eisenbahn reisen*. 4, luxurious = splendid; for the rendering of the verbs in this passage consult S. 78, N. 14, and for their position, App. § 19; to roll along, *dahin'rollen*. 5, *schlecht*. 6, Form comp. n. according to S. 76, N. 22, B. 7, and — eyes = so that they never lift up their eyes. This constr. is necessary to avoid a repetition of participles. 8, *nichts ahnend*. 9, *woran sie vorüberfahren*. 10, Say 'nothing of'. 11, excellent. 12, landscape. 13, the — which = as, *wie sie* (grammatical object; comp. S. 51, N. 13. 14, *auch nicht einmal ahnend*. 15, I might learn much of botany, *ich könnte viel Botanik lernen*. The subject 'they' place after 'geology' and before the two verbs. 16, by — watching = if they would only watch (*beobachten*); along — banks = on (an) the sides of the railway. 17, *Bahnprofil*, n. 18, *Durchschnitt*, m. The two verbs must, of course, stand at the end of the whole passage. 19, *wie wenig*, little (denoting quantity). 20, *über*, with Acc. 21, dull = wearisome, *langweilig*. 22, but — dull = but not the journey is dull. 23, *sie selbst sind es* (Comp. S. 104, N. 19). 24, The inverted constr. would not read well here; use therefore the ordinary constr. 25, are nothing but (*als*) dolls in fine clothes, and like (*gleich*, with Dat.) the idols (*Götzenbilder*) of the heathens are *there* too many of them (*sind ihrer zu viele*).

Section 113.

THE MANAGEMENT¹ OF THE BODY.

I have nothing new to say upon the management which the body requires². The common rules are the best:—exercise without fatigue; generous³ living without excess; early rising, and moderation in sleeping. These are the apothegms⁴ of old women; but if they are not attended to⁵, happiness⁶ becomes (App. § 15) so extremely difficult that⁷ very few persons can attain⁸ to it. In⁹ this point of view, the care¹⁰ of the body becomes a¹¹ subject of elevation and importance. A walk in the fields, an hour's¹² less sleep, may¹³ remove all these bodily vexations¹⁴ and disquietudes which are such formidable enemies to¹⁵ virtue; they may enable¹⁷ the mind¹⁶ to pursue¹⁸ its own resolves without that constant train¹⁹ of temptations to resist, and²⁰ obstacles to overcome, which²¹ it always experiences from the bad organisation of its companion.—SIDNEY SMITH.

- 1, treatment. 2, bedürfen, govern. the Gen. 3, strengthening food. 4, Lebensregeln. 5, to attend to, beobachten, v. tr. 6, the acquisition of happiness. 7, Insert the adv. 'only' after 'that'. 8, I cannot attain to it, ich kann es nicht erlangen (v. tr.). 9, In — view, Von diesem Gesichtspunkte aus betrachtet, after which follows the verb (App. § 14). 10, Pflege, f. 11, Say 'a grand (erhaben) and important subject'. 12, an hour. 13, can perhaps. 14, disturbances and troubles, Störungen und Beschwerden. 15, Use the noun with the Gen. of the def. art. 16, mind = soul. 17, befähigen, v. tr. 18, folgen, with Dat. 19, 'train', here = host, Heer, n.; of, von; to resist, widerstehen, govern. the Dat. 20, Supply here 'those'. 21, the acquaintance of which (deren) the soul always owes (verdanken, govern. the Dat.) to the defective organisation of its companion.

Section 114.

THE SOURCES¹ OF WATER.

There² are many sources of water. The first great source³ is the ocean, which collects all the water from⁴ the earth; this water contains so large a quantity of salt, that none⁵ of us can drink it. The sun, however, bears⁶ down upon the ocean's surface, and its heating⁷ rays penetrating⁸ the water, combine, as⁹ it were, with it (S. 4, N. 5, B), and¹⁰ raise it up. The atmosphere (S. 5, N. 2), like¹¹ a sponge, absorbs the¹² vaporous water, carrying¹³ it from the Equator to¹⁴ the Arctic and the Antarctic regions; thus¹⁵ distributing it north and south. It then condenses in the form of rain and of snow. When it sinks into the earth and pours down the¹⁶ mountain sides, it forms springs and rivulets, entering¹⁸ (S. 16, N. 4) the ocean again in¹⁷ the form of rivers. Man catches¹⁹ it in tubs and cisterns, draws²⁰ it from²¹ the rivers, or digs down²² into the earth, and catches²³ it as it passes²⁴ along beneath his feet. Thus²⁵ we have rain water, river water, and spring or well water.—DR. LANKESTER.

- 1, Here Urquellen. 2, The water has many sources. 3, great = chief; form a comp. n. 4, To render 'from the' use the Gen. of the def. art. 5, none of us = nobody. 6, bears down upon = shines. 7, erwärmend. 8, penetrating = penetrate, durchdringen, insep. comp. str. v. 9, as it were, gleichsam. 10, and draw it upward. 11, wie. 12, das verdunstete Wasser. 13, carries it. 14, nach den nördlichen und südlichen Polargegenden. 15, and distributes it north and southward. Comp. S. 71, N. 2, the principle stated there applying likewise to other compound expressions besides nouns. 16, the = on (an) the. 17, in the form of = as, which place after the rel. pron. 18, to enter again the ocean, dem Ocean wieder zufließen. 19, auf fangen, sep. c. str. v. 20, to draw water, Wasser schöpfen. 21, aus. 22, down = deep. 23, sammeln. 24, 'to pass along', here dahin fließen. 25, Auf diese Weise.

Section 115.

THE ART OF ORATORY.

I¹ owe my success in life to one single fact², namely:—At³ the age of twenty-seven⁴ I commenced, and continued for years, the process of daily speaking (S. 34, N. 10) upon the contents of some historical or scientific book. These efforts⁵ were made sometimes in a corn-field⁶, at others⁷ in the forest, and not infrequently in some distant⁸ barn, with⁹ the horse and ox for my auditors. It¹⁰ is this early practice in the *great* art of all arts that I am indebted for the primary and leading impulses that stimulated me forward, and shaped and moulded my entire subsequent¹¹ destiny. Improve¹², then, the superior advantages (S. 16, N. 10) you here enjoy¹³. Let not¹⁴ a day pass¹⁵ without exercising (S. 34, N. 10) your powers¹⁶ of speech. There is (S. 82, N. 7) no power like¹⁷ that of oratory. Cæsar controlled¹⁸ men by¹⁹ exciting their fears; Cicero²⁰ by²¹ captivating their affection and swaying their passions. The influence of the one perished²² with its author; that of the other continues²³ to this day.—HENRY CLAY²⁴.

- 1, To avoid beginning with the pronoun 'I', which seldom looks well in German, and is considered bad style in letters, place the object first, and construe according to App. § 14. 2, fact = deed or action = *That*, f.; fact = event (as in this instance) = *That*sache, f.; the Latin *Factum*, pl. *Facta* or *Facten*, is, however, used in both significations. 3, At the, *Am*. 4, Supply 'years', and construe thus: I began the process (Verfahren, n.), which I continued for years (jahrelang) to speak daily about (über, with Acc.), etc.; some = a. 5, efforts = exercises. 6, Here place the verb. 7, zuweilen. 8, entgegen. 9, whereby horse and ox formed my audience (Zuhörer). 10, It — forward = To this early practice . . . I owe the first and leading impulses (Triebfedern) which urged me forward (vorwärtstreiben, sep. comp. str. v.). 11, subsequent = later. 12, Improve = Use, which use in the 2nd pers. pl.; then = therefore; superior = great. 13, genießen. 14, 'Not' in connection with the indef. art. must generally be rendered by 'no'. 15, vorübergehen. 16, Rede-talent, n. 17, welche der der Verebfamkeit gleichkommt. 18, beherrschen. 19, durch Erregung; render 'their' by the Gen. of the def. art. 20, Supply here 'controlled them' (beherrschte sie dadurch, daß er . . .). Comp. and read carefully S. 87, N. 6, and also S. 1, N. 3. The verb beherrschen requires the preposition durch. 21, by — passions = that he gained (sich gewinnen) their

love and guided (lenken) their passions. 22, *erstarb*; its author = the author of the same (to agree with 'influence'). 23, *fort'dauern*, sep. c. w. v.; to this day, bis auf den heutigen Tag. 24, Henry Clay (geb. 1777 in Virginien, + 1852 in Washington) war ein amerikanischer Staatsmann, welcher sich als Sohn eines einfachen Landmannes bis zu den höchsten Ämtern des Staats heraufarbeitete; 1824 ward er zum Staatssekretär des Auswärtigen ernannt und 1829 war er unter Jacksons Präsidentschaft im Kongreß Führer der Opposition, als welcher er die Schutz-zölle und die Nationalbank verteidigte. Im Jahre 1849 brachte er den Kompromiß zu-stande, wonach dem Süden das Recht der Verfolgung flüchtiger Sklaven durch das Gebiet der Union eingeräumt ward.

Section 116.

EARLY PRIVATIONS¹.

Admiral Jervis, Earl of St. Vincent, tells us the¹ story of his early struggles, and, among² other things, of his determination (S. 1, N. 2) to³ keep out of debt. "My father had a very large family," said he, "with limited means. He gave me twenty pounds (S. 58, N. 3) at⁴ starting, and that was all (S. 3, N. 7) he ever⁵ gave me. After I had been a considerable time at⁶ the station at sea I⁷ drew for twenty more, but the bill came⁸ back protested. I⁹ was mortified¹⁰ at this rebuke, and made¹¹ a promise, which I have ever¹² kept, that¹³ I would never draw another bill without¹⁴ a certainty of its being paid. I immediately changed my mode of living, quitted¹⁵ my mess¹⁶, lived¹⁷ alone, and¹⁸ took up the ship's allowance, which I found quite sufficient; washed and mended¹⁹ my *own* clothes; made a pair of trousers out of the ticking of my bed²⁰, and, having (S. 55, N. 1) by²¹ these means saved as much money as²² would redeem my honour, I took²³ up my bill. From (S. 102, N. 4) that time to this I²⁴ have taken care to²⁵ keep within my means."

Jervis (S. 5, N. 2) for six years endured pinching²⁶ privation, but preserved his integrity, studied his profession with success, and gradually rose²⁷ by merit and bravery to the highest rank.—S. SMILES, SELF-HELP.

1, Early Privations, Jugendentbehrungen; the story — struggles. This passage, literally rendered, is not clear in German, and should be turned thus: of (von) the struggles with privations, which he had to go through (bestehen), when he was a youth (als Jüngling, which place after the subject 'he'). 2, among

other things = unter anderem. 3, sich von Schulden freihalten. 4, at starting, beim Beginn meiner Laufbahn; see App. § 9. 5, je; for the position of the pronoun 'me' see App. § 9, and use the verb in the Perfect, omitting, however, the auxiliary according to App. § 22. 6, auf meinem Posten zur See. 7, I — more = I drew another (noch ein) bill of twenty pounds. To draw a bill, einen Wechsel ziehen. 8, to come back protested, mit Protest wieder zurück kommen. 9, I felt (sich fühlen). 10, mortified = humbled, gebemüht; at, durch. 11, 'to make a promise', here ein Gelübde ablegen. 12, ever = always, stets. 13, that — bill. This clause is best changed into a shortened subordinate clause in form of a supine: never to draw a bill again. Place 'again' after 'never'. 14, without — paid, ohne auch sicher zu sein, daß man ihn honorieren würde. 15, 'To quit', here to give up. 16, Doff-zieretisch. 17, To live, equivalent to *reside* or *dwell*, is generally rendered by *wohnen*; but equivalent to *exist* is rendered by *leben*. 18, und hielt mich an die Schiffsrationen; quite, durchaus. 19, here sitzen. 20, bed

= bed-covering; Comp. n. S. 36, N. 7, *A*. 21, by these means = in (auf) this manner. 22, as — honour = in order to redeem (wieder einlösen) my honour. 23, to take up one's bill, seinen Wechsel bezahlen. 24, Say 'I have always endeavoured'. 25, to keep within one's means, nicht über seine Mittel hinaus leben; for six years, sechs Jahre lang. 26, We would use the superlative here; pinching, drückend. 27, 'to rise', here empor steigen; to, bis zu, contracted with the Dat. of the def. art.

Section 117.

THE BLESSEDNESS¹ OF FRIENDSHIP.

I.

A² blessed thing it is for any³ man or (S. 10, N. 9) woman to have a friend; one human soul whom we can trust utterly; a friend who knows the best and the worst⁴ of us, and who loves us, in spite of all our faults; who will⁵ speak the honest⁶ truth to us, while the world flatters us to⁷ our face, and laughs *at us* behind our backs; who will give⁸ us counsel and reproof in the days of (S. 3, N. 2) prosperity and self-conceit; but⁹ who, again, will comfort and encourage us in the days of difficulty¹⁰, and sorrow, when the world leaves¹¹ us alone to¹² fight our *own* battle as we can.

If we have had the *good* fortune to win such a friend, let us do anything¹³ rather¹⁴ than lose him. We must give and forgive; live and let live. If our friend have¹⁵ faults, we must bear¹⁶ with them (S. 4, N. 5, *B*). We must hope all *things*, believe all *things*, endure all *things*, rather¹⁷ than lose that most precious of all earthly possessions—a trusty¹⁸ friend.

1, Segen, m. 2, It is a blessing. 3, every. 4, Superlative of schön. 5, will speak = always speaks. Use the Present likewise with the following verbs in this passage. 6, aufrichtig. 7, ins Gesicht. 8, to give counsel and reproof to a person, einem mit Rat und Tadel zur Seite stehen; self-conceit, Selbsttäuschung, f.—The adverbial clause 'in the days — conceit' stands after the rel. pron. and the Dat. 'us' (App. § 9). 9, but — again, der uns aber auch. 10, Prüfung. 11, 'to leave a person alone', here einen imstich lassen. 12, und wir unsern Kampf, so gut wir können, allein anzufechten haben. 13, all. 14, um ihn nur nicht zu verlieren. 15, has. 16, to bear a thing, Geduld mit etwas haben. 17, lieber, which place before the last 'all'. 18, zuverlässig.

Section 118.

THE BLESSEDNESS OF FRIENDSHIP.

II.

And a friend once won (S. 7, N. 3, *A*) need¹ never be lost, if we will only be trusty and true ourselves. Friends may² part, not merely in body, but in spirit, for a while. In the bustle of (S. 3, N. 2) business and the accidents of life, they may lose³ sight of each other for years (S. 115, N. 4); and⁴ more—they⁵ may begin to differ in their success in life, in their opinions, in their habits, and *there* may be, for a time⁶, coldness

and estrangement between them: but not for ever, if each will be but trusty and true.

For then⁷, according to⁸ the beautiful figure of the poet, they will be like two ships which set sail⁹ at morning from the same port, and ere¹⁰ nightfall lose sight of each other, and¹¹ go each on its own course, and at its own pace, for many days, through many storms and seas; and¹² yet meet again, and¹³ find themselves lying side by side in the same haven, when the long voyage is past.—CHARLES KINGSLEY, "THE WATER OF LIFE."

1, need — lost = we need (brauchen) never to lose. 2, may = can, after which place the adverbial clause 'for a while', auf kurze Zeit; the verb 'part', which is equivalent to 'be separated' should stand at the end of the whole passage; 'in body', körperlich; 'in spirit', geistig. 3, to lose sight of each other, sich aus dem Gesicht verlieren. 4, ja noch mehr. 5, Say 'it is possible that their success in life, their opinions, their habits begin to differ (differieren)'. 6, for a time, eine Zeit lang, which place after 'and'; 'may', here mag; 'be', here = exist, bestehen. 7, Here follow copula and subject according to App. § 14. 8, according to, nach; figure, Bild, n.; to be like, gleichen, which governs the Dat. 9, to set sail aus segeln. 10, ere nightfall, vor Dunkelwerden. 11, Say 'and of which each through many storms and upon many seas (Weer, n.) for days pursues its own course (Richtung, f.) and its own pace (Lauf, m.)'. 12, and — again, welche aber dennoch wieder zusammentreffen. 13, Say 'and find that they lie after the long voyage (Seefahrt, f.) side by side (neben einander) in the same haven'.

Section 119.

DO GOOD IN YOUR OWN SPHERE OF ACTION¹.

I.

"I want to be at work² in the world," said Tom, "and not dawdling away³ three years at Oxford."

"What do you mean⁴ by 'at work in the world?'" said the master, with⁵ his lips close to his saucerful of tea, and peering at Tom over it.

"Well, I mean real work; one's⁶ profession, whatever⁷ one will really have to do, and make one's living by. I want to be doing some real good, feeling (S. 30, N. 4) that I am not only at play⁸ in the world," answered Tom, rather⁹ puzzled to find out himself what he really did mean.

"You are mixing up two very different things in your head, I¹⁰ think, Brown," said the master, putting down¹¹ (S. 111, N. 6) the empty saucer, "and you ought to get clear¹² about them (S. 4, N. 5, B). You¹³ talk of 'working to get your living' and 'doing some real good in the world' in the same breath."

1, Wirkungsfeld, m.; your = thy. 2, to be at work = to do something. 3, to dawdle away, vergeuden. 4, mean = understand; by, unter; use the 2nd pers. sing. 5, Die Lippen an den Rand der vollen Untertasse legend; to peer at a person, auf einen blicken; over it, darüber weg. 6, jemandes. 7, whatever (das was) one must really do to make one's living (seinen Unterhalt verdienen). 8, at play = for play (zum Spielen). 9, Say 'somewhat

puzzled (verlegen) at (über) the meaning (Sinn, m.) of his words'. 10, The words 'I think, Brown' are best placed at the head of the passage; Comp. S. 64, N. 11; to mix up, vermengen. 11, auf den Tisch stellen. 12, to get clear about a thing, sich über etwas klar werden. I cannot get clear about that, ich kann mir darüber nicht klar werden; — ought = should. 13, Use the 2nd pers. sing., and read carefully S. 1, N. 3, and S. 87, N. 6, which will enable you to construe this passage. The adverbial clause 'in the same breath' (= in one breath) must be placed after the predicate 'talk'; to talk of a thing, von etwas sprechen.

Section 120.

DO GOOD IN YOUR OWN SPHERE OF ACTION.

II.

Now¹, you may be getting a good living in a profession, and yet doing no good *at all* in the world, but (S. 6, N. 10) quite² the contrary. Keep³ the latter before you as your one object, and you⁴ will be right whether you make a living⁵ or not; but⁶ if you dwell on the other, you'll very likely drop⁷ into mere money-making, and let⁸ the world take care of itself, for good or evil. Don't be in a hurry⁹ about finding your work in the world *for yourself*; you are not old enough to (S. 19, N. 7) judge for yourself yet, but just¹⁰ look about you in the place you find yourself in, and try (S. 51, N. 13) to make things¹¹ a little better and honester there. You'll¹² find plenty to keep your hand in at Oxford, or wherever else you [may] go. And¹³ don't be led away to think this part of the world important, and that unimportant. Every corner of the world is important. No man knows whether this *part* or that part is¹⁴ most so, but every man may¹⁵ do some honest work in his own corner.—THOMAS HUGHES, "TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS."

1, Now — getting, Du kannst dir nun aber vielleicht . . . verdienen. 2, quite = just, gerade. 3, Say 'Keep the last part of your sentence as your principal aim (Hauptzweck, m.) before your eyes (vor Augen)'. 4, Say 'you will do right'. 5, Insert dabei after 'living'. 6, Say 'but if you have only the other (to agree with 'part') before your eyes'. 7, to drop into mere money-making, in bloße Geldmacherei verfallen. 8, to let the world take care of itself for good or evil, die Welt im Guten und im Bösen sich selbst überlassen. 9, to be in a hurry, sich beeilen; about finding = to find (S. 1, N. 3). 10, 'just', here nur, which place after verb and pronoun; in the place, an der Stelle; to find oneself, sich befinden. 11, 'things', here = life, with def. art., after which place the adv. 'there'; honester = more virtuous. 12, The clause 'at Oxford — go' is best placed at the head of the whole passage; to keep your hand in = to do. 13, And — away, Laß dich auch nicht dazu verleiten; to think a thing important, eine Sache für wichtig halten. 14, is most so = is most important. — When the superlative is used as a predicate, it is generally preceded by *am* (the preposition *an* contracted with the definite article, dative case singular, masculine), and takes the dative termination *en*; as — This matter is not important, but that is *most important*, diese Sache ist nicht wichtig, aber jene ist *am wichtigsten*. 15, may — corner = can in his own corner do *something* good.

Section 121.

THE STATE¹ OF IRELAND.

(Conclusion of a Speech delivered² in the House of Commons in March 1868.)

I.

We must all endeavour to get³ rid of passion in⁴ discussing this church question, which⁵, I am sorry to say, is, of all others, the most calculated to create passion. We are⁶ all, I believe, of one religion. I do not know (S. 51, N. 13), but I suppose there⁷ will come a time in the history of the world, when men will be astonished⁸ that Catholic⁹ and Protestant, Churchman¹⁰ and Nonconformist¹¹, had¹² so much animosity and suspicion against each other.

I¹³ *accept and believe* in a very grand passage which I once met¹⁴ with in the writings of the illustrious founder of the colony and (S. 10, N. 9) state of Pennsylvania, that¹⁵ "the humble¹⁶, meek, merciful, just, pious, and devout souls are⁶ everywhere of⁶ one religion; and when death¹⁷ (S. 3, N. 2) has taken off the mask, they will know¹⁸ one another, though the diverse liveries¹⁹ they wear make²⁰ them strangers."

1, Zustand, m. 2, to deliver a speech, eine Rede halten. Construe according to S. 7, N. 3, *A*; the House of Commons, das Haus der Gemeinen. 3, to get rid of passion, sich der Leidenschaftlichkeit enthalten. 4, in discussion = when we discuss (besprechen). 5, welche leider mehr als jede andere dazu angethan ist, die Leidenschaften zu erregen. 6, are = have; of one = the same. Commence the passage with 'I believe'. 7, there — time, es wird einst ... eine Zeit kommen. 8, to be astonished at a thing, sich über etwas wundern. Comp. S. 87, N. 6. 9, Use the pl. with this and the three following nouns. 10, = members of the English Church. 11, Nonconformisten. 12, to have animosity, Feindschaft hegen. 13, Say 'I believe in (an, with Acc.) the following sublime utterance (Äußerung, f.)'. 14, met with = read. 15, The passage 'that — religion' will be much improved by substituting the adverb 'nämlich:' (viz.) for the conjunction 'that'. 16, die Bescheidenen. 17, After 'death' insert the pron. 'ihnen', which will make the reading much clearer; auxiliary 'has' may be omitted according to App. § 22. 18, sich einander erkennen. 19, Use the pl. of Gewand, n. 20, make them strangers, sie hienieden unter einander entfremden.

Section 122.

THE STATE OF IRELAND.

II.

Let us act in this spirit, and our work is¹ easy. The noble lord (S. 5, N. 2), towards² the conclusion of his speech, spoke of the cloud which is at present hanging³ over Ireland. It is a dark and heavy cloud, and its darkness expands⁴ over the feelings of men in all parts of the British Empire. But⁵ there is a consolation that we may all take to ourselves. An inspired king, bard, and prophet has left⁶ us words which⁷ are not only the expression of a fact, but we may take them as the utterance of a prophecy. He says: "To⁸ the upright there arises light in the darkness."

Let us try in this matter to be upright⁹. Let us try to be just, and that cloud will¹⁰ be dispelled; the dangers which we see will vanish; and we¹¹ may have the happiness of leaving⁶ (S. 1, N. 3) to our children the heritage of an honourable citizenship in a united and prosperous¹² empire.—THE RIGHT HON. JOHN BRIGHT.

1, is easy = will be easy for us (Dat. of persn. pron.). 2, an, contr. with the dat. of the def. art. 3, *schweben*. 4, *sich erstrecken*. 5, Say 'But one consolation we can all gather from it'. To gather, *entnehmen*; from, *aus*. Read S. 4, N. 5, B. 6, *hinterlassen*, insep. comp. str. v. 7, Say 'which not merely designate (*bezeichnen*) a fact (S. 115, N. 2), but (S. 6, N. 10) which we may (= can) also take (*hinnehmen*) as a prophecy (read App. § 18)'. 8, "Für den Gerechten erhebt sich ein Licht in der Finsternis". 9, I think there is but the adj. 'gerecht' to render both 'upright' and 'just' in the underlying sense. 10, *wird sich verteilen*. 11, we may have = we shall perhaps have; happiness = joy. 12, prosperous, *glücklich*; empire = state.

Section 123.

DR. GUTHRIE ON RAGGED SCHOOLS¹.

I.

The² interest I have been led to take in the Ragged School movement is an example of how, in Providence, a man's destiny—his course of life, like that of a river—may be determined and affected by very trivial circumstances. It is rather³ curious—at least it is interesting for me to⁴ remember—that (S. 66, N. 15) *it was* by a picture I was first⁵ led to take an interest in ragged schools—by a picture in an old, obscure⁶, decaying burgh⁷ that stands on the shores of the Frith of Forth, the birth-place (S. 53, N. 9) of⁸ Thomas Chalmers. I went⁹ to see this place many years ago, and, going (S. 55, N. 1) into an inn for¹⁰ refreshment, I found the room covered (App. § 1) with pictures of shepherdesses with their crooks, and sailors in¹¹ holiday attire, not¹² particularly interesting. But above the chimney-piece there¹³ was a large print¹⁴, more¹⁵ respectable than its neighbours, which¹⁶ represented a cobbler's room.

1, Doktor Guthrie über die Schulen für verwahrloste Kinder.—Sogenannte 'Ragged Schools' existieren in Deutschland wohl nicht, und zwar aus dem einfachen Grunde, weil wir sie bisher nicht nötig hatten. 2, This passage requires an altogether different construction. Say 'The circumstances which led me (*welche mich dahin führten*) to interest myself for the establishment of schools for neglected children, are an example of (*davon*) how through Providence (*durch die Vorsehung*) the fate of a man (*Mensch*)—his course of life (S. 76, N. 22, B. 1) like (*gleich*, with dat.) that of a river—can be determined and affected (*beeinflusst*) by very trivial (*geringfügig*) circumstances'. For the position of the verbs read App. §§ 16–20. 3, 'rather', here = not a little. 4, to remember, *mich daran zu erinnern*. 5, *zuerst*. 6, obscure = unknown. 7, 'burgh', here *Gleichen*, m.; the relat. clause 'that—Forth' may be elegantly rendered attributively, thus: *am Ufer des Frith of Forth gelegen*, which last word inflect correctly and place before the qualified noun 'burgh'. 8, *von*. 9, *went* to see = visited; place, Ort, m.; the adverbial clause of time is best placed at the head of the passage. 10, Say 'to (= in order to) refresh myself'.

11, in holiday attire, im Festzuge. 12, Insert 'welch were'. 13, there was = hung. 14, print, Holzschnitt, m.; or Kupferstich, m. 15, Supply 'which was'; 'respectable', here = tolerable, erträglich. 16, Since we commenced the preceding clause with a relative pronoun, it need not be repeated here. Substitute the conj. 'and' for 'which'; a cobbler's room = the workshop of a cobbler.

Section 124.

DR. GUTHRIE ON RAGGED SCHOOLS.

II.

The¹ cobbler was there himself, spectacles² on nose, an old shoe between his (S. 43, N. 9) knees, the massive³ forehead and firm mouth indicating⁴ great determination of character, and, beneath his bushy eyebrows, benevolence⁵ gleamed out on a number of poor ragged boys and girls who stood at their lessons round the busy cobbler. My curiosity was awakened; and in the inscription I read how this man, John Pounds, a cobbler in Portsmouth, took⁶ pity on the multitude of⁷ poor ragged children left⁸ by ministers and magistrates, and ladies and gentlemen, to go to ruin in the streets—how⁹, like a good shepherd, he gathered in these wretched¹⁰ outcasts—how he had trained¹¹ them to God and the world—and how¹², while earning his daily bread by¹³ the sweat of his brow, he had rescued¹⁴ from misery and saved to¹⁵ society not less than five hundred of these gentlemen¹⁶. I felt¹⁷ ashamed of myself. I¹⁸ felt reproved for the little I had done. My feelings¹⁹ were touched. I was astonished at the man's achievements; and I²⁰ well remember, in²¹ the enthusiasm of the moment, saying to my companion (and I have seen in my cooler and calmer moments no reason for²² unsaying the saying): "That man is²³ an honour to humanity, and deserves the greatest monument ever²⁴ raised within the shores of Britain."

1, The—himself, Da saß der Schuhschneider, wie er lebte und lebte. 2, spectacles, die Brille; on, auf, with the def. art. 3, broad. 4, indicating = gave evidence of (zeugen von). 5, benevolence — cobbler = shone forth (erglänzen) a pair of benevolent eyes with which he looked (blicken) upon a number (Anzahl, f.) of poor, ragged (zerlumpt) boys and girls who learned their lessons (Aufgabe, f.) and stood around the busy (= industrious) cobbler. To stand around a person, um einen herumstehen. 6, to take pity on a person, sich jemandes erbarmen, with gen. 7, Use the gen. of the adjectives. 8, left — streets = which ministers (Geistliche) and magistrates (Obrigkeit, f.) had left (überlassen) to their ruin in (auf) the streets. Read App. § 17. 9, After 'how' follows the subject 'he' according to S. 66, N. 15. 10, wretched = unfortunate; gathered in = assembled around himself, um sich her versammelte. 11, to train, erziehen; to, für. 12, und wie er sie, während er... verdiente. 13, by — brow, im Schweiß seines Angesichts, which place after 'daily bread'. 14, to rescue from misery, aus dem Elend ziehen. The auxiliary verb, which must be used in the Subjunctive, according to App. §§ 28 and 30, may be omitted in the intermediate clauses of this long period, and placed but once at the end of the entire passage. 15, Use the dat. of the def. art. 16, The word 'gentlemen' is best used in its unaltered form in this passage. It should be placed in inverted commas. 17, to feel ashamed of oneself, sich beschämt fühlen. 18, Say 'The little (was) I had done was to me (mir) a reproach'.

19, feelings=heart. 20, I well remember = I know yet very well. 21, Say 'that I said in the enthusiasm of the moment', etc. 22, das Gesagte zu widerrufen. 23, macht der Menschheit Ehre. 24, = which ever (je) has been raised within the British Isles.

Section 125.

DR. GUTHRIE ON RAGGED SCHOOLS.

III.

I¹ took up that man's history, and I found it animated by² the spirit of³ Him who⁴ had "compassion on the multitude." John Pounds was a clever man besides⁵; and, like⁶ Paul, if he could not win a poor boy in (auf) any other way, he won him by art. He⁷ would be seen chasing a ragged boy along the quays, and compelling him to come to⁸ school, not by (durch) the power⁹ of a policeman, but by the power of a hot potato. He knew the love an¹⁰ Irishman has for a potato; and¹¹ John Pounds might be seen holding under a boy's nose a *very* hot potato, and¹² wearing a coat as ragged as the boy himself wore. When the day comes when¹³ honour shall be done to whom honour is due¹⁴, I¹⁵ can fancy the crowd of those whose fame poets (S. 3, N. 2) have sung¹⁶, and to whose memory monuments have been raised, dividing¹⁷ like a wave, and¹⁸ passing the great, and the noble, and the mighty of the land, this poor, obscure old man stepping forward and receiving the especial notice of Him who said: "Inasmuch¹⁹ as ye did it to one of the least of those, ye did it also to me."—DR. GUTHRIE.

1, I followed up (verfolgen) the life of this man. 2, von. 3, of Him, dessen. 4, who (der da) had compassion with the poor. 5, auch, placed after the verb. 6, wie Paulus, which place after 'him'; by art = through cunning (List). 7, He—seen = One saw him often; to chase a person, einem nachlaufen. Read S. 78, N. 14, 2. 8, zur Schule. 9, Macht, f. 10, Say 'of an I. for a hot potato'. 11, and one could often see how J. P. held a hot potato under a boy's nose.—To hold a potato under one's nose, einem eine Kartoffel unter die Nase halten. 12, and (insert here dabei) wore as ragged a coat as the boy himself. 13, an dem Ehre erwiesen wird. 14, to be due, gebühren. 15, Say 'then I see (dann sehe ich im Geiste) how all those', etc. 16, besingen. 17, sich gleich einer Woge auseinanderteilen. 18, and — said = see, how this poor, unknown old man steps forward (hervor-treten) and passes by (an einem vorübererschreiten) the great, noble and mighty of the land, and is received (S. 2, N. 1) with especial attention by Him (von Ihm, which place after the conj. 'and') who (insert da) said. 19, Say 'What you (ihr) have done to the least (dem Geringsten) of (unter) these, that have you done to me'.

Section 126.

SHYLOCK¹ MEDITATING REVENGE.

If it will feed² nothing else (S. 27, N. 8), it will³ feed my revenge. He has disgraced⁴ me, and hindered⁵ me of half a million! laughed⁶ at my losses, mocked⁷ at my gains, scorned my nation, thwarted⁸ my bargains, cooled⁹ my friends, heated¹⁰ my enemies! And¹¹ what's his

reason? I am a Jew! Has¹² not a Jew eyes? Has not a Jew hands, organs, senses, affections,¹³ passions? Is (S. 2, N. 1) he not fed with¹⁴ the same food, hurt with the same weapon, subject¹⁵ to the same diseases, healed¹⁶ by the same means, warmed¹⁷ and cooled by the same summer and winter, as a Christian is? If¹⁸ you stab us, do we not bleed? If you tickle us, do we not laugh? If you poison us, do we not die? and¹⁹ if you wrong us, shall we not revenge? If we are like²⁰ you in the rest (S. 27, N. 8), we will resemble you in that²¹! If a Jew wrong a Christian, what²² is his humility? Revenge²³. If a Christian wrong a Jew, what²⁴ should his sufferance be by Christian example? Why²⁵, revenge! The villany you teach (S. 42, N. 4) me I²⁶ will execute; and²⁷ it shall go hard but²⁸ I will better the instruction.—WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE, "THE MERCHANT OF VENICE."

- 1, *Ehloß auf Rache sinnend.*
- 2, feed=satisfy.
- 3, Insert the adv. *doch* after the subject.
- 4, disgraced=insulted, *beschimpft*.
- 5, einen um etwas bringen.
- 6, Supply 'has' to begin this clause; at, *über*, with acc.
- 7, to mock at a thing, *etwas verspotten*, v. tr.; 'my gains' may be rendered by *meinen Profit*.
- 8, crossed (*durchkreuzen*) my enterprises.
- 9, cooled = made indifferent.
- 10, heated=incited (*aufreizen*).
- 11, And for what (*aus welchem*) reason?
- 12, As a rule the English 'not a' or 'not an' is best rendered by the indef. numeral *kein*. Say 'Has a Jew no eyes'?
- 13, feelings.
- 14, von.
- 15, Say 'is he not subject to', etc.; to be subject to a thing, *einer Sache unterworfen sein*.
- 16, This verb requires again the passive voice, and copula and subject must be supplied; by, *durch*.
- 17, Say 'not warmed', the auxiliary need not be repeated here.
- 18, Begin with the principal sentence in this and the two following passages. 'You', here *ihr*.
- 19, Say 'and we shall not revenge ourselves, if you wrong us (*Unrecht zufügen*)'.
- 20, to be like, *gleich*, with dat.; in the rest, in *allem übrigen*.
- 21, in that, *darin*.
- 22, what is=in what (wherein) consists.
- 23, In der Rache.
- 24, in what (wherein) shall according to the Christian example consist his sufferance (*Dulden*, n., or *Duldung*, f.)?
- 25, Nun, *doch* wohl in der Rache!
- 26, *ich* will sie anwenden.
- 27, and—hard, *und es müßte seltsam zugehen*.
- 28, but—instruction = if I should not even (*nach*, after 'not') excel ('should excel' Imperf. of the Subj. of *übertrreffen*; App. § 33) my teachers.

Section 127.

CHARACTER¹ OF CHARLEMAGNE.

I.

In² analyzing the character of heroes it is hardly possible to separate altogether the³ share of fortune from their own⁴. The epoch made⁵ by Charlemagne in the history of the world, the illustrious families which⁶ prided themselves in him as their progenitor, the⁷ very legends of romance, which are full of his fabulous exploits, have⁸ cast a lustre around his head, and testify⁹ the greatness that has embodied itself in his name. None¹⁰, indeed, of Charlemagne's wars can be compared with the Saracenic victories of Charles Martel; but¹¹ that was a contest for freedom, his for conquest; and¹² fame is more partial to successful aggression than to patriotic resistance.

1, Say 'The character of Charles the Great (S. 53, N. 9)'. Karl der Große, König der Franken und später römischer Kaiser, wurde am 2. April 742, wahrscheinlich zu Aachen, geboren und war der Sohn Pipins des Kleinen und der Enkel Karl Martells, dessen Siege über die Sarazenen in dieser Lektion erwähnt werden. Nach dem Tode seines königlichen Vaters (768) trat er gemeinschaftlich mit seinem Bruder Karlmann die Regierung an, ward aber schon im Jahre 771, durch den Tod seines Bruders und die Ausschließung der Söhne desselben vom Throne, Alleinherrscher über alle Franken, von den Pyrenäen bis zum Niederrhein und zum Meere, auch in Deutschland über die Bayern, Thüringer und Alamannen. Durch zahlreiche Kriege erweiterte er jedoch die Grenzen seines Reiches sehr bald, und zwar nördlich bis zur Elbe, südlich bis zum Ebro und nach Unteritalien, und östlich bis zur Saale, dem Böhmerwalde und der Theiß, bis er im Jahre 800 vom Papste Leo III. im St. Peters Dom zu Rom feierlich als römischer Kaiser gekrönt wurde. Er starb am 28. Januar 814. In Karl dem Großen, wie ihn die Geschichte mit Recht benannt hat, war der Begründer der staatlichen Ordnung für die gesammte Germanenwelt erschienen. Seine Lebensaufgabe, die ihm von Anfang an feststand, war, alle deutschen Stämme in den einen fränkischen Reichsverband und in die eine christliche Kirche zusammenzufassen. Dem besten Theile nach ist sie ihm gelungen, und so hat er der nachfolgenden Zeit, dem ganzen Mittelalter, das Gepräge seines Geistes aufgedrückt. In niemand stellt sich die echt deutsche Art der alten Zeit so herrlich dar, als in ihm. Als er die Krone erhielt, zählte er erst 26 Jahre, stand also in der Kraft und Blüte der Jugend. Er war von gewaltiger Körpergröße, eine Heldegestalt, und von nicht minder gewaltiger Körperkraft, so daß er beim fröhlichen Maidwerk den Kampf mit dem wilden Auerochsen in den Ardennenwäldern wie ein Spiel aufnahm; überhaupt von jener Lust an Krieg und Gefahr, wie sie den abenteuernden Herrkönigen der Völkerverwanderung eigen gewesen war; in den wichtigen Dingen der Welt von jener Härte und Rücksichtslosigkeit, die noch keinem großen Manne gefehlt; und ebenso im kleinen Leben des Hauses und des täglichen Verkehrs von jener Milde, Heiterkeit und Frische des Gemüthes, die so gerne Gefährten echter Größe sind. Alle diese Eigenschaften hatte er mit seinem damaligen Volke gemein; was ihn aber über dasselbe erhob, das war der weitschauende Geist, der dem alten Römertum das Vorbild eines weltumfassenden Staates abgelernt hatte, und der dies Muster ohne knechtische Nachahmung dem so ganz andern germanischen Wesen anzupassen wußte. Und zwar ist dieser Geist, der sich in ihm offenbarte, um so wundervoller, weil niemand nachweisen kann, wie er sich gebildet, und wer ihn so gelehrt und erzogen hat. Aus dem Dunkel seiner Zeit geht er, im eigenen Lichte leuchtend, auf. 2, Beim Analysiren von Heldecharakteren. 3, the share (Anteil, m.) of fortune = of a happy (günstig) fate (Geschick, n.). 4, Supply 'individuality'; altogether = quite. 5, made, geschaffen; by, von. Use the attributive construction as explained in S. 7, N. 3, A. 6, Say 'which called him with pride their progenitor'. 7, Say 'even the romantic legends'. 8, Say 'have crowned his head with glory (Ruhm, m.)'. In elevated diction 'head' is rendered by 'Haupt', n. 9, bezeugen. 10, Say 'It is indeed (wohl) true that none of Charles's wars can be compared to (mit) the victories of Charles Martel over the Saracens'. 11, but — conquest = but these were contests for freedom (Freiheitskämpfe), whilst his (to agree with 'wars') were contests for conquest (Eroberungskämpfe). 12, Say 'and fame (S. 3, N. 2) has more partiality (Vorliebe, f.) for successful aggression (Angriff, m.)', etc.

Section 128.

CHARACTER OF CHARLEMAGNE.

II.

As a scholar¹, his acquisitions² were little superior³ to those of his unrespected son; and in⁴ several points of view the glory of Charlemagne might be⁵ extenuated by an analytical dissection. But⁶ rejecting

a mode of judging equally uncandid and fallacious, we shall find that he possessed in everything that grandeur of ⁷ conception which distinguishes extraordinary minds ⁸. Like Alexander, he seemed born ⁹ for universal innovation ¹⁰; in a life restlessly active ¹¹, we see him reforming (S. 78, N. 14, B) the coinage ¹², and establishing the legal divisions of money ¹³; gathering ¹⁴ about him the learned of every country, founding schools and collecting libraries; interfering ¹⁵, but with the tone of a King, in religious controversies; aiming ¹⁶, though prematurely, at the formation of a naval force; attempting ¹⁷, for ¹⁸ the sake of commerce, the magnificent ¹⁹ enterprise of uniting (S. 1, N. 3) the Rhine and ²⁰ Danube; and ²¹ meditating to mould the ²² discordant codes of Roman and barbarian laws into one uniform system.—HALLAM, "THE STUDENT'S MIDDLE AGES."

1, Scholar = 'pupil or schoolboy' is rendered by Schüler; = 'student' by Student, and = 'learned man' by Gelehrter. The last sense is applicable here.
2, acquisitions = knowledge. 3, superior, überlegen, with dat. unrespected = unnoticed. 4, in many respects, in mancher Hinsicht, after which place 'might'. 5, be — dissection, durch eine eingehende Untersuchung geschildert werden. 6, Say 'But if we reject an equally (eine ebenso) partial (partiell) and (als) fallacious (trügerisch) mode of judging (Beurteilungsweise, f.)'. 7, Use the gen. of the def. art. 8, 'mind', here Geist, m. 9, born = created; 'universal', here weitumfassend. 10, innovations = reforms. 11, All parts qualifying a noun must be placed before it. 12, Münzsystem, n. 13, form a comp. n. according to S. 36, N. 7, A; both nouns are combined in the sing. 14, Complete the clause by saying: 'we see him gathering', etc., — to gather, versammeln; about, um; of every country = of all countries. 15, interfering in religious controversies, sich mit religiösen Streitigkeiten befassen; after which place the clause 'but — King', and supply 'always' after 'but'; 'tone', here = dignity. 16, This sentence should likewise be introduced by supplying 'We see him', after which place 'though prematurely' (zu frühzeitig); to aim, streben (nach). 17, Begin this clause with 'see him'. 18, for the sake of, um . . . willen, with Gen. 19, attempt the magnificent enterprise, den großartigen Versuch machen. 20, and = with the. 21, und darauf sinnen. 22, the — laws, die sich widersprechenden römischen und sonstigen Gesetze; uniform, einheitlich; to mould, verschmelzen.

Section 129.

GOETHE'S DAILY LIFE AT WEIMAR.

I.

Passing through an ante-chamber, where, in cupboards, stand his mineralogical collections, we enter (App. § 14) the study, a low-roofed, narrow room (Gemach, n.), somewhat dark (S. 128, N. 11), for it is (S. 2, N. 1) lighted only through two tiny windows, and ¹ furnished with a simplicity quite touching to behold.

In the centre ² stands a plain oval table of unpolished oak ³. No arm-chair is to be seen, no sofa, nothing which (S. 3, N. 7) speaks ⁴ of comfort. A plain hard chair has ⁵ beside it the basket in which he used ⁶ to place his handkerchief. Against ⁷ the wall, on the right, is a ⁸ long pear-tree table, with book-shelves, on which stand lexicons and manuals. Here hangs a pincushion, venerable in ⁹ dust, with the visiting-

cards, and other trifles which¹⁰ death had made sacred. Here¹¹ also a medallion of Napoleon, with this¹² circumscription: "Scilicet¹³ immenso superest ex nomine multum." On the side-wall again, a book-case, with some works of poets. On the wall to the left is a long desk of soft wood, at¹⁴ which he was wont⁶ to write. A sheet of paper with notes of¹⁵ contemporary history is fastened near¹⁶ the door, and behind¹⁷ this door tables¹⁸ of music and geology.

1, and — behold = and is (ist) furnished with an almost (fast) touching simplicity. 2, middle. 3, Eichenholz, n.; the oak = oak-tree, is rendered by Eiche, f., or Eichbaum, m. 4, speaks = points to; to point to a thing, auf etwas deuten. 5, has beside it = stands beside. 6, used to place, zu legen pflegte. 'To use', when employed *transitively*, is generally rendered by brauchen, gebrauchen, benutzen, anwenden, and verbrauchen, whilst *intransitively* it is rendered by pflegen or gewohnt sein, in the sense of 'to be accustomed to', 'to be in the habit of', 'to be wont to do'. 7, Against = on; on (or to) the right, rechts; on (or to) the left, links. 8, ein langer Tisch von Birnbaumholz. 9, in dust = through its age. 10, which — sacred, die durch den Tod geheiligt sind. 11, Insert 'is' or 'hangs'. 12, this = the. 13, Scilicet — multum, Little honour is derived from a great name. 14, at, an. 15, über die (or aus der) Tagesgeschichte. 16, in der Nähe der Thür; to fasten, anheften. 17, an; supply 'hang' after 'door'. 18, musikalische und geologische Tabellen.

Section 130.

GOETHE'S DAILY LIFE AT WEIMAR.

II.

The same door leads into a bedroom; it is a¹ closet with a window. A simple bed, an arm-chair by² its side, and a tiny washing-table, with a small white basin *on it* and a sponge, is³ all the furniture.

From the other side of the study we enter the library, which should⁴ rather be called a lumber-room of books. Rough⁵ deal shelves hold the books with⁶ bits of paper, on which are written "philosophy," "history," "poetry," etc., to mark the classification. He rose at seven [o'clock], sometimes⁷ earlier, after a sound *and* prolonged⁸ sleep; for like Thorwaldsen⁹ he had a "talent for sleeping," only surpassed (S. 7, N. 3, B) by¹⁰ his talent for¹¹ continuous work. Till eleven he worked without *any* interruption. A cup of chocolate was then¹² brought, and¹³ he resumed work till one. At two he dined. This¹⁴ meal was the important meal of the day. His appetite was immense. Even on *the* days when¹⁵ he complained of not being hungry, he ate much more than most men. Puddings, sweets¹⁶, and cakes were always welcome. He sat¹⁷ a long while over his wine, chatting¹⁸ gaily to some friend or other—for he never dined alone—or to one of the actors, whom he had often with¹⁹ him, after dinner, to read over their parts, and to take²⁰ his instructions.

1, ein kleines Rabinett. 2, by its side = before it, davor. 3, is — furniture = form (bilden) the whole furniture (Mobiliar, n.). 4, should rather be called = could (Impf. Subj.) much rather (vielmehr) be called. The auxiliary

'could' stands last of all, whilst 'called' has the first place of the three verbs, which are used in the Passive Voice. 5, Say 'Upon simple (schlicht) deal boards stand the books'.

6, The passage 'with — classification' may be simplified by saying: 'on (an) which (denen) bits of paper with the labels (Aufschrift, f.) . . . indicate (bezeichnen) a certain order'. The abbreviation 'etc.' corresponds to the German 'u. s. w.', which is the short for 'und so weiter', and so on.

7, Insert auch after 'sometimes'. 8, long. 9, Albert

Bertel Thorwaldsen, berühmter dänischer Bildhauer, wurde im Jahre 1770 auf der See zwischen Island und Kopenhagen geboren, war ein Schüler der Kunstakademie zu Kopenhagen und lebte von 1796 bis 1838 in Rom, kehrte aber dann nach seiner Heimat zurück, wo er am 24. März 1844 starb. Thorwaldsen ist der Schöpfer zahlreicher idealer Werke im echten klassischen Geiste altgriechischer Kunst, welche meistens der antiken Mythologie, zum Teil aber auch der christlichen Religionsanschauung entlehnt sind. Sein Name wird unsterblich sein, denn er lebt der Welt in seinen unvergleichlichen Werken fort, die zu Kopenhagen von seinen begeisterten Landsleuten in einem besonders dazu gebauten Museum, welches den Namen des weltberühmten Künstlers trägt, zur Bewunderung der Nachwelt ausgestellt sind.

10, durch. 11, zur unausgesetzten Arbeit. 12, Place the adv. 'then' at the head of the sentence, and supply 'for him' (ihm) after the auxiliary. As a rule the person or persons for whose benefit an action is done must be indicated in German; as—I will buy a hat, ich will mir einen Hut kaufen.

13, and — one = whereupon he worked again till one o'clock. 14, This — day = This was his principal meal. Form a comp. n. according to S. 36, N. 7, A. 15, when (wo) he complained of (über) want (Mangel, m.) of (an) appetite.

16, Süßigkeiten. 17, To sit a long while over one's wine, lange beim Wein sitzen.

18, chatting = and chatted (plaudern); to some friend or other = to (mit) this or that friend.

19, bei sich; after — parts = to (= in order to) read to him their parts (Rollen) after dinner (nach Tische, which place after the conj. um and the dat. of the persn. pron.). To read, vorlesen. 20, To take instructions, Anweisungen entgegennehmen.

Section 131.

GOETHE'S DAILY LIFE AT WEIMAR.

III.

He was fond of wine (S. 3, N. 2) and drank daily his two or three bottles. Lest¹ this statement should convey a false impression, I hasten to² recall to the reader's recollection the very different habits of our fathers in respect to drinking. It was no³ unusual thing to be called "a three-bottle-man" in those days in England, when⁴ the three bottles were of port or Burgundy; and Goethe, a⁵ Rhinelander, accustomed from boyhood to wine, drank a wine which his English contemporaries would have called water. The⁶ amount he drank never did more than exhilarate him, and never made him unfit for work or for society. Over⁷ his wine, then, he sat some hours; no *such thing as* dessert was seen upon his table in those days; not even the customary coffee after dinner. His mode⁸ of living was extremely simple; and even when persons⁹ of very moderate circumstances burned wax¹⁰, two¹¹ poor tallow candles were all that could be seen in his rooms. In the evening he often went to the theatre, and there¹² his *customary* glass of punch was brought (S. 4, N. 4, man) at six o'clock (App. § 9). If (S. 27, N. 7) not at the theatre, he received friends at¹³ home. Between eight and nine a frugal supper was laid¹⁴, but¹⁵ he never took anything except a little salad or preserves.

By¹⁶ ten o'clock he was usually in bed.—G. H. LEWES, "LIFE OF GOETHE."

1, Lest — impression = In order that (Damit) this observation may (Present Subj. of mögen; read App. §§ 33 and 34) not make a false impression.—For the position of the verbs see App. § 18. 2, to — drinking = to remind the reader of (an) the very different (ganß andern) habits of our fathers in respect of drinking.—To transl. 'drinking' form a noun of the infinitive of the verb 'to drink', and use it with the def. art., according to S. 3, N. 2, and S. 11, N. 7. 3, no—thing, nichts Ungewöhnliches; in those days, damals, which place with 'in England' after 'was'. 4, 'when', here wo. Notice that: The relative conjunction 'wo' is often used in reference to time as a translation of 'when' in the sense of 'at (in or during) which time'; as — Es geschah zu einer Zeit, wo (zu or in welcher) Sie abwesend waren, it happened at a time *when* you were absent. It is also used relatively, in reference to place, instead of a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition; as — Kennst du das Land, wo (in welchem) die Zitronen blühen? (Goethe) Know you the land *where* (in which) the citrons bloom? Dies ist das Haus, wo (in dem) er wohnt, this is the house where (in which) he lives. 5, a — wine, als Rheinländer von Jugend auf an Wein gewöhnt. 6, The — him = What he drank had never any (=an) other effect than (als) to exhilarate him; to exhilarate, angenehm anregen. 7, So he sat for hours (stundenlang) over his (beim) wine. 8, Lebensweise, f. 9, Leute; of = in. 10, wax = wax candles. 11, two — rooms = one saw in his rooms only two poor (dürftig) tallow candles. 12, dahin. 13, bei sich zu Hause. 14, to lay a frugal supper, ein einfaches Abendessen auftragen; to lay the table (the cloth), den Tisch decken. 15, Say 'but he (himself) took (essen or genießen, S. 3, N. 8.) only a little salad or preserves'. 16, um.

Section 132.

THE¹ PROGRESS IN THE ART OF PRINTING.

(Conclusion² of a Speech delivered at the Caxton Celebration, June 30, 1877, in London.)

I now call³ attention, in⁴ a few words, to the progress of this art. I hold *up* a volume in my (S. 43, N. 9) hand, to⁵ which I beg everyone to direct his eye, because I think it⁶ may be called the climax and consummation of this art. This⁷ volume is bound, as you see, and stamped with the arms of the University of Oxford. It is a Bible bound⁸ in a manner that commends itself to the reader—I believe⁹ in every sense an excellent piece of workmanship, containing more than *one*¹⁰ thousand pages. Well¹¹, you will say: "That is very¹² commonplace, why bring it before us?" I do so¹³ in order to tell¹⁴ you that this book sixteen hours ago did not exist—it¹⁵ was not bound, it was not folded, it was not printed. Since the clock struck twelve last night at¹⁶ the University Press in Oxford, the people (man) there have printed and sent us this book. They (man) have sent several copies¹⁷ to¹⁸ be distributed here in the midst of your festival. That shows what can be done, and *that is* what has been done, and¹⁹ it shows the state to which this great art is now happily arrived. If²⁰ I began with a humiliating confession as to the small share we could claim in contributing to the early history of printing, we may²¹ leave off, ladies and gentlemen, in a better spirit,

because I think that such a performance as this is²² one that will be admitted to be a credit in any portion of the world. Now I will trouble you no longer, but (S. 6, N. 10) will ask²³ you to²⁴ drink with me to the memory of this most distinguished name: "To²⁵ the memory of²⁶ William Caxton, the (S. 53, N. 9) first English printer, and a native²⁷ of *this* our beloved country²⁸."—THE RIGHT HON. W. E. GLADSTONE.

1, Die Fortschritte in der Buchdruckerkunst. The noun 'progress' is generally rendered by the corresponding plural form in German. 2, Schluß einer am 30. Juni 1877 bei Gelegenheit der Gartenfeier in London gehaltenen Rede. William Caxton, der erste Buchdrucker Englands, wurde im Jahre 1412 zu Wealby in Kent geboren, wohnte aber später als Bürger und Kaufmann in London, woselbst er auch im Jahre 1492 starb. 3, to call a person's attention to a thing, einen auf etwas aufmerksam machen. Begin with the adv. 'now', and supply the personal object 'Sie'. 4, in a = with; of = in. 5, = which I beg you all to look at (betrachten, v. tr.). 6, it — art = we may (dürfen) consider (ansehen) it the climax and consummation (als die höchste Stufe der Vollendung) of (= in) this art. 7, Say 'As you see, this volume (here Einband) is stamped with the arms', etc. 8, bound — reader = the binding of which must commend (App. § 18) itself at once (sich von selbst) to the reader. 9, Here insert 'it is'; sense = respect, Beziehung, f.; piece of workmanship = 'work of art', which render by forming a comp. n. according to S. 36, N. 7, A. 10, 'One' or 'a' before 'hundred' and 'thousand' is, as a rule, not translated in German. 11, Say 'But (which place after the copula 'will') you will perhaps say'. 12, etwas ganz Gewöhnliches, wozu es uns noch zeigen? 13, The English 'so' in connection with a transitive verb is generally to be rendered by 'es'. If we want to emphasize the object, however, we use either of the demonstrative pronouns 'das' or 'dies', and place it at the head of the clause; as — Do you think *so*? Glauben Sie es? No, I do not, Nein, das glaube ich nicht. 14, sagen or mittheilen. 15, Say 'it was neither bound, nor . . . nor . . .' 16, Render 'at the' by the gen. of the def. art.; and place the clause 'at — Oxford' after 'clock'. Last night, vergangene Nacht. 17, 'Copy' in the signification of 'specimen' is rendered by *Exemplar*, n.; pl. e (=e); *Kopie*, f., is the written copy of any book, document or MS. 18, Say 'in order to distribute them here during this festival'. 19, and — arrived = and it shows the high degree (Stufe, f.) of (der) perfection which this great art has reached now-a-days (heutzutage) (App. § 17). 20, If — printing = If I began with the humiliating confession that we in respect to (auf) our contribution to the (zur) early (früheren) history of the art of printing can claim (beanspruchen dürfen, which comes last) only a small (gering) share. 21, may = can; leave off = conclude; spirit = mood, Stimmung, f.; performance, Leistung, f. 22, is — world, überall in der Welt mit Ehren anerkannt werden wird. 23, 'To ask' in the signification of 'asking a question' is rendered by *fragen* or *eine Frage stellen*, but in that of 'to request' by *bitten*. 24, to — name = to empty your glasses with me to the (zum) memory (Andenken) of (an) this most (höchst) distinguished name; ('your glasses to empty' must be placed at the end.) 25, Zum Gedächtnis. 26, Use the Anglo-Saxon genitive here. 27, native = son. 28, country = fatherland.

Section 133.

ROBERT DICK, THE BAKER, GEOLOGIST, AND BOTANIST.

Not long ago, Sir Roderick Murchinson discovered at Thurso, in the far north of Scotland, a profound¹ geologist, in the person of a baker

there², named Robert Dick. When (S. 4, N. 2) Sir Roderick called upon him at³ the bakehouse in which (S. 131, N. 4) he baked and earned his bread, Robert Dick delineated⁴ to him by⁵ means of flour upon a board, the geographical features⁶ and geological phenomena of his native country, pointing⁷ out its imperfections in⁸ the existing maps, which⁹ he had ascertained by travelling over the country in his leisure hours. On¹⁰ further inquiry, Sir Roderick ascertained¹¹ that the humble¹² individual before him was not only a capital baker and geologist, but also a first-rate¹³ botanist. "I found," said the Director-General of the Geographical Society, "to my great humiliation, that this baker¹⁴ knew infinitely more of (S. 40, N. 9) botanical science, ay, ten times more, than I *did* ; and that there were (S. 82, N. 7) only some twenty or thirty specimens¹⁵ of flowers which he had not collected. Some he had obtained¹⁶ as presents, some (=others) he had purchased, but the greater portion had been accumulated¹⁷ by his industry, in his native county of Caithness ; and the specimens¹⁸ were all arranged¹⁹ in the most beautiful order, with²⁰ their scientific names affixed."—S. SMILES, "SELF-HELP."

1, gründlich. 2, dortig, which use attributively before the noun 'baker'; named, namens. 3, in. 4, entwerfen, insep. comp. str. v. 5, mittels eines mit Mehl bestreuten Brettes. 6, Umrisse. 7, Say 'whereby he pointed out the imperfections'. To point out a thing, auf etwas verweisen, insep. comp. str. v. 8, Use the gen. of the def. art. 9, which — hours = of which (wovon) he had convinced himself on (auf) his travels through the country in his leisure hours (Mußestunden). 10, Nach weiterer Prüfung. 11, ascertained = learnt, erfuhr, from erfahren. 12, humble = modest; individual = man. 13, first-rate = considerable, bedeutend. 14, Here follow the words 'of — science' after which transl. the adv. 'infinitely', which is followed by 'ay (ja) ten times more' and the verb 'knew'. 15, specimens of flowers, Blumenarten. 16, To obtain a thing as present, etwas geschenkt erhalten. 17, accumulated = collected. Where, and in what order, must the verbs be placed? Which voice must you use?—native, heimisch. 18, Grenzplaz, n.; pl. e. 19, zusammenstellen, sep. comp. w. v. 20, and the scientific names everywhere (überall) affixed (hinzu-fügen), sep. comp. w. v.

Section 134.

THE GOSPEL OF WORK.

I.

Work, hard¹ work, is a blessing to² the soul and the character³ of the man who works. Young men⁴ may not think so. They⁵ may say: "What⁶ more pleasant than to have⁷ one's fortune made for one, and⁸ have nothing more before one than to enjoy life? What⁹ more pleasant than to be idle; or, at least, to do only what one likes, and no more than one likes?" But they would find themselves mistaken. They would find that idleness makes a man⁹ restless, discontented, greedy, the¹⁰ slave of his own lusts and passions, and see, too late, that no man⁹ is more to be pitied than the man¹¹ who has nothing to do. Yes, thank¹² God, every morning, when you get up, that you have something to do that day which must be done, whether you like it or not. Being¹³ forced to work, and forced to do your best, will breed in¹⁴ you temper-

ance and self-control, diligence and strength of will, cheerfulness and content, and *a* (S. 132, N. 10) hundred virtues which the idle¹⁵ man will never know.

- 1, *schwer*. 2, *für*. 3, character = dignity. Turn 'of — works' by 'of him (*dessen*) who (after which insert the adv. *da*) works. 4, men = people, *Leute*. When 'people' signifies 'persons' in the general sense of the word, it is mostly rendered by *Leute*. In the signification of 'nation' it is rendered by *Volk*, n., corresponding to the Latin 'populus' and the French 'peuple'. In the first signification, however, we can often translate it by the indefinite pronoun 'man', which also corresponds to the English 'they', 'we', 'you', used in a general and indefinite sense. 5, = They say perhaps. 6, *Was giebt es*. 7, to have = to see; for one = by (*von*) others. 8, Say 'with no other task than to enjoy one's life'? 9, 'Man' is here used in the signification of 'human being', when it is generally rendered by '*der Mensch*'. 10, Read S. 102, N. 13. 11, Use the demonstrative pron. *derjenige*. 12, When the Imperative of the 2nd pers. is used in a general application, we use it either in the 2nd pers. sing. or the 2nd pers. pl. Use the 2nd pers. sing. in this case. 13, Being — best = The compulsion (*Zwang*, m.) to work (*zur Arbeit*) and the necessity to do your (= thy) best. 14, Place 'in you' (= thee) after 'virtues', immediately before the infinitive 'breed' (= awaken, *erwecken*). 15, the idle man, *der Müßiggänger*.

Section 135.

THE GOSPEL OF WORK.

II.

The monks in olden times found it so¹. When (S. 18, N. 6) they shut² themselves up from the world to worship God in³ prayers and hymns, they found that [here follows the subject "they"], without working⁴, without⁵ hard work either of head or of hands, they could not⁶ even be good men (S. 134, N. 9). The⁷ devil came and⁸ tempted them, they said, as often as they were⁹ idle. An idle monk's soul was lost, they used (S. 129, N. 6) to say, and they spoke truly. Though they gave¹⁰ up a large portion of¹¹ every day, and of every night also, to¹² prayer and worship, (S. 27, N. 8) yet¹³ they found [that] they could not pray aright without work.

And "working (S. 11, N. 7) is praying," said one of the holiest of them that¹⁴ ever lived; and he spoke truth (S. 3, N. 2); if¹⁵ a man will but do his work for the sake of duty, which is for the sake of God.—
CHARLES KINGSLEY.

- 1, Turn 'it so' by '*daß*', which place at the head of the sentence, using the inverted construction and inserting the adv. '*auch*' after the verb. 2, to shut oneself up, *sich ab'schließen*, sep. comp. str. v. refl. 3, *beten*; to worship, *verehren*. 4, working = work. 5, *ohne angestrengte Kopf- oder Handarbeit*. 6, not even, *nicht einmal*. 7, The words 'They said' are best placed at the head of this passage. To translate the verbs correctly, you must carefully read App. §§ 28 and 30. 8, and tempted them = in order to tempt them. 9, *wären*. 10, 'to give up', here = to devote, *widmen*, with dat. 11, of — also = of the day and of the night. 12, *dem Gebet und den Andachtsübungen*. 13, yet, *doch*, to be placed after the subject. 14, who ever (*je*) has lived.

How must the verbs be placed? 15, Begin a new period here, and say: 'When a man (S. 134, N. 9) does his work for the sake of (um . . . willen, which governs the Gen.) his duty, (S. 27, N. 8) he does it (to agree with 'duty') for God's sake'.

Section 136.

DO NOT BE ASHAMED OF YOUR ORIGIN¹.

I.

General Bau, a German (S. 101, N. 1) officer in¹ the service of Russia, who had contributed much to the elevation of the great Catherine², had³ orders to march to Holstein with a body of troops of which he had the command. He was a soldier of fortune, and no one knew either his family or his native place. One day (S. 19, N. 2), as he was encamped near⁴ Husum, he invited the principal⁵ officers to dinner. As they were sitting down to the table, they⁶ saw a plain miller and his wife brought into the tent, whom⁷ the general had sent his aide-de-camp to seek. The poor miller and his wife approached, trembling (S. 53, N. 12) with⁸ apprehension. The general reconciled them to⁹ their situation, and made¹⁰ them sit down beside him to dinner, during which he asked¹¹ them a number of questions about their family.

1, Origin, Herkunft, f.; in the service of Russia, in russischen Diensten. 2, Katharina I., Kaiserin von Rußland, wurde am 15. April 1684 geboren und war die Tochter eines lithauischen Bauers, namens Samuel Sawronski. Im Jahre 1701 wurde sie die Gattin eines schwedischen Dragoners, fiel dann bei der Einnahme Marienburgs durch die Russen (1702) in die Hände des russischen Generals Scheremetjew, durch den sie zum Fürsten Menschikow und endlich zum Kaiser Peter dem Großen kam, der sich in sie verliebte und sich im Jahre 1707 heimlich mit ihr vermählen ließ. Ihr eigentlicher Taufname war Martha, beim Uebertritt zur griechisch katholischen Kirche erhielt sie jedoch die Namen Katharina Alexiowna. Im Jahre 1711 gelang es ihr, indem sie sich die Gunst des Großveziers zu gewinnen wußte, am Pruth das russische Heer durch List aus gefährlicher Lage zu befreien, worauf sie im Jahre 1712 von Peter dem Großen öffentlich als seine rechtmäßige Gemahlin anerkannt wurde. Sie wurde endlich im Jahre 1724 als Kaiserin feierlich gekrönt, als sie jedoch nach Peters des Großen Tode im Jahre 1725 auf Betrieb des Fürsten Menschikow als regierende Kaiserin ausgerufen wurde, überließ sie sich einer zügellosen Lebensweise und starb am 17. Mai 1727. Sie ward Mutter dreier Töchter, Katharina, Anna (Mutter Peters III.) und Elisabeth, der nachmaligen Kaiserin. 3, Say 'had the order'; render 'to march — command,' liter. = with an under his command standing body of troops (Truppencorps, n.) to (S. 72, N. 4) Holstein to march. 4, near = not far from, unweit. 5, = first. 6, = they saw that a simple miller and his wife were brought into the tent. 7, die der General durch seinen Adjutanten hatte holen lassen. 8, vor. 9, mit. 10, made them sit down, ließ (or hieß, bade) sie . . . Platz nehmen; beside him = on his side; to dinner, beim Essen. 11, to ask a person numerous questions, einem viele Fragen vorlegen; about, über.

Section 137.

DO NOT BE ASHAMED OF YOUR ORIGIN.

II.

The good man told him *that* he was (App. § 28) the eldest son of a miller, and that he had two brothers in¹ a mercantile line and a sister.

"But," said the general, "had you² not another brother besides the two whom you have mentioned?" The miller told him he had another³ brother, but⁴ he went to the wars very young, and as⁵ they had never heard of him, they supposed he was dead. The⁶ general, reading (S. 16, N. 4) in the eyes of the officers that they were surprised at his entertaining himself so long with questioning the poor man, turned to them and said: "Gentlemen, you have always been curious to know from what family I sprung⁷; I now tell⁸ you that I am not ashamed of my origin; that I am the brother of this honest miller; he has given you the history⁹ of my family." The general, after spending¹⁰ (S. 55, N. 1) the day with his relations, in¹¹ the festivity of which his officers heartily joined, took measures to better their fortune¹².—ANECDOTES.

- 1, in — line, im Kaufmannsstande.
- 2, Translate 'you' by *Sie* in this address, and use the verb in the 2nd pers. pl., which at that time was the common address for people of the lower rank of society. Say 'had you (*Sie*) besides (*außer*) the two already mentioned brothers not yet another'?
- 3, noch einen.
- 4, aber er sei sehr jung in den Krieg gezogen.
- 5, da; read S. 27, N. 8.
- 6, Say 'The general who read in the eyes of the officers their surprise (*insert darüber*), that he occupied himself so long with the questioning (*Ausfragen*, n.) of the poor man'.
- 7, stammen.
- 8, tell = say.
- 9, family-history, S. 76, N. 22, *A*.
- 10, To spend a day with one's relations, einen Tag in Gesellschaft seiner Verwandten verleben.
- 11, bei welcher Festlichkeit sich die Offiziere herzlich beteiligten.
- 12, fortune = position.

Section 138.

NOT NEAR ENOUGH YET.

There¹ is a popular report in the Brandenburg district, where Bismarck's family has been so many centuries at home, which attributes to the Bismarcks, as the characteristic saying of the house, the phrase: "Noch lange nicht genug"—(Not near enough yet), and which expresses⁵, we² suppose, the popular³ conception of⁴ their tenacity of purpose—that⁶ they were not tired out of any plan they had formed by a reiterated failure or a pertinacious opposition which would have disheartened most of their compeers. There⁷ is a somewhat extravagant illustration of this characteristic in Bismarck's wild, youthful days, if his biographer may be trusted. When studying⁸ law at Berlin, he had been more than once disappointed⁹ by a bootmaker who¹⁰ did not send home his boots when they were promised. Accordingly¹¹ when this next happened, a servant of the young jurist appeared at the bootmaker's at six in the morning (App. § 9) with the simple question: "Are Herr¹² von Bismarck's boots ready?" When he was told they were not¹³, he departed¹⁴, but *at* ten minutes past six another servant appeared, asking¹⁵ the same question, and¹⁶ so at precise intervals of ten minutes it went on all day, till by¹⁷ the evening the boots were finished and¹⁸ sent home.—EARLE, "THE PHILOLOGY OF THE ENGLISH TONGUE."

- 1, Say 'In the province of Brandenburg, where the family Bismarck for (*seit*) several centuries is at home ('to be at home,' here *ansässig sein*) there is (*existiert*) a popular (*volkstümlich*) report (*Sage*, f.) which, as *a* characteristic

saying (Wahlspruch, m.) attributes (zu'schreiben, with the dat.) to the Bismarcks the phrase (Motto, n.). 2, Say 'as we suppose', which place after the rel. pron.

3, populär; conception, Vorstellung, f. 4, von ihrem zähen Festhalten am Zwecke. 5, bezeichnet. 6, that they even (auch) through repeated failure (Fehlſchlagen) or pertinacious (hartnäckig) opposition (Widerſtand, m.), which would have discouraged (entmutigt hätte, which place at the end of this clause) most of their compeers (Standesgenossen), were not tired out of any plan they had formed (ſich nicht von ihrem einmal gefaßten Plane abbringen ließen).

7, A somewhat eccentric illustration (Beſag, m.) of (für) this characteristic quality we find in Bismarck's wild (ſtürmiſch) youth, if we can trust his biographer. 8, To study law, Jura ſtudieren. 9, täuſchen; by, von. 10, Say 'who had not (App. § 10) sent back his boots at the appointed (verabredet) time'.

11, When (S. 4, N. 2) it therefore happened again (wieder geſchehen). 12, **Fürst Otto von Bismarck** wurde am 1. April 1815 zu Schönhausen, dem Stammgute der Familie Bismarck, in der Provinz Brandenburg im Königreiche Preußen geboren. Er entſtammt der alten preußiſchen adeligen Familie von Bismarck, welche auch von Bismarck-Schönhausen genannt wird, um dieſelbe von der ihr verwandten Familie von Bismarck-Wohlen zu unterſcheiden. Von Bismarck trat zuerſt öffentlich auf dem Landtage von 1847 als Führer der äußerſten Rechten (extreme Conservatives) und dann als Mitglied der im Jahre 1848 tagenden zweiten preußiſchen Kammer (the Prussian House of Commons) als entſchiedener Gegner des Repräſentationsſystems (Representative Government) und der Reichsverfaſſung hervor. Sein entſchiedenes Talent für die diplomatiſche Laufbahn beſtimmte die Regierung, ihn im Jahre 1851 zum Legationsſekretär bei der preußiſchen Bundeſtagsgeſandſchaft in Frankfurt a/M. zu ernennen. Drei Monate ſpäter wurde er jedoch ſchon zum Bundeſtagsgeſandten erhoben, in welcher Eigenſchaft er vergeblich Preußens Gleichſtellung mit Öſtreich beim Bundeſtage erſtrebte. Nachdem er ſeit dem 1. April 1859 preußiſcher Geſandter in Petersburg und ſeit dem Frühjahr 1862 Botſchafter in Paris geweſen, trat er am 24. September deſſelben Jahres als Miniſter des Auswärtigen an die Spitze des neu ernannten Kabinetts. Es würde zu weit führen, hier auf die Einzelheiten ſeiner großartigen Erfolge als Miniſterpräſident einzugehen, genüge es zu bemerken, daß ſein Hauptſtreben darauf gerichtet war, Preußen zur herrſchenden Macht in Deutſchland zu machen, Öſtreich daraus zu verdrängen, und ſchließlich durch Auflöſung des deutſchen Staatenbundes ein einziges Deutſchland unter dem Zepher Preußens zu ſchaffen. Wie ihm dieſe Aufgabe gelang, iſt allgemein bekannt. Die ſchon lange zwiſchen Preußen und Öſtreich beſtandene Eiferſucht brach endlich im Jahre 1866 durch den Krieg in lichten Flammen aus. Preußen ging glänzend aus demſelben als Sieger hervor. Durch den Prager Friedensvertrag entſagte Öſtreich nicht allein ſeinen Anſprüchen als Präſidialmacht im deutſchen Staatenbunde, ſondern ſchied gänzlich aus demſelben aus und erkannte den unter Preußens Führung zu ſtiftenden Norddeutſchen Bund an. In Anerkennung ſeiner großen Erfolge wurde Bismarck nach beendigten Kriegen in den Grafenſtand erhoben und zugleich zum Kanzler des Norddeutſchen Bundes ernannt, deſſen Angelegenheiten er mit ſo bedeutendem Geſchick leitete, daß bei der im Jahre 1870 von Frankreich an Preußen erfolgten Kriegserklärung auch die Sübſtaaten ſich dem Norddeutſchen Bunde anſchloſſen und das ganze Deutſchland vereinigt gegen den Feind in den Kampf ziehen konnte, aus dem es mit Lorbeeren gekrönt ſiegreich hervorging. Schon am 18. Januar 1871 ward König Wilhelm I. von Preußen unter Zuſtimmung aller deutſchen Staaten im Schloſſe zu Verſailles als deutſcher Kaiſer proklamiert. Das große Ziel Bismarcks war erreicht. Die Einheit des bisher zerſtückelten Vaterlandes war wiederhergeſtellt, ein mächtiges deutſches Reich unter der Führung Preußens gegründet, und die demſelben drohenden Feinde waren beſiegt und geſchlagen. Am 20. Mai 1871 wurde von dem Fürſten und Reichskanzler Bismarck zu Frankfurt a/M. der Friede mit Frankreich unterzeichnet, durch welchen die früher von dem deutſchen Reiche getrennten Herzogtümer Lothringen und Elſaß demſelben wieder einverleibt wurden und Frankreich ſich verpflichtete, an Deutſchland eine Kriegsentſchädigung von fünf Milliarden Franken zu zahlen. Die Eröffnung des deutſchen Reichstages in Berlin, am 21. März 1871, gehört vielleicht zu den größten Triumpfen dieſes höchſt ſeltſamen

bewunderungswürdigen Mannes. 13, Supply 'ready', and use the Present Subjunctive. 14, fortgehen. 15, = with the same question. 16, and — day = and this was repeated (und dies wiederholte sich) all day long (den ganzen Tag lang) at (in) precise intervals of 10 minutes. 17, an, contracted with the def. art. 18, = and were sent back.

Section 139.

A GREAT LOSS.

Mr. Thomas Carlyle had lent the Manuscript of the first volume of his "French Revolution" to a neighbour to peruse. By¹ some mischance or other, it² had been left lying on the parlour-floor, and³ become forgotten. Weeks ran on⁴, when at last the historian sent for⁵ his manuscript, the⁶ printers being loud for copy. Inquiries⁷ were made, and⁸ then it was found that the maid-of-all-work, finding⁹ what she conceived to be a bundle of waste paper on the floor, had¹⁰ used it to light the kitchen and parlour fires with¹¹. Such¹² was the answer returned¹³ to Mr. Carlyle, and his consternation and despair may be imagined (S. 4, N. 4). There¹⁴ was, however, no help for him but to set himself resolutely to work to re-write his book; and¹⁵ he turned to and did it. He had no draft¹⁶, and¹⁷ was compelled to rake up from his memory facts, ideas, and expressions, which had long since been dismissed. The composition¹⁸ of the book in the first instance had been a *work of* real pleasure; the¹⁹ re-writing of it, a second time, *was* one of pain and anguish almost beyond belief. That²⁰ he persevered and finished the volume under such circumstances affords²¹ an instance of determination of purpose which has seldom been exceeded.—S. SMILES, "SELF-HELP."

1, By — other = Through a mischance (Wißgeschick, n.). 2, it — lying, hatte man es . . . liegen lassen. 3, and — forgotten = where it was forgotten. 4, ran on = passed away. 5, nach. 6, the — copy = since the printers desired (verlangen) the same. 7, to make inquiries, Nachforschungen anstellen. 8, und nun stellte es sich heraus. 9, finding — floor = in the opinion of finding a bundle of worthless papers on the floor. 10, had used (benutzen . . . zu) the same. Read carefully S. 87, N. 6, and construe accordingly. 11, with = with it, S. 4, N. 5, B. 12, Such = that. 13, = which Mr. C. received. 14, Es blieb ihm indessen nichts anderes übrig, als. 15, und er machte sich daran und führte es aus. 16, Entwurf, m. 17, and — dismissed = and had to (= must) torture (abmartern) his memory in order to find again the from (von) him long forgotten facts, ideas, and expressions. 18, composition = work; in the first instance = at first. Supply 'for him' after 'pleasure'. 19, Say 'to write it for the (zum) second time was a painful and almost incredibly anxious (angstvoll) work. 20, Daß er sie durchführte. 21, = is; determination of purpose = strength of will, Willenskraft, f.; exceeded, übertroffen.

Section 140.

HERO WORSHIP¹.

I.

Do² not think it a mean thing to look up to (zu) those who are superior to yourselves³. On the contrary, you will find in practice⁴, that

it is only the meanest hearts, the shallowest and the basest (S. 128, N. 11) who feel no admiration, but (S. 6, N. 10) only envy for those who are better than themselves; who delight in⁵ finding fault with them, blackening (S. 1, N. 3) their character, and showing that they are not after all so much superior to other⁶ people; while⁷ *it* is the noblest-hearted, the very men who are most worthy to be admired themselves, who feel⁸ most the pleasure, the joy, and the strength of reverence (S. 3, N. 2); of⁹ having some one whom they can look up to and admire; some one in whose company they can forget¹⁰ themselves, their own interest, their own pleasure, their own honour and¹¹ glory, and cry: "Him I must hear; him I must follow; to him I must cling, whatever¹² may betide!"

1, *Heldenverehrung*, f. 2, Do—thing, *Halte es nicht für zu gering*. 3, Use the second person plural; to be superior to a person, *einem weit überlegen sein*. 4, in practice = always. 5, in—them = to discover weaknesses in (an, with dat.) them. 6, to other people = to others. 7, while—men, während die hochherzigsten Menschen, gerade diejenigen. 8, 'to feel', here empfinden; 'most' here = deepest, am tiefsten; pleasure, Genuß, m. 9, In order to connect this sentence more closely with the preceding, I propose to say: 'the pleasure (Genuß, m.) of having (S. 34, N. 10) some one to (zu) whom they can look up, and whom they can admire'. The auxiliary 'can' must be omitted in the first instance. 10, Where must you place the two verbs, and in what order? 11, It is a matter of course that the words 'their own' must be repeated here in German. Why? 12, Whatever (Was auch) may happen.

Section 141.

HERO WORSHIP.

II.

Blessed¹ and ennobling is the feeling which gathers round a wise teacher or² a great statesman all the more earnest, high-minded, pious youths of his generation³; the⁴ feeling which makes⁵ soldiers follow the general whom they trust, they know not why or whither, through danger⁶, hunger, fatigue, and⁷ death itself; the⁴ feeling which, in its highest perfection, made⁸ the Apostles forsake all and follow Christ⁹, saying (S. 111, N. 6): "Lord, to¹⁰ whom shall we go? Thou hast the words of eternal life," and which made them¹¹ ready to work¹² and to die for Him whom the world called the Son of the carpenter, but whom they, through¹³ the Spirit of God bearing witness with their own pure and noble spirits, knew¹⁴ to be the Son of the Living God.—CHARLES KINGSLEY, "THE WATER OF LIFE."

1, Beglückend. 2, Repeat here the prep. 'round', um. 3, generation = time. 4, jenes. 5, to make follow, folgen heißen, which verbs must be placed after the rel. clause; folgen requires the dat.; to trust a person, einem vertrauen. 6, Use the pl. with this noun. 7, yea, even unto death. 8, 'to make', here again heißen (to bid), str. v. tr.; which place after 'follow' according to App. § 19. 9, *Jesus Christ* has retained its Latin declension, thus: N. *Jesús Christus*; G. *Jesu Christi*; D. *Jesu Christo*; Acc. *Jesum Christum*. Use the dat. *Christo*, since folgen governs the dat. 10, 'to whom', here

wohin (whither), which appears in the German text of the Bible. 11, 'to make ready', here = to enable, befähigen. 12, wirken is more appropriate here than arbeiten, considering the elevated style of the whole speech. 13, through — spirits, Kraft des göttlichen Geistes, der in ihren reinen, edlen Herzen Zeugnis ablegte. 14, knew to be, als (followed by the Acc.) . . . erkannten.

Section 142.

JAMES WATT AND THE STEAM-ENGINE.

I.

James Watt was the great Improver of the steam-engine; but, in truth¹, as to all that is admirable in its structure, or vast in its utility, he should rather be described as its Inventor. *It was* by his inventions *that* its action² was so regulated as³ to make it capable of being applied to the finest and most delicate manufactures, and its power so increased as to set weight and solidity at defiance. By his admirable contrivances⁴ it has become a thing stupendous alike for its force and flexibility, for the prodigious power which it can exert, and the ease, precision, and ductility with which this power can be varied, distributed, and applied. The trunk of an elephant, that can pick up a pin or rend⁵ an oak, is as nothing to it. It can engrave a seal, and crush masses of obdurate metal *before it*, draw out without⁶ breaking a thread as fine as gossamer, and lift a ship of war like a bubble in the air. It can embroider⁷ muslin and forge anchors, cut steel into ribbons⁸, and impel⁹ loaded vessels against the fury of the winds and waves.

1, 'in truth' is better not translated here. Say 'but in regard to (in Rücksicht auf) all that (S. 3, N. 7) refers (sich beziehen) to (auf) the excellence of its construction and (wie) to (auf) the variety (Mannigfaltigkeit, f.) of its application (Anwendung, f.), should he rather (eigentlich) be called the Inventor of the same'. 2, Wirkung, f.; in what voice is the verb? Insert the adv. erst after the auxiliary. 3, as — defiance = as (um) to be able to employ it in (bei) the making (Anfertigung, f.) of the finest and most delicate (zart) manufactures (Fabrikate), and its power so increased as (um) to be able to render resistance (Widerstand leisten) to every weight (Last, f.) and every solidity (Festigkeit, f.). Translate 'to be able' by können, which need be expressed but once, and must be placed at the very end of the whole period, which, along with the following, is perhaps the most difficult to translate that has yet been given.

4, Einrichtungen; it = the machine; thing, Werkzeug, n., after which place the verb 'become'; alike for, und zwar dies sowohl wegen . . . wie auch. 5, rend = tear down. 6, Say 'without tearing it', which place after 'gossamer' (Sommerfäden). 7, Insert the prep. auf here. 8, Streifen. 9, to impel against, entgegentreißen, governing the dat.

Section 143.

JAMES WATT AND THE STEAM-ENGINE.

II.

It would be difficult to estimate the value of the benefits which these inventions have conferred upon this country. There is no branch of industry that has not been indebted¹ to them; and², in all the most

material, they have not only widened most magnificently the field of its exertions, but³ multiplied a thousand-fold the amount of its productions. It was our improved steam-engine, in short⁴, that fought the battles of Europe and sustained and exalted, through⁵ the late tremendous contest, the political greatness of our land. *It is* the same great power *which* now enables us to pay the interest of our debt, and to maintain⁶ the arduous struggle *in which we are still engaged* (1819) with the skill⁷ and capital of countries (S. 16, N. 10) less oppressed with (von) taxation.

But these are poor⁸ and narrow views of its importance. It has increased indefinitely the mass of⁹ human comforts and enjoyments, and¹⁰ rendered cheap and accessible, all over the world, the materials of wealth and prosperity.

1, I am greatly indebted to you, ich habe Ihnen vieles zu danken. 2, Say 'and in the principal branches'; most magnificently, auf das großartigste. 3, Insert 'also' here. 4, Kurz, which place at the head of the period. 5, through = in. 6, fortsetzen, which rendering will make the relative clause 'in — engaged' superfluous. 7, 'skill', here = industry. 8, poor = superficial; narrow, beschränkt; of = about. 9, of human = of our. 10, und die Stoffe, welche sonst nur dem Reichthum und dem Wohlstand zugänglich waren, für die ganze Welt billig und erreichbar gemacht.

Section 144.

JAMES WATT AND THE STEAM-ENGINE.

III.

It has armed the feeble hand of (S. 3, N. 2) man, *in* short¹, with a power to which no limits can be assigned²; completed³ the dominion of mind over the most refractory qualities of matter⁴, and laid a sure foundation for⁵ all those future miracles of mechanic power which⁶ are to aid and reward the labours of after generations. It⁷ is to the genius of one man, too, that all this is mainly owing! And certainly no man ever bestowed such a gift on his kind⁸. The blessing is not only universal, but⁹ unbounded; and the fabled¹⁰ inventors of the plough and the loom, who were deified by their rude¹¹ contemporaries, conferred less important benefits (App. § 5) on mankind than the inventor of our present steam-engine.

This will be the fame of Watt with¹² future generations, and it¹³ is sufficient for his race and his country.—LORD JEFFREY.

1, Commence the period with 'In short'. 2, to assign limits to a thing, einer Sache Grenzen setzen. 3, Say 'it has completed', etc. 4, Materie, f. 5, zu. 6, Say 'which are destined (zu etwas bestimmt sein, Comp. S. 87, N. 6) to assist and to reward the labours of (= of the) future generations. 7, It — owing = All this we owe mainly to the genius of a single man. 8, Geschlecht, n.; use the verb in the Perfect; ever, je vorher. 9, sondern auch. 10, sagenhaft. 11, rude = inexperienced. 12, bei, with the def. art. 13, dieser.

Section 145.

MANUFACTURES OF ENGLAND¹.

The principal branches of² the industrial pursuits are the manufactures³ of cotton, woollen⁴, and worsted goods, iron and hardware,

earthenware⁵, hosiery, mining⁶, and shipbuilding. The geographical distribution of the manufacturing⁷ population is dependent partly on natural, partly on accidental circumstances. The proximity of a coal-field⁸ decides the point⁹ in many instances¹⁰; for, even where the raw material is bulky¹¹, it is generally more practicable to bring¹² it to the coal (*Koßlen*), than the coal to it, an¹³ instance of which is furnished by the copper-ore of Cornwall being taken to Swansea to be smelted. The iron manufacture is carried on¹⁴ generally at¹⁵ the coal-fields, the¹⁶ chief seats being South Wales, Staffordshire, and Derbyshire. The cotton manufacture has¹⁷ been located in Lancashire and Cheshire for *the last* three centuries; but¹⁸ it has attained its present dimensions very much through those counties being readily furnished with the raw material from America, as¹⁹ well as from the abundance of coal outside those counties; Manchester, Bolton, Oldham, Stockport, and Macclesfield are the chief seats of the manufacture.—BEVAN, "THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY."

1, Die englische Industrie. 2, of — pursuits, der Industrie. 3, Fabrication, f. 4, The preposition 'of' is best repeated in this enumeration; worsted, aus Kammwolle gefertigt; 'goods', here Stoffe. 5, irdenes Geschirr or Töpferwaren. 6, Berg- und Schiffbau. 7, manufacturing = industrial. 8, Kohlenlager, n. 9, the point, darüber, which place last. 10, instances = cases. 11, schwer und umfangreich. 12, hin'schaffen; than — it = than the reverse, als umgekehrt. 13, It is well to begin a new period here, thus: 'An example of this (*das*) furnishes the copper-ore of Cornwall, which is taken (*besördern*) to (S. 72, N. 4), S.', etc. 14, betreiben, insep. c. str. v. 15, at the = in the neighbourhood of the. 16, the — being = which are mainly situated (*belegen*) in. 17, has been located, ist ansässig. The Present is often used in German where the English use the Perfect to express the duration of an action up to the time of speaking; as: Unsere Familie wohnt seit zwanzig Jahren (or schon zwanzig Jahre) in Manchester, our family *has been living* in Manchester *for* these last twenty years. 18, but — America. This clause containing a Gerund (being) preceded by the preposition 'through', must be construed according to S. 1, N. 3, and S. 87, N. 6 in the following way: 'but it (*es*) has received its present dimension especially thereby (*dadurch*, read S. 87, N. 6), that these counties can easily be (S. 2, N. 1) supplied with the raw material from America'. The three verbs must, of course, be placed at the end, and in such a way that the governing verb (can) stands last, and the auxiliary of tense in the middle. 19, as — counties = as also (*wie auch* *nech*) thereby, that the coal is [use the pl. in German] to be got (*zu haben sein*) in abundance in the neighbouring counties.

Section 146.

MR. H. M. STANLEY'S APPEAL¹ FOR SUPPLIES.

I.

Village of N'sanda², August 4, 1877.

To³ any Gentleman who speaks English at Embomma.

Dear⁴ Sir,

I have arrived at⁵ this place from Zanzibar with 115 souls, (S. 53, N. 9) men, women, and children. We are now in⁶ a state of imminent

starvation. We can buy⁷ nothing from the natives, for they laugh at⁸ our *kinds of* cloth⁹, beads, and wire. There¹⁰ are no provisions in the country that may be purchased, except on market days, and starving people cannot afford to wait for these markets. I¹¹, therefore, have made bold to despatch three of my young men¹², natives¹³ of Zanzibar, with (nebst) a boy named Feruzi, of the English mission at Zanzibar, with this letter.

I do not know you, but¹⁴ I am told there (S. 104, N. 19) is an Englishman at (in) Embomma, and as you are a Christian and a gentleman, I beg you not to disregard my request. The boy Robert will be better able to describe our lone condition than I¹⁵ can tell you in this letter. We are in *a state of* the greatest distress; but if your supplies¹⁶ arrive in time, I¹⁷ may be able to reach Embomma within four days.

1, Anruf um Zufendung von Waren. 2, The village of N'sanda is three days' journey from Embomma, or Boma, which is a small town on the Congo or Livingstone River at a distance of sixty-five English miles from the Atlantic, and, with regard to Stanley's position, may be considered the van of civilisation in Africa, being the first place inhabited by Europeans.—For the full understanding of this letter, it may be useful to observe that it was written at the critical period when, at their journey home from the sources of the Nile, and almost at the end of all their troubles, the heroic travellers of more than 7000 miles through Equatorial Africa found themselves face to face with the grimest of all enemies—starvation. Nearly forty men filled the sick list with dysentery, ulcers, and scurvy, and the number of victims of the latter disease was steadily increasing. For a considerable time the people had had no other food but a few ground-nuts and bananas, and were scarcely more than skin and bone. In this extremity Mr. Stanley determined to despatch four of his strongest and swiftest men with this letter to Embomma, where he was told there was one Englishman, one Frenchman, and three Portuguese. He then intended to follow these men as quickly as possible with the rest of his people, and to meet them and the expected supplies on the road to Boma, thus gaining at least one or two days, which might turn out to be of the greatest importance to his starving followers.

3, Use the attributive construction, as explained in S. 48, N. 6. 4, Geehrt. 5, at this place = here. 6, dem Verhungern nahe sein. 7, 'buy', here = exchange, ein'tauschen. 8, über, with Acc. 9, Say 'cloths, beads, and wires'. 10, Say 'Except on (Außer an) market days there are (find) in the (auf dem) country no provisions to be got (zu haben) that we can buy, and if one hungers, one cannot possibly wait for (auf, with Acc.) these markets. 11, Say 'I venture (after which use the grammatical object, as explained in S. 51, N. 13) therefore to send (ab'senden)', etc. 12, Leute. 13, welche aus Zanzibar gebürtig sind. 14, man sagt mir jedoch. 15, I can tell you = I can do. 16, 'supplies', here = goods. 17, I may be able = I can perhaps (See App. § 15).

Section 147.

MR. H. M. STANLEY'S APPEAL FOR SUPPLIES,

II.

I want 300 cloths¹, each four yards long, of² such quality as you trade with, which is very different from that we have; but³ better than all would

be ten or fifteen man-loads of rice or grain to fill the pinched⁴ bellies immediately, as⁵ even with the cloths it would require time to purchase food, and starving people⁶ cannot wait. The supplies must arrive within two days, or⁷ I may have a fearful time of it among the dying. Of course I hold myself responsible for any⁸ expense (S. 16, N. 10) you⁹ may incur in the business. What is wanted is immediate relief, and I pray you to¹⁰ use your utmost energies to forward it at once. If (App. § 21) you have such little luxuries¹¹ as tea, coffee, sugar, and biscuits by you, such¹² as one man can easily carry, I beg you on¹³ my own behalf that you will send a small supply¹⁴ and¹⁵ add to the great debt of gratitude due to you upon the timely arrival of the supplies for my people. Until¹⁶ that time I beg you to believe me,

Yours sincerely,

H. M. STANLEY,

Commanding¹⁷ the Anglo-American Expedition for¹⁸ the
Exploration of Africa.

P.S. You¹⁹ may not know me by name, I therefore add, I²⁰ am the person that discovered²¹ Livingstone in 1871. H. M. S.—H. M. STANLEY, "THROUGH THE DARK CONTINENT."

1, cloths=pieces of cloth. 2, of—have=and of that quality with which you trade, which is quite different from ours. 3, but—grain=but still better would be (Pluperf. Subj.) as much rice or grain as ten or fifteen men (Leute) can carry. 4,=hungry stomachs. 5, as—food=as (after which place the subject 'ave'), even in the possession of the cloths, we should yet want time to exchange provisions for them (S. 4, N. 5, B). 6, die Hungerleidenden. 7, or—dying, Liter.=if (after which place the subject 'I') among the dying I shall (soll) not experience (durchleiden) a dreadful time (App. § 18). 8, any=all. 9, die Ihnen aus dieser Angelegenheit erwachsen mögen. 10, to—once=to do the (=your) utmost in your power (sein Äußerstes thun) and to send us the same (to agree with relief) at once. 11, Eursartifel; to have by oneself=to possess. 12, such=about as much. 13, on—behalf=for my own person. 14, supply=quantity. 15, and—people=and thereby still to increase (vergrößern) the great debt of (S. 3, N. 2) gratitude, to which I shall be in duty bound to you (einem verpflichtet sein) after the timely (rechtzeitig) arrival of the supplies (Warensendung). 16, Bis dahin empfehle ich mich Ihnen hochachtend und ergebend. 17, Kommandierender der. 18, zur. 19,=Perhaps is my name unknown to you. 20, I—that=that it is I, who. 21, auf finden, of which use the Perfect.

Section 148.

ANSWER TO¹ THE PRECEDING LETTER.

English Factory, Boma, 6th August 1877, 6.30 A.M.

H. M. Stanley, Esq.

Dear Sir,

Your welcome letter came² to hand yesterday, at 7 P.M. As³ soon as its contents were understood, we arranged to despatch to you such articles as you requested, as much as our stock on hand would permit, and other things that we deemed would be suitable in that locality. You will see

that we send fifty pieces *of* cloth, each twenty-four yards long, and some sacks containing sundries for yourself; several⁴ sacks *of* rice, potatoes, a few bundles *of* fish, a bundle *of* tobacco, and one demijohn⁵ *of* rum. The carriers are all paid, so that you need not trouble yourself about them. That⁶ is all we need say about business. We are exceedingly sorry to hear that you have arrived there in such (so) piteous⁷ condition, but we send our warmest congratulations to you, and hope that you will soon arrive in Boma. (This⁸ place is called Boma by us, though on the map it⁹ is Embomma.) Again¹⁰ hoping that you will soon arrive, and that you are not suffering in health,

Believe¹¹ us to remain,

Your sincere friends,

HATTON & COOKSON.

(Signed) A. DA MOTTA VEIGA.

J. W. HARRISON.

1, auf, with Acc.; A.M. morgens; P.M. abends.—This letter and the accompanying supplies were received by Mr. Stanley in the morning of the 6th of August, two days after he despatched his letter to Boma. Messrs. A. Da Motta Veiga and J. W. Harrison were the managers of a factory belonging to Messrs. Hatton & Cookson of Liverpool. 2, came to hand = we have . . . received.

3, As — locality = As soon as we had understood the contents of the same (to agree with letter), we (App. § 14) made arrangements (Anstalten treffen) to send you the asked for (erbeten) articles, as far as (so weit) our stock (Warenlager, n., or Warenvorrat, m.) would permit us (S. 51, N. 13), and add (supply noch) some other things of which we thought they might (= could) be useful to you there.

4, several, a few = some. 5, eine große Korbflasche. 6, Weiter haben wir nichts Geschäftliches zu sagen. 7, traurig.

8, Say 'We call this place (Ort, m.) B'. 9, Say 'it is called'.

10, Say 'Again (noch einmal) expressing (S. 111, N. 6), the hope'. 11, zeichnen wir in aufrichtiger Freundschaft ergehen.

Section 149.

MR. STANLEY'S ACKNOWLEDGMENT¹ OF THE PRECEDING LETTER AND THE SUPPLIES¹⁷.

I.

Banza M'Buko, August 6, 1877.

Messrs. A. Da Motta Veiga and J. W. Harrison,
Embomma, Congo River.

Gentlemen,

I (S. 115, N. 1) have received your welcome letter, but better *than all*, and² more welcome, are your supplies. I am unable to express *just* at present how grateful I feel. At the sight of (von) the stores exposed³ to our hungry eyes—at the sight of (von) the rice, the fish, *and* the rum, and⁴ for me—wheaten bread, butter, sardines, jam, peaches, grapes, beer (ye⁵ gods! just think of it—three bottles pale ale⁶!), besides tea and sugar, we (App. § 14) are all so over-joyed and confused that we cannot restrain⁷ ourselves from falling to and⁸ enjoying this sudden

bounteous store. I beg you will charge⁹ our apparent want of (an) thankfulness to our greediness. If we do not thank you sufficiently in words, rest assured we¹⁰ feel what volumes could not describe.

For the next twenty-four hours we shall be too busy eating and drinking to think of anything else much; but I may say that the people¹¹ will cry out joyfully, while¹² their mouths are full of rice and fish: "Verily, our master has found the sea and his brothers, but we did not believe him until¹³ he showed us the rice and the pambe (rum). We did not believe there¹⁴ was any end to the great river; but God be praised for ever, for we shall see white people¹⁵ to-morrow, and our wars¹⁶ and troubles will be over!"

1, Anzeige von dem Empfange; 'supplies', here Warensendung, f. 2, Insert the adverb noch here. 3, It was exposed to my eyes, es war vor meinen Augen ausgebreitet; 'hungry', here gierig. 4, und — des für mich bestimmten Weißbrots; the article, in the Gen. case, must be repeated before each of the following nouns. 5, ye — it = o sehet, Ihr Götter. 6, Weißbier. 7, bezwingen; from falling to, zugreifen. 8, und diese uns so schnell und großmütig zugesandten Vorräte zu verzehren. 9, I beg you will charge this to his greediness, ich bitte Sie, dies seiner Gßbegierde zur Last legen zu wollen. 10, we — describe = we feel more than could (App. § 33, and S. 2, N. 1) be described to you through (durch) volumes. 11, Leute. 12, Say 'while their mouth is still filled with rice and fish'. 13, ehe. 14, Say 'the great river had (See App. § 29) ever (je) an end. 15, Menschen. 16, Kämpfe und Beschwerden. 17, This letter, on the morning of the 7th of August, was despatched to Boma, the caravan following slowly, and reaching Boma on the 9th of August 1877, the 999th day from the date of their departure from Zanzibar. The expedition then embarked on board a steamer at Boma, and, on the 11th, descended the river Congo. After steaming northward from the mouth of the Congo for a few hours, the vessel entered the fine bay of Kabinda, on the southern shores of which the native town of that name in the county of Nyoyo is situate. The Expedition, after a stay of eight days at Kabinda, was kindly taken on board the Portuguese gunboat 'Tamega' to San Paulo de Loanda. Here they were treated with the utmost hospitality by the Portuguese and the officers of the English navy, who offered the Expedition a passage to Cape Town in H.M.S. 'Industry', Commander R. C. Dyer. The Cape of Good Hope was reached on the 21st of October. Here a telegram from the Lords of the British Admiralty was received, authorising the Commodore Francis William Sullivan to prepare H.M.S. 'Industry' for the reception of the Expedition and to convey them to Zanzibar, the end of their journey. On the 6th of November H.M.S. 'Industry' was equipped and ready for her voyage to Zanzibar, which was reached on the 20th of the same month. By this time the sick had, all but one, recovered, and had improved so much in appearance that few persons ignorant of what they had been, could have supposed that these were the living skeletons that had reeled from sheer weakness through Boma.

Section 150.

MR. STANLEY'S LETTER (continued).

II.

Dear Sirs,

Though¹ strangers, I feel we shall be great friends, and² I shall always remember my feelings of gratefulness, when I first caught sight

of your supplies, and my poor, faithful, and brave people cried out: "Master, we are saved!—food³ is coming!" *The* old and *the* young—the men, *the* women, and *the* children—lifted their wearied and worn-out⁴ frames⁵, and began to chant *lustily* an⁶ extemporaneous song, in⁷ honour of the white people by (an) the great salt sea (the (S. 53, N. 9) Atlantic) who had listened to their prayers. I had⁸ to rush to my tent to hide the tears that would issue⁹, despite all my attempts to compose¹⁰.

Gentlemen, that the blessing of God may attend your footsteps whithersoever¹¹ you go, is the very earnest¹² prayer of

Yours faithfully,

H. M. STANLEY,

Commanding the Anglo-American Expedition.—

H. M. STANLEY, "THROUGH THE DARK CONTINENT."

- 1, *obgleich* wir uns noch fremd sind. 2, Say 'and I shall never forget the feelings of gratefulness which I experienced (*empfinden*, insep. comp. str. v.), when', etc. 3, Say 'there come provisions'! 4, *abgemagert*. 5, *Körper*, m., which use in the Sing. 6, *ein aus dem Stegreife entworfenes Lied*; to chant = to sing. 7, in — people, *den Weißen . . . zu Ehren*; the words *zu Ehren* must be placed at the end of the clause. 8, Use the Imperfect of *müssen*. 9, to issue = to break forth, *hervorbrechen*. 10, to compose = to compose myself. 11, The adverbial clause 'whithersoever you go' may be briefly rendered by the adverb '*stets*'. 12, earnest = sincere; faithfully, *ergeben* (adject.).

Section 151.

RETURNED¹ KINDNESS.

When (S. 4, N. 2) the country near² Albany was newly settled, a starving Indian came to the inn at Lichfield and asked for a night's shelter and some supper, at³ the same time confessing that, from⁴ failure in hunting, he had nothing⁵ to pay. The hostess drove him away with reproachful⁶ epithets, and as the Indian was about (S. 6, N. 4) scornfully to retire,—there being (S. 30, N. 4) no other inn for⁷ many a weary mile,—a⁸ man, who was sitting by, directed the hostess to supply⁹ his wants, and promised to pay her. As¹⁰ soon as the Indian's supper was ended, he thanked his benefactor, and said he would some day return his kindness. Several years thereafter¹¹ the settler was taken a prisoner by a hostile tribe, and carried off to (S. 72, N. 4) Canada. His life was spared¹², but he was detained in¹³ slavery. One¹⁴ day, however, an Indian came to him, and bade the captive follow him. The Indian never told where they were going, nor¹⁵ what was his object; *but* day after¹⁶ day the captive followed his mysterious guide, till one afternoon they came suddenly on¹⁷ a beautiful expanse of cultivated fields, with many houses *rising amongst them*. "Do you know that place?" asked the Indian. "Ah, yes—it is Lichfield!" and whilst the astonished exile¹⁸ had not yet recovered from his surprise and (S. 10, N. 9) amazement, the Indian exclaimed: "And I am the starving Indian, on whom, at

this *very* place, you took ¹⁹ pity. And now that ²⁰ I have repaid you, I pray you go home!"—DR. DWIGHT.

1, vergelten, insep. comp. str. v. 2, unweit; newly, eben; 'to settle', here kolonisieren. 3, at—confessing=on which occasion (wobei) he confessed. 4, wegen erfolgloser Jagd. 5, nothing to pay=no money for (zu, contracted with the dat. of the def. art.) paying. 6, reproachful epithets, Scheltworte. 7, for—mile, meilenweit in der Stunde. 8, 'a man', here=a guest. The verb 'directed' (heißen, str. v.) must be placed before the subject, since the subordinate clause precedes the principal one. 9, to supply a person's wants, für die Bedürfnisse eines Menschen sorgen. 10, Say 'As soon as the Indian had eaten (verzehren) his supper'. 11, später. 12, verschonen. 13, in slavery—as a slave; 'to detain', here gefangen halten. 14, Say 'One day, however, came an Indian to the prisoner with the intimation (Weisung, f.) to follow him'. This construction is necessary to avoid the repetition of the pronoun 'ihm'. 15, nor—object = or else his intention. 16, für. 17, zu einer schönen Fläche urbar gemachter Felder. 18, exile = settler. 19, to take pity on a person, sich eines Menschen erbarmen; supply the adverb einmal (one day) before the verb. 20, that = since, da; to repay a person, einem seine Schuld abtragen.

Section 152.

NEW-YEAR'S EVE¹.

I.

It was dreadfully cold; it snowed, and was beginning to grow dark; it was the last evening of the year,—New-year's Eve. In this cold, a poor little girl was wandering about the streets with ² bare head and bare feet. She had slippers on when she left home (Haus, with the def. art.), but what was the good of them? They (ſie) were the large, old slippers of her mother's—so large that they fell off the little girl's feet as she hurried across the street to ³ escape a carriage, which came ⁴ galloping along at a great rate. The one slipper was not to be found, and a boy ran off with the other.

So the little girl wandered about barefooted, with a quantity ⁵ of matches in an old apron, whilst she held a box ⁶ of them in her (S. 43, N. 9, 4) hand. No one had bought *any* matches of her through ⁷ the whole livelong day—no one had given her a single farthing ⁸. Hungry, and pinched ⁹ with cold, the poor little girl crept ¹⁰ along, the large flakes of snow covering (S. 55, N. 1; use während) her yellow hair, which ¹¹ curled round her face.

In ¹² a corner between two houses, one projecting beyond the other, she sought shelter. Huddling ¹³ herself up, she drew her poor little feet, which were red and blue with cold, under her (sich) as well as she could, but she ¹⁴ was colder than ever, and ¹⁵ dared not go home (S. 63, N. 8), for, as she had sold no matches, her cruel ¹⁶ father would beat her. Besides ¹⁷, it was cold at home (S. 63, N. 8), for they lived just ¹⁸ under the roof, and ¹⁹ the wind blew in, though straw and rags had been stuffed in the large cracks. Her little hands were quite benumbed with cold. Oh ²⁰, how much good one match would do,

if she dared but (nur) take it out of the box and draw²¹ it across the wall to warm her fingers in the flames!

- 1, Der Sylvesterabend. 2, with — feet, barfuß und unbedeckten Hauptes, which place before 'about (durch) the streets'. 3, to escape a carriage, einem Wagen aus dem Weg laufen. For the translation of the conjunction 'to' in this clause compare S. 19, N. 7. 4, to come galloping along at a great rate, in vollem Galopp die Straße entlang kommen. 5, a quantity = some. 6, Schachtel, f.; of them = of the same. 7, through — day, den ganzen Tag lang, which is best placed at the commencement of the period. 8, Heller, m. 9, to be pinched with cold, vor Kälte erstarren sein. 10, to creep along, sich weiter schleppen. 11, Say 'which in curls surrounded (umwallen, insep. comp. w. v.) her face. 12, In — other, In einem durch ein hervorspringendes Haus gebildeten Winkel. 13, Say 'She huddled herself up (nie'rfauern, sep. comp. w. v.) and drew her', etc. 14, I am cold, es friert mich. 15, Say 'and yet she (App. § 24, B) dared (wagen, w. v.) not to go home'. 16, 'cruel', here = severe. 17, Say 'And also (App. § 14) at home it was cold'. 18, 'just', here = immediately. 19, Say 'through which the wind blew, although the large cracks (Spalte, f.) were stuffed (verstopfen, insep. comp. w. v.) with straw and rags'. 20, Say, 'Oh (Ach), how nice (schön) must (Imperf. Subj.) a match be'. 21, Ein Zündhölzchen an der Mauer anreiben, to draw a match across the wall.

Section 153.

NEW-YEAR'S EVE.

II.

She drew one out—"Ritsh!" how it sputtered¹ and burned! It burned with a warm, bright flame, like a candle, and she bent her hand round it (S. 4, N. 5, B), it was a wonderful light! It appeared to the little girl as if she were sitting² before a large iron stove, in which the fire burned brightly, and³ gave out such comfort and such warmth. She stretched out her feet to warm them, too—but the flame went⁴ out, the stove disappeared, and there she sat, still holding⁵ a little bit of the burnt-out⁴ match in her (S. 43, N. 9, A) hand.

Another was⁶ lighted; it burned, and, where⁷ the light fell upon the wall, that⁸ became transparent, so that she could see into the room. There the table was covered with a cloth of dazzling white, and with fine china; and a roast goose was smoking most⁹ temptingly upon it. But what was still more delightful, the goose sprang down from the table, and¹⁰, with a knife and (S. 10, N. 9) fork *sticking* in its¹¹ back, waddled towards the little girl. Then¹² the match went out⁴, and she saw nothing but the thick, cold wall.

She lighted a third one (S. 67, N. 3); and now she was sitting under the most splendid Christmas-tree. It was larger and more beautifully decorated¹³ than the one (S. 16, N. 10) she had seen at Christmas¹⁴ through the window at¹⁵ the rich merchant's. Hundreds of¹⁶ tapers were burning amongst the green branches, and painted¹⁷ pictures, such¹⁸ as she had seen in the shop-windows, looked down upon her. She stretched out¹⁹ both *her* hands, when the match was burnt⁴ out,—

- 1, sprühen, w. v. 2, Use the Impf. Subj. according to App. § 33; as if, als. 3, und ich weiß nicht wie viel Behaglichkeit und Wärme ausstrahlte. 4, 'to go out', and 'to burn out', here erlöschen, insep. comp. str. v. 5, The Present Participle may be used here in German, but where must it be placed? 6, In which Voice is the verb here? Introduce the clause by the grammatical subject 'es', as explained in S. 104, N. 19. 7, where = at (an) the place (Stelle, f.) where. 8, diese. 9, Use the superlative of hoch. 10, Here follows the verb 'waddled'. 11, in its = in the, contracted; towards, auf ... zu, which latter preposition place at the end of the whole period. 12, Then = Thereupon. 13, anfügen, sep. comp. w. v. 14, at (an, contracted with the dat. of the def. art.) Christmas-day. 15, The preposition 'at', in the signification of 'at the house of' is generally rendered by the preposition 'bei', which governs the dative; as—
At Easter we shall all dine at my mother's. Am Oftertage werden wir alle bei meiner Mutter zu Mittag essen.
16, von. 17, painted = coloured, bunt. 18, such as, wie. 19, Supply the pronominal adverb 'daneben' before the particle aus, which stands at the end.

Section 154.

NEW-YEAR'S EVE.

III.

The countless lights rose higher and higher, and she now saw that they (es) were the stars, one of which fell¹, leaving a long line of light in the sky.

Some² one has (S. 29, N. 3) died just now, the girl said; for her old grandmother, who alone³ had loved her, but who was now dead, had told her that⁴ when a star fell, a soul took (App. §§ 28 and 30) its flight up to heaven.

She drew another match across the wall, and in the light it threw⁵ around stood her old grandmother, so bright⁶, so mild, and so loving.

"Grandmother," the little girl cried, "oh, take me with you! I know that you will disappear as soon as the match is burnt out, just like the warm stove, the delicious roast goose, and the Christmas-tree!" And hastily she lighted the⁷ rest of the matches that remained in the box, for she wished to keep⁸ her grandmother with her as long as possible; and the matches burnt so brightly, that it was lighter than day. Never before⁹ had she seen her grandmother so beautiful and so tall, and behold, she¹⁰ now took the little girl in her arms, and¹¹, in radiance and joy, flew high, high up with her into the heaven, where she felt neither (fein) cold, nor (fein) hunger, nor (und fein) fear any more¹²,—for she was with God.

But, in the corner between the two houses, in the cold morning air, lay the little girl with pale cheeks and smiling lips. She was frozen¹³ to death during the last night of the Old Year. The first light of the New Year shone upon the dead body of the little girl with the matches, one¹⁴ box of which was nearly consumed. "She must have tried to warm herself," the people said; but no one knew of (von) the visions¹⁵ she had had, or of the splendour that (S. 48, N. 6) surrounded her when

she entered with her grandmother into the joys of a New Year.—After HANS ANDERSEN, "FAIRY TALES."

- 1, Say 'fell down and left (zurück lassen) a long line of light (Lichtstreifen, m.) in (an) the sky'. 2, This sentence is best introduced by the grammatical subject 'es', see S. 104, N. 19. 3, Say 'alone of all'. 4, that — fell; daß beim Herunterfallen eines Sternes; flight, Flug, m.; up to, zu, contracted with the dat. of the def. art. 5, to throw around, um sich her verbreiten. 6, bright = friendly; mild, sanft; loving, liebevoll. 7, the — box, die in der Schachtel sich noch befindlichen Zündhölzer (Comp. S. 48, N. 6). 8, to keep with oneself, bei sich behalten, insep. comp. str. v. tr. 9, zuvor. 10, It will be best to begin this clause with the adv. 'now', and to turn the personal pronoun 'she' into the demonstrative pronoun 'the same', to agree with 'grandmother'. This will commend itself in order to avoid ambiguity. 11, Here follows the verb 'flew'; in radiance and joy, freudestrahlend, adv.; high—heavens, mit ihr zum Himmel empor. 12, any more, mehr, before the verb; 'with', here bei. 13, erfrieren, insep. comp. str. v., to freeze to death. 14, Liter. 'of which nearly a whole box was burnt up'. 15, Traumbild, n.

Section 155.

PROVIDENCE¹ VINDICATING THE INNOCENT.

It is (S. 2, N. 1) recorded in history that a beautiful maiden named Blanche, the serf of² an ancient nobleman, was wooed³ by her master's son. Not⁴ admiring his character, she scorned⁵ his suit. Upon this his *course* of love turned⁶ to bitter hatred. Just⁷ then a precious string of pearls confided (S. 7, N. 3, B) to the maiden's care was⁸ lost. Her pseudo-lover⁹ charged her with the theft, and, in¹⁰ accordance with the customs of that rude age, she was doomed to die. On the day of the execution, as the innocent girl knelt to offer¹¹ her dying prayer, a¹² flash of lightning struck a statue of Justice, which adorned the market-place, to the dust. From¹³ a destroyed bird's nest, built (S. 7, N. 3, A, and S. 48, N. 6) in a crevice of the image¹⁴, dropped the lost¹⁵ pearls, thus¹⁶ declaring the maiden's innocence. In a moment the exultant crowd rushed to the scaffold, demanding her release. There she knelt beside the block, pale and beautiful, and with a smile of peace upon her lips. They (S. 134, N. 4) spoke¹⁷—she answered not. They touched her—she was dead! To preserve her memory they raised a statue there¹⁸; and to¹⁹ this day, when²⁰ men gaze upon her image, they condemn her oppressor; they praise her for the purity of her character; they recognise the justice of Him whose²¹ lightning testified her innocence.—W. SMITH.

- 1, Say, 'Providence (S. 3, N. 2) protects innocence.' 2, of — nobleman = of a nobleman of an old family (Geschlecht, n.). 3, umwerben, insep. comp. str. v. 4, = As his character displeased (mißfallen, insep. comp. str. v., governing the dat.) her. 5, verachten, insep. comp. w. v. tr. 6, sich verwan'deln in. 7, Just then = Just at this time. 8, was lost = one missed; care, Obhut, f. 9, = false lover. 10, in — customs = according to the law. 11, = to speak. 12, a — Justice . . . to the dust = fuhr ein

Blitzstrahl in die Statue der Gerechtigkeit . . . und zerschmetterte sie. 13, Aus.
 14, Bildsäule, f. 15, = missed. 16, Say 'and testified (bezeugen, w.
 v. tr.) thus the maiden's innocence'. 17, Supply 'to her'. 18, daselbst.
 19, bis auf den heutigen Tag. 20, Construe thus: 'those who look
 at her image (Bildniß, n.) condemn her oppressor', and consider App.
 § 14. 21, In order to avoid a repetition of the same form of pronoun,
 turn the last clause into: 'who with his lightning testified her innocence'.

Section 156.

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE¹.

I.

Napoleon understood his business². He was a man who in each moment and³ emergency knew what⁴ to do next. This⁵ is an immense comfort and refreshment to the spirits, not only of (S. 3, N. 2) kings, but⁶ of citizens. Few⁷ men have any next; they live from hand to mouth, without plan, are⁸ ever at the end of their line, and, (S. 102, N. 30) after each action, wait for⁹ an impulse from abroad. Napoleon would have been the first man of the world, if¹⁰ his ends had been purely public. As¹¹ he is, he inspires confidence and vigour by the extraordinary unity of his action.

He is firm¹², sure, and self-denying; he sacrifices everything to his aim¹³—money, troops, generals, his own safety even, and is not misled¹⁴, like common adventurers, by¹⁵ the splendour of his own means. "Incidents ought not to govern policy," he said, "but¹⁶ policy incidents." "To¹⁷ be hurried away by every event, is¹⁸ to have no political system at all." His victories were only so many doors¹⁹, and²⁰ he never for a moment lost sight of his way onward in the dazzle and uproar of the present circumstances. He knew what to do, and he flew to his mark.

He²¹ would shorten a straight line to come at his object. Horrible anecdotes may no doubt be collected (S. 4, N. 4) from his history, of²² the price at which he bought his successes; but he must not, therefore, be set²³ down as cruel, but only as one²⁴ who knew no impediment to his will: not²⁵ bloodthirsty, not cruel; but woe to²⁶ what person stood in his way! "Sire, General Clarke cannot combine with General Junot for the dreadful fire of the Austrian battery." "Let²⁷ him carry the battery." "Sire, every regiment that approaches the heavy artillery is sacrificed²⁸. Sire²⁹, what orders?" "Forward! Forward!"

1, **Napoleon I.**, Kaiser der Franzosen, geboren den 15. Aug. 1769 zu Ajaccio auf Korsika war der zweite Sohn des Patriziers Carlo Bonaparte und der Maria Lätitia Ramolini. Nachdem er seit 1779 die Kriegsschulen zu Brienne und Paris besucht hatte, trat er am 1. Sept. 1785 als Lieutenant der Artillerie in die Armee ein. Im Jahre 1793 wurde er als Artilleriehauptmann seitens der Republik gegen die Aufständischen in Korsika verwandt, welche ihn ächteten, da er als Landsmann gegen sie kämpfte. Seit dem 12. Sept. 1793 Oberbefehlshaber des Belagerungsgeschützes von Toulon, welches sich in den Händen der Engländer befand, zwang er den Platz am 19. Dez. zur Kapitulation, worauf er zum Brigadegeneral der Artillerie befördert ward und in der Armee von Italien im Kriege gegen Östreich diente. Nachdem er sich vielfach ausgezeichnet hatte, wurde er im Februar 1796 zum Oberbefehlshaber der Armee von Italien ernannt, reorganisierte dieselbe, eroberte

in kurzem die Lombardei, schlug die Östreicher in mehreren großen Schlachten, zwang Mantua zur Kapitulation, drang in Istrien, Kärnthen und Steiermark ein und schloß am 18. April 1797 zu Campo Formio den für Frankreich höchst günstigen Frieden mit Östreich ab. Seit dem 9. März 1796 mit der verwitweten Generalin Josephine Beauharnais vermählt, ward er am 7. Febr. 1800 neben Cambacérés und Lebrun, welche ihm beratend zur Seite standen, auf zehn Jahre zum ersten Konsul ernannt. Nach mehreren siegreichen Kriegen mit Östreich, Preußen, Rußland, England u. a., ward er im Mai 1802 durch Senatsbeschuß auf weitere zehn Jahre und am 2. Aug. desselben Jahres auf Lebenszeit zum Konsul ernannt. Am 8. Mai 1804 wurde er jedoch schon als Napoleon I. zum erblichen Kaiser der Franzosen erklärt. Nun folgte eine fast ununterbrochene Reihe von Kriegen mit fast allen europäischen Mächten, und als er im Jahre 1809 den Höhepunkt seiner Macht erreicht hatte, ließ er sich, seiner kinderlosen Ehe wegen, von seiner ebenso klugen wie liebenswürdigen Gemahlin scheiden und vermählte sich am 2. April 1810 mit Marie Luise, der Tochter Franz I. von Östreich. Als er jedoch 1812 Rußland den Krieg erklärte, mit der großen Armee in Rußland einzog, alles hinter sich her verbrannte und zerstörte, dann aber durch die weltbekannte, stets denkwürdige Einschüchterung der großen Hauptstadt Moskau seitens der heldenmütigen, verzweifelnden Einwohner gezwungen wurde, den Rückzug anzutreten, auf dem fast die ganze große Armee von der fürchterlichen Kälte und die durch die Verödung des Landes verursachte Hungersnot vernichtet wurde—sahen das Glück ihn verlassen zu haben. Von dieser Zeit an folgte eine Niederlage nach der andern, von denen die große Völkerschlacht bei Leipzig (18. Okt. 1813), in welcher der unglückliche Kaiser den vereinigten Heeren der Preußen, Östreicher und Russen gegenüber stand, die entscheidende war. Napoleon wurde in derselben gänzlich geschlagen und die fliehende Armee von den Verbündeten unter Blüchers Führung verfolgt. Nach der Einnahme von Paris seitens der Allirten am 31. März 1814 erfolgte dann die durch den Senat erzwungene Abdankung des Kaisers und dessen Verbannung nach der Insel Elba, von wo er jedoch schon anfangs März des Jahres 1815 zurückkehrte. Sein bloßes Erscheinen war genügend, das französische Volk aufs neue für ihn zu begeistern. Überall wurde er mit Jubel begrüßt, sein Vordringen war unwiderstehlich, die Armee ging freudig zu ihm über, und schon am 14. März war der König Ludwig XVIII. gezwungen, den jüngst bestiegenen Thron zu verlassen und sich durch die Flucht ins Ausland zu retten.—Napoleons zweite Regierung war indessen nur von kurzer Dauer (100 Tage). Der langersehnte Friede konnte nur durch seinen Untergang herbeigeführt werden, weshalb die Großmächte Östreich, Rußland, Preußen und England am 25. März einen Allianzvertrag abschlossen, durch den sie sich verbanden, Napoleon gemeinschaftlich zu bekämpfen und der Herrschaft desselben auf immer ein Ende zu machen. Dies gelang ihnen auch bald, denn am 18. Juni 1815 wurden die noch übrigen, schnell von Napoleon zusammengekauften Streitkräfte Frankreichs in der großen Schlacht bei Waterloo unter Wellingtons und Blüchers Führung gänzlich vernichtet. Napoleon wollte am 21. Juni zu Blois zu gunsten seines noch unmündigen Sohnes abdanken, seine Abdankung wurde aber nicht angenommen, und als er sich am 3. Juli in Rochefort nach Amerika einschiffen wollte, fand er den dortigen Hafen durch englische Kriegsschiffe gesperrt, worauf er sich unter den Schutz Englands stellte und sich auf das Linienschiff Bellerophon begab. Auf Beschluß der verbündeten Mächte wurde er nun als 'General Bonaparte' nach der entlegenen Insel St. Helena transportiert, wo er am 16. Okt. 1815 anlangte und, in Longwood wohnend, am 5. Mai 1821 in den Armen einiger ihm noch treu verbliebenen Freunde eines natürlichen Todes starb. 2, = task. 3, and emergency, und in jedem Notfalle. 4, what—next = what he must (Impf.) do next (zunächst). 5, This—spirits = This strengthens and refreshes the courage. 6, Read S. 6, N. 10, and insert the adv. 'auch' here. 7, Say 'Only few men know what they must do next'. 8, to be at the end of one's line (or to be at one's wit's end), sich nie zu raten wissen. 9, auf eine göttliche Eingebung. 10, Say 'had his ends (= aims) been solely directed to (auf) the public welfare'. Carefully study App. §§ 36 and 37. 11, This passage requires an altogether different setting; let us say: 'But notwithstanding (Trotzdem aber) he inspires (erfüllen) us through the extraordinary unity (Einheit, f.) of (in) his

actions with confidence in (auf) his strength'. 12, firm = unshakable; sure, unfehlbar = never failing. 13, = purpose. 14, ir'leiten, sep. comp. w. v. 15, by — means, durch die Größe seiner ihm zu Gebote stehenden Hülfsmittel. 16, 'but', here wohl aber. 17, to be hurried away, sich . . . hin und her treiben lassen. 18, is = signifies (heißen); 'to have', here = to follow, befolgen. 19, doors = gates (Pforten), through which he tried (suchen) to attain his aims (App. § 19). This addition seems to be necessary to complete the underlying idea. 20, and — circumstances = and in (bei) the dazzle (Verblendung) and the confusion, which ruled (beherrschen) his time, he never lost sight of these aims. To lose sight of a thing, etwas aus dem Auge verlieren. 21, Say 'He would have liked (Impf. Subj. of gern haben in connection with the Past Participle of the verb) to shorten (abkürzen) a straight line, in order to attain his purpose'. 22, of — successes, welche alle Zeugnis davon ablegen, wie teuer er seine Erfolge erkaufte. 23, to set a person down as cruel, einen für grausam halten. 24, 'one', here = a man (S. 134, N. 9). 25, Say 'he was not', etc. 26, Say 'to the man who', etc. 27, Say 'He must carry (erheben) the battery'. 28, 'to be sacrificed', here dahin'gerafft werden. 29, Was befehlen Ew. (abbreviation of Eure) Majestät?

Section 157.

NAPOLÉON BONAPARTE.

II.

In the plenitude of his resources every obstacle seemed to vanish. "There¹ shall be no Alps," he said; and he built his perfect roads², climbing³ by graded galleries their steepest precipices, until Italy was⁴ as open to Paris as any town⁵ in France. Having (S. 55, N. 1) decided what was to be done, he did that with⁶ might and main. He⁷ put out all his strength. He risked everything, and spared⁸ nothing; neither ammunition, nor money, nor⁹ troops, nor generals, nor¹⁰ himself. If fighting¹¹ be the best mode of adjusting national differences (as¹² large majorities of men seem to agree), certainly Bonaparte was right in making it thorough¹³.

He fought¹⁴ sixty battles. He had never enough. Each victory was a new weapon. "My power would fall¹⁵, were I not to support it by new achievements. Conquest has¹⁶ made me what I am, and conquest must maintain me."

Before¹⁷ he fought a battle, Bonaparte thought¹⁸ little about what he should do in¹⁹ case of success, but a great deal about what he should do in case of a reverse of fortune. The same prudence and good sense marked¹⁹ all his behaviour²⁰. His instructions²¹ to his secretary at the palace are worth²² remembering. He said: "During the night enter my chamber as seldom as possible. Do not awake me when you have any good news to communicate²³; with²⁴ that there is no hurry; but when you have bad news, rouse me instantly, for then there is not a moment to be lost." His²⁵ achievement of business was immense, and²⁶ enlarges the known power of man. There have been (S. 82, N. 7) many working kings, from Ulysses to²⁷ William of Orange²⁸, but²⁹ none who accomplished a tithe of this man's performance.—EMERSON.

1, Es soll keine Alpen mehr geben. 2, perfect roads, Kunststraßen. 3, Say 'through which he by means of winding, (sich schlängeln) and gradually rising passes climbed the steepest precipices (Abhang, m.) of the Alps'. 4, was =

stood; to Paris = to the Parisians. The suffix *er* is used to form names of male persons and of the inhabitants of countries and places; as—der Italiener, the Italian, from *Italien*; der Hamburger, the inhabitants of *Hamburg*. 5, town in France = French (S. 101, N. 1) town. 6, with—main, aus Leibeskräften. 7, Er setzte seine ganze Stärke daran. 8, schönen. 9, nor = neither. 10, und auch sich selbst nicht. 11, = war; be = is; mode, Art und Weise. 12, Say 'as the majority of men seem (S. 107, N. 13) to think (S. 64, N. 11)'. 13, to make (do) a thing thorough(ly), etwas gründlich betreiben. 14, to fight battles, Schlachten liefern. 15, = sink. 16, = Conquests have; he has made me what I am, er hat mich zu dem gemacht, was ich bin. 17, Ehe, adv. 18, to think about a thing, über etwas nachdenken, read S. 87, N. 6; in — success, im Glücksfalle; in — fortune, im Unglücksfalle. 19, auszeichnen. 20, Handlungsweise. All his happiness, sein ganzes Glück; all our family, unsere ganze Familie. 21, Verhaltensbefehl, m., directions for conduct; to, an. 22, This is not worth remembering, dies ist nicht der Beachtung wert. 23, melden. 24, Say literally 'these have no haste'. 25, His — business, Seine Arbeitskraft. 26, und erweitert unsere bisherigen Vorstellungen von den im Menschen wohnenden Kräften. 27, bis auf. 28, Dranien. Commence this period with: 'From Ulysses'. 29, doch keinen, der auch nur ein zehntel von den Thaten dieses Mannes vollbracht hätte (App. § 33).

Section 158.

THE WARLIKE CHARACTER OF THE GERMANS.

The Germans fight as a nation. Whatever¹ their birth² or (S. 10, N. 9) profession, all are trained³ soldiers. The nation is the army; the army is the nation. Hence⁴ they cannot be moved save at the bidding of some grand principle, and the stirring⁵ of some soul-penetrating⁶ and elevating sentiment; and yet they are as sensible⁷ as any nation that they abandon comfort⁸, domestic ease, monetary independence, everything⁹ which (S. 3, N. 7) men (= man) love and live for, in¹⁰ order to identify the nation and the army. But they are willing to pay the price. They count¹¹ hardihood of body and trained¹² courage of heart the noblest riches of a nation. They reckon¹³ that national independence and national greatness are a thousand times more precious than gold and silver, and¹⁴ that to die on the field of battle is better and happier than to rot¹⁵ and crumble away in sybaritic ease. They¹⁶ hold, too, that¹⁷ the cause of liberty, and the free noble spirit engendered by the brotherhood of a nationality which affirms its oneness by noble acts¹⁸, is blessed by God, and that He will give¹⁹ victory to the armies who go forth to battle in (S. 3, N. 2) trust in²⁰ His name. No wonder²¹ they fight and triumph²².—ADMIRAL GARBETT.

1, Supply the verb 'be'. 2, = station, Stand, m. 3, = practised. 4, Say 'Hence they can be moved (erregen) only at (durch) the bidding (Gebot, n.)'. 5, Erweckung, f. 6, die Seele ergreifend. 7, 'to be sensible', here sich bewußt sein. 8, here die Annehmlichkeiten des Lebens. 9, Say 'in short give up everything', for the verb 'abandon' must be placed at the end of this clause. 10, Say 'in order to prove the identity of the nation and the army'. 11, halten (für). 12, here gestählt. 13, Say 'and feel that it is better and nobler to die', etc. 14, vermodern; to crumble away, verfallen; 'ease', here Gemächlichkeit. 15, Auch halten sie dafür. 16, Con-

strue thus: 'that God will bless the cause (Sache, f.) of liberty', and use the attributive constr. for the transl. of 'and the — nationality'. Any other constr. would be much too clumsy. 17, = deeds. 18, to give victory, den Sieg verleihen; to go forth to battle, in die Schlacht ziehen. 19, auf. 20, Supply 'then, that'. 21, = conquer.

Section 159.

THE¹ WAY TO MASTER THE TEMPER.

A London (S. 157, N. 4) merchant, having² a dispute with a Quaker concerning a business account, determined³ to institute a law-suit against him. Desirous of amicably settling⁴ the matter, the Quaker called at the house of the merchant, when⁵ the latter became so enraged that he vehemently⁶ declared to his servant *that* he would (App. §§ 28 and 30) not see his opponent. "Well, friend," said the Quaker quietly, "may⁷ God put thee in a better mind." The merchant was⁸ subdued by the kindness of the reply, and, after careful consideration, became convinced that⁹ he was wrong. He sent¹⁰ for the Quaker, and¹¹ after making a humble apology, he asked: "How were you able to bear my abuse¹¹ with so much patience?" "Friend," replied the Quaker, "I was naturally¹² as hot¹³ and violent as thou *art*, but I knew that¹⁴ to indulge my temper was sinful, and also very foolish. I observed that men in a passion always spoke very loud, and I thought that¹⁵, if I could control my voice, I should keep down my passion. I therefore made¹⁶ it a rule never to let it rise above a certain key; and by a careful observance of this rule I have, with the blessing of God¹⁷, entirely mastered my¹⁸ natural temper."—ALCOTT.

1, Wie man seinen Zorn beherrschen kann. 2, Change 'having' into 'had'; the object is best placed after 'account'. 3, Supply 'and' before 'determined'; to institute a law-suit against a person, einen gerichtlich belangen. 4, to settle a matter amicably, eine Sache auf gütliche Weise ordnen. Comp. S. 30, N. 4, and note that the Present Participle 'being' is understood at the commencement of this period. 5, = whereupon. 6, = emphatically, nachdrücklich. 7, Say 'may God alter thy mind (Gefinnung, f.)'. 8, to be subdued, sich besiegt fühlen; by, durch. 9, 'that — wrong' may be briefly turned by 'of his wrong'. 10, to send for a person, einen zu sich rufen lassen. 11, 'and — asked'. This passage, literally translated, would be inelegant in German, say: 'humbly begged his pardon, and asked then'. Abuse, Beleidigung, f. 12, von Natur. 13, = passionate. 14, = that it was sinful, etc.; to indulge one's temper, seinem Zorn freien Lauf lassen. 15, = that I could (App. § 33) conquer my anger through mastering my voice (durch Beherrschung meiner Stimme). 16, We make it a rule never to let our voices rise beyond a certain key, wir machen es uns zur Regel, unsere Stimmen nie über eine gewisse Tonstärke hinaus zu erheben. 17, = with God's help. 18, = my natural inclination to (zu) anger (S. 3, N. 2).

Section 160.

OPINIONS¹ AS TO ENGLISH EDUCATION.

I.

This² energy of individual life and example acting throughout society constitute³ the best practical education of Englishmen. Schools, aca-

demies, and colleges⁴ give but the⁵ merest beginning of culture in comparison with it (S. 4, N. 5). Far higher⁶ and more practical is⁷ the life-education daily given in our homes, in⁸ the streets, behind (S. 3, N. 2) counters⁹, in workshops, at the loom and behind the plough, in counting-houses and manufactories, and¹⁰ in all the busy haunts of men. This is the education that¹¹ fits Englishmen for doing the work and acting the part of free men. This¹² is that final instruction as members of society, which Schiller designated "the education of the human race," consisting¹³ in action, conduct¹⁴, self-culture, self-control—all¹⁵ that tends to discipline a man truly, and fit him for the proper performance of the duties of life—a *kind of* education not to be learnt (S. 7, N. 3 *B*) from (auß) books. Lord Bacon observes that¹⁶ "Studies teach not their own use, but that there is (S. 82, N. 7) a wisdom without them and above them, won (S. 7, N. 3 *B*, and S. 2, N. 1) by (durch) observation, a remark that holds¹⁷ true of¹⁸ actual life, as well as of¹⁹ the cultivation of the intellect itself. For *all* observation serves²⁰ to illustrate and enforce the lesson, that *a* man perfects himself by work much more than by reading²¹,—that²² it is life²³ rather than literature²¹, action²⁴ rather than study, and character²⁵ rather than biography²⁶, which²⁷ tend perpetually to renovate mankind.

1, Ansichten über. 2, This—society. A good German rendering of the thought underlying this line is so difficult, that the author thinks it best to give at once his own translation, which he hopes will find acceptance: Diese im mehr selbstständigen Leben sich entwickelnde Energie und das dadurch gegebene, auf die ganze Gesellschaft wirkende Beispiel. 3, aus machen. 4, = universities; 'to give', here gewähren. 5, = a mere. 6, = more important. 7, is—homes, ist die im täglichen Leben gewonnene Erziehung zu Hause. 8, auf. 9, Use this noun in the Sing. 10, und in den vielen andern Geschäftsstätten der Menschen. 11, Say 'that enables Englishmen as free men to do their work and their duty'. 12, This—designated = This education gives also to human society that instruction (Unterweisung, f.), which Schiller calls, etc. Johann Christoph Friedrich von Schiller, geboren am 10. Nov. 1759 zu Marbach, gestorben am 9. Mai 1805 zu Weimar, ist nächst Göthe (Siehe S. 110, N. 1) unstreitig die bedeutendste Erscheinung in der deutschen Litteratur. Als Dichter zeichnete er sich sowohl durch seine ideale, subjektive Richtung, wie auch durch hinreißenden Schwung echt poetischer Begeisterung aus, welche im Drama ihren Höhepunkt erreichte. Aber auch als Geschichtschreiber und als philosophischer Schriftsteller hat er sich bei seiner Nation einen unsterblichen Namen erworben. 13, = and which consists in (S. 3, N. 2) action, etc. 14, in der sittlichen Aufführung. 15, = and in all that (here follows the verb 'consists', since this is the end of the relative clause introduced in Note 13), which (S. 3, N. 7) educates (bilden) man truly (wahrhaft) and fits (befähigen) him for (zu) the proper performance (= fulfilment) of his duties in life. 16, = that 'Studies do not teach us the application of the same, but', etc. 17, 'to hold true', here = to prove true. 18, = in practical life. 19, of—itself, in Bezug auf die Geistesbildung selbst. 20, = interprets (erklären) and proves the doctrine. 21, here Lektüre, f., with the art. 22, This conj. 'that' is best omitted, since a repetition of subordinate clauses must, as far as possible, be avoided. 23, = practical life; 'rather than' seems here to be = 'and not'. 24, Thätigkeit, activity. 25, The English word 'character' is so varied in its application that it requires always the greatest discrimination to decide upon its translation, and in this case more than ever. After careful consideration it is thought to be equivalent here to: 'the personal

dignity of a man'. 26, die Lebensbeschreibung desselben. 27, welche dazu dienen, die Menschheit stets von neuem zu beleben.

Section 161.

OPINIONS AS TO ENGLISH EDUCATION.

II.

Goethe (S. 5, N. 2), in *one of his* conversations with Eckermann at Weimar, once¹ observed: "It is very² strange, and I know not whether³ it lies in race, in climate, in⁴ soil, or in their healthy⁵ education, but⁶ certainly Englishmen seem to have a great advantage over most other men. We see here in Weimar only a⁷ minimum of them, and⁸ those, probably, by no means the best *specimens*, and yet what splendid fellows they are! And although they come here as seventeen-year-old⁹ youths, yet they by no means feel strange in this strange land; on the contrary, their entrance¹⁰ and bearing¹¹ in society is so confident¹² and quiet, that one would¹³ think they were everywhere the masters, and the whole world belonged to them¹⁴."

"I should not like to affirm, for all that¹⁵," replied Eckermann¹⁶, "that the English gentlemen in Weimar are cleverer, better educated, and better hearted than our young men."

"That is not the point¹⁷," said Goethe; "their superiority does not lie in such things; neither¹⁸ does it lie in their birth and fortune¹⁹; it lies precisely²⁰ in their having²¹ the courage to be what nature made them. There²² is no halfness about²³ them. They are complete²⁴ men. Sometimes complete fools also, that I heartily²⁵ admit, but even that is something, and has its weight."

Thus (App. § 14), in²⁶ Goethe's eyes, the Englishmen fulfilled, to a great extent, the injunction²⁷ given by Lessing²⁸ to those who would be men:

"Think wrongly, if you please, but think for yourselves!"—S. SMILES, "SELF-HELP."

1, = one day. 2, 'Very' is often rendered by the superlative of the adv. hoch. 3, 'whether it lies' may be elegantly translated by omitting the conjunction 'whether' and using the inversion. 4, im heimatlichen Boden. 5, heilsam. 6, Say 'but it seems to be certain that Englishmen possess a great superiority over most other men'. 7, a minimum = very few. 8, = and these (dies) are probably by no means the best, and yet (dennoch aber) they are (sind es) splendid fellows! 9, a thirty-year-old man, ein dreißigjähriger Mann. 10, Auftreten, n. 11, Benehmen, n. 12, sicher. 13, Render 'would' by the Impf. Subj. of mögen, since the sentence is equivalent to 'that one would be inclined to think'. The following verbs must be constructed according to App. §§ 29 and 30. 14, Supply 'alone' after 'them'. 15, for all that, aber doch, to be placed before 'not'. 16, Johann Peter Eckermann, geboren 1792 zu Wunsin in der preussischen Provinz Hannover, gestorben den 3. Dez. 1854 zu Weimar, war viele Jahre als Goethes Privatsekretär thätig und ist der Welt am bekanntesten durch die von ihm nach Goethes Tode veröffentlichten 'Gespräche mit Goethe'. Er war auch der Herausgeber (editor) von Goethes 'Nachgelassenen Werken'. 17, Sache, f. 18, auch

besteht sie nicht in. 19, = wealth; Comp. S. 10, N. 9. 20, = simply.
 21, The English Gerund preceded by a possessive adjective and a
 preposition, must be translated by a regular subordinate clause with
 a conjunction and a finite verb; as—

His superiority lies in his having the
 courage to be what nature made
 him.

Seine Überlegenheit besteht darin (S. 87,
 N. 6), daß er den Mut hat, das zu
 sein, was er von Natur aus ist.

22, Es. 23, an. 24, = whole. 25, = willingly; weight = value.
 26, = according to the judgment of Göthe. 27, = advice; by, von; to,

an; those = all such; who, die da. 28, Gotth. Ephraim Lessing, geboren den
 22. Jan. 1729 zu Kamenz (Oberlausitz), gestorben den 15. Febr. 1781 in Braunschweig,
 hat sich durch seine ästhetisch-kritischen Werke, wie auch durch seine Dramen, deren Form,
 Sprache, Methode und Inhalt fast unerreichte Muster sind, einen unsterblichen Namen in
 der deutschen Literaturgeschichte erworben. Sein Wirken als genialer Kritiker, Forscher
 und Dichter war von unermesslichem Einfluß auf die nächste Entwicklung unserer Littera-
 tur, die mit ihm und durch ihn ihrer Glanzperiode entgegentritt.

Section 162.

A ROYAL JUDGMENT.

A man and his wife named Lambrun had been many years in the service of the unfortunate Queen Mary Stuart, and were sincerely attached to her. The tragical death of that princess had such an effect on the husband that he did not long survive her, and the¹ widow, Margaret Lambrun, resolved to revenge, upon² Queen Elizabeth, the³ death of two persons so dear to her. She (S. 5, N. 2) therefore disguised⁴ herself in man's clothes, bought (S. 58, N. 8) a brace⁵ of pistols, and went⁶ to (S. 72, N. 4) London. Soon after, when the queen⁷ appeared in⁸ public, Margaret endeavoured to⁹ make her way through the crowd in order to shoot her¹⁰; but one of the pistols fell¹¹, and she was immediately apprehended.

The¹² queen, being informed of the circumstance¹³, ordered¹⁴ the man to be brought before her, and said to him: "Well, Sir, who are you¹⁵? and why do you seek¹⁶ to kill me?"—"Madam," replied Margaret, "I am a woman; I was a long time in the service of Queen Mary Stuart, whom you put¹⁷ to death unjustly; her execution caused¹⁸ the death of my dear husband, who was sincerely attached to her; and my affection for both of them has excited¹⁹ me to revenge."—"And how do you think I ought to deal²⁰ with you?" asked Elizabeth.—"Do you speak as a queen or as a judge?" returned Margaret.—"As a queen."—"Then you ought to pardon²¹ me," was the answer.—"And what security²² can you give me that you will not attempt¹⁶ my life again?"—"Madam, a²³ pardon granted upon conditions ceases to be a favour²⁴."—"Well then," said the queen, "I pardon you, and trust to your gratitude for²⁵ my safety."—P. SADLER.

1, = his. 2, an, with the Dat. of the def. art. The words 'upon—Elizabeth' must be placed before the supine. Comp. App. § 1. 3, We lament the death of the two boys so dear to us, wir beweinen den Tod der beiden uns so theuren Knaben. 4, to disguise oneself in man's clothes, sich als Mann

verfleiden. 5, = a pair. 6, sich begeben, insep. comp. str. v. refl. 7, Here place the adverbs 'soon after'. 8, öffentlich. 9, to make one's way, sich einen Weg bahnen. 10, to shoot a person, auf einen schießen. 11, entsetzt ihr. 12, Construe accord. to S. 55, N. 1, and S. 4, N. 4, (man). 13, Versfall, m. 14, ließ sie den Mann vor sich führen. 15, Use the 2nd pers. pl. (Ihr) here and in the following passages, since that was the pronoun generally used in addressing persons in olden times. 16, to seek to kill a person (or to attempt a person's life), einem nach dem Leben trachten. 17, to put a person to death unjustly, einen ungerechterweise hinrichten lassen. 18, This caused the death of our child, dies kostete unserem Kinde das Leben. The insertion of the adv. auch after the verb 'caused' would considerably improve the German rendering. 19, to excite a person to revenge, einen zur Rache antreiben. Use the Impf. 20, verfahren. 21, begnabigen, v. tr. 22, Bürgschaft, f. 23, a — conditions, eine bedingungsweise Begnadigung. 24, Gnade, f. 25, hinsichtlich, followed by the Gen. The words 'to (auf) your gratitude' are best placed at the end.

Section 163.

TACITUS.

I am glad to find¹, by your (= thy) letter just received, that you are reading Tacitus² with *some* relish. His style is rather quaint³ and enigmatical, which (S. 3, N. 7) makes⁴ it difficult to the student; but then⁵ his pages⁶ are filled with such admirable apothegms and maxims of political wisdom, as⁷ infer the deepest knowledge of human nature; and it is particularly necessary that any one intending to become a public speaker should⁸ be master of his works, as⁹ there is neither an ancient nor a modern author who affords such a selection of admirable quotations. You should exercise yourself frequently in¹⁰ trying to make translations of the¹¹ passages which most strike¹² you, trying¹³ to invest¹⁴ the sense of (S. 25, N. 5) Tacitus in as good English as you can. This will answer¹⁵ the double purpose of making yourself familiar with the Latin author, and giving you the command of¹⁶ your own language, which no person will ever have¹⁷ who¹⁸ does not study composition in early life.—SIR WALTER SCOTT, "LETTERS TO HIS SON."

1, here erscheinen; by, aus. 2, Use the def. art. accord. to S. 25, N. 5. 3, = unusual and unclear (dunkel). 4, to make difficult, erschweren; student = pupil. 5, = on the other hand, andererseits. 6, = writings, Schriften; filled with such, so voll von. 7, as infer = that they prove. 8, Say 'should thoroughly (gründlich) know his works'. 9, Say 'as there is (S. 82, N. 7) no classical nor (noch) modern author (Schriftsteller)'. 10, in trying = in the attempt, in dem Versuche. 11, = such. 12, This passage struck me most, diese Stelle machte am meisten Eindruck auf mich. 13, trying = and try. 14, wie begeben, sep. comp. str. v. tr. 15, This does not answer my purpose, dies entspricht meinem Zwecke nicht. 16, über. 17, = obtain. 18, welcher sich nicht schon in der Jugend in schriftlichen Aufsätzen übt.

Section 164.

HUMILITY.

I believe the first¹ test of a truly great man is his humility. I do not mean by² humility, doubt of³ his own power, or hesitation⁴ in speaking⁵

his opinions, but a right understanding of the relation between⁶ what he can do and say, and⁷ the rest of the world's sayings and doings. All great men not only know⁸ their business⁹, but usually know¹⁰ that¹¹ they know it; they are not only right in their main opinions¹², but they usually know that they are right in them (S. 4, N. 5, *B*); only they do not think much of themselves on¹³ that account. Arnolfo¹⁴ knows he can build a good¹⁵ dome at Florence; Albert¹⁶ Dürer writes calmly¹⁷ to one who had found fault with his work: "It cannot be better done;" Sir Isaac Newton knows that he has worked¹⁸ out a problem or two that would have puzzled anybody¹⁹ else:—only they do not expect their²⁰ fellow-men therefore to fall down and worship them; they²¹ have a curious under-sense of powerlessness, feeling (S. 30, N. 4) that the greatness is²² not in them, but through them; that they could (App. § 33) not do or be anything else than²³ what God made them. They see something divine and God-made²⁴ in every other man, and are endlessly, nay²⁵ incredibly merciful²⁶.—ANONYMOUS.

1, = best; test, Prüfstein, m. 2, unter, which place at the head of the period; mean = understand. 3, an, with the Dat. 4, here Unentschlossenheit. 5, aus'sprechen. 6, von. 7, = and of that which the remaining world can say and do. 8, = understand. 9, Sache, f. 10, wissen, after which insert the adv. auch. 11, that they understand the same (to agree with Sache). 12, Hauptansichten. 13, on that account, deswegen, which place after the Subj.; to think much of oneself, eine große Meinung von sich haben. 14, Arnolfo di Cambio, berühmter Baumeister und Bildhauer zu Florenz (1232–1300), baute den Dom St. Maria del fiore zu Florenz und das Tabernakel zu St. Paolo in Rom. 15, = stately. 16, Albrecht Dürer, geboren den 20. Mai 1471 zu Nürnberg, gestorben den 6. April 1528 ebendasselbst, muß zu den hervorragendsten und vielseitigsten Künstlern gezählt werden, die je gelebt. Er war nicht allein ausgezeichnete Maler, sondern auch zugleich Kupferstecher (engraver on copper), Formschneider (moulder), Bildhauer (sculptor), Architekt und Schriftsteller (author) über die Kunst. Er war der Erfinder der Aekunst, erfand das Mittel, die Holzschnitte mit zwei Farben zu drucken, und vervollkommnete die Schriftgießerei (type-foundry), denn von ihm stammt die Form der deutschen Lettern. 17, gelassen; one, jemand. 18, to work out a problem or two, Probleme lösen. 19, anybody else, jeder andere, as Nom. 20, = that their fellow-men therefore (deshalb) must (sollen) fall down before them and worship (an'beten) them. The auxiliary sollen must be placed last, accord. to App. § 18. 21, they — powerlessness. This clause cannot be rendered in a literal way, but may be expressed thus: 'they recognise that they are, after all, only powerless'; after all, only, doch nur, which place after the Subj. 22, is not = manifests itself not (sich offenbaren). 23, als wozu Gott sie erschaffen. 24, Gottergeschaffenes. 25, ja sogar. 26, = forbearing, nachsichtig.

Section 165.

RUSSIAN POLITICAL PRISONERS IN BANISHMENT.

I.

In the cheerless regions of¹ Arkangel, of which the aborigines say: "God made Russia, but the devil made Arkangel," there are (S. 82, N. 7) more than two hundred of those banished ones—men and women, all young, all (= and) poor, most² of them sent without trial, few³ amongst them knowing even of what they are accused. Victor Ivano-

witch⁴ dines with his friend B., for instance, and⁵ after a stroll along⁶ the boulevards they separate. B. is arrested that⁷ very evening, and when Victor, astonished and horror-stricken⁸, hastens⁹ to inquire the cause, he finds everybody¹⁰, even B.'s *own* father, as¹¹ much in the dark as he *is himself*; all questions and petitions on¹² the subject receive¹³ vague administrative answers; all friends and relatives are systematically discouraged and silenced; eagerly they wait for¹⁴ the numerous political trials that¹⁵ come on without intermission, hoping¹⁶ to see the missing one's (S. 67, N. 3) name on¹⁷ the list of criminals, or to see¹⁸ his face once more, let¹⁹ it be even in²⁰ the prisoner's dock; but as²¹ they wait and²² watch, the prisoner²³ is, without any trial, en route for Arkangel.

Arrived²⁴ there, the routine (App. § 15) is the same for all; whatever²⁵ the crime alleged, the age or sex, the²⁶ prisoner is taken to the police-ward,—a²⁷ dreary log-building, containing two sections, one for men, the other for women. The solitary table and chair in the room, the four walls, and even the ceiling, are covered²⁸ with the names of²⁹ youthful predecessors, whose pencilled³⁰ jests and clever caricatures bear³¹ witness to the strength of confidence in themselves with which they began³² their life in exile.

- 1, des Gouvernements Archangel. 2, most of them, meistens; sent = sent there; without trial = without any trial, ohne jegliches Verhör. 3, Say liter. 'of whom even but (nur) few know'. 4, Here follows 'for instance'; with = in company of. 5, Say 'und trennt sich von ihm nach', etc. 6, auf. 7, noch an demselben Abend. 8, aufs höchste erschrocken. 9, to hasten to inquire the cause, sich eiligst nach der Ursache erkundigen. 10, everybody = that all. 11, Supply 'are' (sich befinden) before 'as'. 12, über die Sache. 13, receive — answers = are vaguely (in unbestimmter Weise, which place after government) answered by (S. 106, N. 23) the government. 14, auf. 15, = that follow one another (auf einander folgen). 16, = in the hope. 17, in. 18, zu schauen (App. § 1); face, Angesicht, n. 19, let it be = be it even. 20, in — dock, vor den Schranken des Gerichts. 21, = whilst. 22, and watch = and attentively watch (bewachen) everything. 23, Insert the adv. schon after the subject; en route for = on the way to. 24, Dort ankommen; 'routine', here = treatment; the words 'the same' are to be placed at the end of the clause. 25, whatever — sex, welches Verbrechen der Gefangene auch angeklagt und welches Alters und Geschlechts er auch sei. 26, the — ward = yet (so . . . doch) he is always taken (= conducted) to (in) the police-ward (Polizeiwache, f.). 27, a — women = that consists of (aus) a miserable block-house of (aus) two divisions, one of which is appointed for men and the other for women. 28, beschrieben, p. p. 29, of — predecessors = of the former (früher, adj.) youthful inhabitants of the same (to agree with room). 30, pencilled, mit Bleistift gezeichnet, which use attributively. 31, bear — themselves = prove the intensity (Größe, f.) of the confidence in themselves (Selbstvertrauen, n.). 32, 'to begin', here an'treten, sep. comp. str. v. tr.; ife in exile = banishment.

Section 166.

RUSSIAN POLITICAL PRISONERS IN BANISHMENT.

II.

In this dreary abode¹ a week or ten days is spent, when² the governor of Arkangel, after due reflection, marks out³ for this dangerous person-

age some final place of exile (S. 76, N. 22, *B*), some ⁴ miserable little district town ⁵, such as Holmogor, Shenkoursk, Pinega, or Mexen. The ⁶ prisoner is then told his "documents" are ready, and a gendarme enters, saying ⁷ it is time to start ⁸. The exile jumps into the jolting post-waggon, two gendarmes jump *in* after him, the bell above ⁹ the horse's neck begins to ring—and rings *on* for ¹⁰ days and weeks—through wood ¹¹, and swamp, and plain, along ¹² roads inconceivably drear and lonely, until the ¹³ weary convoy at length arrives at his destination. The little town is desolate and black ¹⁴, and consists of log-huts, two unpaved streets, and a wooden church painted green, and the ¹⁵ live-stock consists of ten or twelve raw-boned ¹⁶ horses, a small herd of sickly ¹⁷ cows, and thirty or forty reindeer. The population rarely (S. 102, N. 30) exceeds *one* (S. 132, N. 10) thousand ¹⁸, and consists of the Ispravnik ¹⁹, ten sub-altern ²⁰ officers, the Arbiter ²¹ of the Peace, the ²² Crown Forester, a priest, a few shopkeepers, thirty or forty exiles, a ²³ chain-gang of Russian felons, and a crowd ²⁴ of Finnish beggars. On his arrival, the prisoner is driven straight to (S. 72, N. 4) the police-ward, where he is inspected ²⁵ by (S. 106, N. 23) the Ispravnik, a (S. 53, N. 9) police officer, who is absolute lord and master of the district. This representative of the Government requires ²⁶ of him to answer the following questions: His ²⁷ name? How old? Married or single? Where from? The address of ²⁸ parents, relations, or friends? Answers ²⁹ to all of which are entered in the books.

1, Aufenthaltsort, m.; a — spent = spends (verbringen) the prisoner eight or ten days. 2, = whereupon. 3, to mark out, bezeichnen; for this = to this (Dat.); personage = character; some final = his definite (definitiv). The Dat. should be placed immediately after 'Arkangel'. 4, = a. 5, Kreisstadt, f.; such as = as for example. 6, Construe this passage accord. to the following model: I am told the documents are destroyed, *Es* (S. 104, N. 19) wird mir mitgeteilt, daß die Papiere vernichtet sind. 7, mit dem Bemerken, daß, etc. 8, 'to start,' of a conveyance, a train, etc., is generally rendered by abfahren. 9, = at, an. 10, for years, jahrelang. 11, Use the pl. for this and the two following nouns. 12, auf. Read S. 128, N. 11. 13, the — convoy = the exhausted travellers. 14, black = gloomy. 15, Viehstand, m. 16, abgemagert. 17, fleck. 18, Supply 'souls'. 19, This term may be used in its unaltered form, but is perhaps better rendered by 'Polizeipräsident', m. 20, Unterbeamte, m. 21, Friedensrichter. 22, Nom. der kaiserliche Forstbeamte. 23, einem Haufen russischer Verbrecher in Ketten. 24, = number. 25, = examined; who — district = with absolute (unumschränkt) power (Vollmacht, f.) over the whole district. 26, begehren; to answer = the answer, die Beantwortung, followed by the Gen., but without art. 27, = your. 28, Say 'of your parents'. 29, Say 'and the answers to (auf, with Acc.) these questions are all entered (eintragen) in the books.

Section 167.

RUSSIAN POLITICAL PRISONERS IN BANISHMENT.

III.

A ¹ solemn promise is then exacted of him that he will not give lessons of ² any kind, or ³ try to teach ⁴ anyone; that every letter (S. 48, N. 6)

he writes will go through the Ispravnik's hands, and ⁵ that he will follow no occupation except shoemaking, carpentering, or field labour. He is then ⁶ told he (App. § 28) is free, but ⁷ at the same time is solemnly warned that ⁸ should he attempt to pass the limits of the town, he would be shot down like a dog rather than be allowed to escape; and ⁹, should he be taken alive, would be sent off to Eastern Siberia without further formality than that of the Ispravnik's personal order.

The poor fellow takes up his little bundle, and ¹⁰, fully realising that he has now bidden ¹¹ farewell to the culture and material ¹² comfort of his past ¹³ life, he walks ¹⁴ out into the cheerless street. A group of exiles, all pale and emaciated, are (S. 107, N. 13) there ¹⁵ to (S. 19, N. 7) greet him, take ¹⁶ him to *some of* their miserable lodgings, and feverishly demand ¹⁷ news from home. The new comer gazes on them as *one* in a dream; some are melancholy, and almost mad, others nervously irritable, and the remainder have evidently tried to find solace in ¹⁸ drink. They live (S. 116, N. 17) in ¹⁹ communities of twos and threes, have food, a scanty provision of clothes, money ²⁰, and books in common, and consider ²¹ it their sacred duty to help each other in every emergency, without ²² distinction of (S. 3, N. 2, and S. 10, N. 9) sex, rank, or age. The noble by ²³ birth get sixteen shillings ²⁴ a month from Government for their maintenance, and ²⁵ commoners only ten, although many of them are married, and ²⁶ sent into exile with young families ²⁷.

- 1, Say 'Hereupon one demands (verlangen) of him the solemn promise'.
- 2, not of any kind, *feinerlei*, adj. (indeclinable).
- 3, or try = and not try. The auxiliary verb of mood '*will*' need be expressed but once, and stands, of course?
- 4, *unterrichten*, insep. comp. w. v. tr.
- 5, Say 'and that he besides (außer) shoemaking (*Schumacherei*, f., with def. art.), carpentering and field-labour, will carry on (*treiben*) no (*feinerlei*) occupation.
- 6, 'then', here *Endlich*, with which begin the clause, and construe accord. to S. 4, N. 4 (man).
- 7, but — warned, *aber zugleich fündigt man ihm an*.
- 8, that — escape. This passage requires an altogether different construction in German; say 'they (man) would upon (bei) an attempt, to go beyond (*überschreiten*, insep. comp. str. v. tr.) the limits of the town, not allow him to escape, but rather (*vielmehr*) shoot him down like a dog (liter. — but him rather like a dog shoot down, *nie'erschießen*).
- 9, Say 'should he however be caught (*ein'fangen*) alive, (so) they (man) would send him without further formality (*Formalität*, f.), upon the simple order of the Ispravnik to the East of Siberia.
- 10, and — realising = and well knowing (pres. p.).
- 11, to bid farewell, *Lebewohl sagen*.
- 12, *materielle Bequemlichkeiten* (Nom. pl.), which use with the def. art. in the Dat. pl.
- 13, = former.
- 14, to walk out into the street, *in die Straße hinaus'schreiten*.
- 15, = outside.
- 16, Supply the pron. 'these' before the verb take (*föhren*, i. e. lead); to = into.
- 17, to demand news from home, *einen nach Nachrichten aus der Heimat fragen*.
- 18, in drink, *im Trunke*.
- 19, in — threes, *je zwei oder drei zusammen*.
- 20, Supply 'as also' before 'money'; in common, *gemeinschaftlich*.
- 21, My parents consider it their duty to help their neighbours in every emergency, *meine Eltern halten es für ihre Pflicht, ihren Nachbarn in jeder Not und Gefahr beizustehen*.
- 22, Insert 'und zwar' before 'without', which will improve the rendering very much.
- 23, von.
- 24, 1 sh. = 1 *Mark*; a month, *monatlich, jeden Monat, or alle Monate*.
- 25, *noch die Bürgerlichen*; repeat '*Mark*' after 'ten'.
- 26, and sent = and are being sent (see S. 2, N. 1).
- 27, = children.

Section 168.

RUSSIAN POLITICAL PRISONERS IN BANISHMENT.

IV.

Daily a gendarme visits¹ their lodgings, inspects² the premises when and how he pleases³, and now⁴ and then makes some mysterious entry in his note book. Should⁵ any of their number carry a warm dinner, a pair of newly-mended boots, or a change of linen to some passing exile lodged for the moment in the police-ward, it is just as likely as not marked against him as a crime. It is a crime to⁶ come and see a friend off, or accompany⁷ him a little on the way. In⁸ fact, should the Ispravnik feel⁹ out of sorts—the effect of cards¹⁰ and drink—he¹¹ vents his bad temper on the exiles; and as¹² cards and drink are the only amusements in these dreary regions, crimes¹³ are often marked down against the exiles in astonishing numbers, and¹⁴ a report of them sent to the Governor of the province.

Winter lasts eight months, a¹⁵ period during which the surrounding¹⁶ country presents the appearance of a noiseless¹⁷, lifeless, frozen marsh. No roads, no communication with the outer world, no means of¹⁸ escape. In course of time almost every exile is attacked¹⁹ by nervous convulsions, soon²⁰ followed by prolonged apathy and complete prostration. Some of them contrive²¹ to forge passports, and by a miracle, as²² it were, make their escape; but the great majority of these victims of the Third Section²³ either go mad, commit suicide, or die of²⁴ delirium tremens.—JAMES ALLEN.

- 1, visits = comes into. 2, = who inspects (untersuchen) the house. 3, Do as you please, thun Sie, wie es Ihnen beliebt. 4, now and then, dann und wann, or von Zeit zu Zeit, after which insert the adverbs auch wohl; some = a; to make an entry in a book, eine Bemerkung in ein Buch eintragen. 5, Arrange this period in the following manner: 'Should one of them to a for the moment in the police-ward lodged (untergebracht) and passing (durchreisend) exile ever (je) a warm dinner, a pair of newly-soled boots, or some clean linen (Wäsche, f.) bring, then (so) is (Passive) to him this very (S. 161, N. 2) likely as a crime ascribed (zur Last geschrieben). 6, He came and saw his friend off, er sagte seinem abreisenden Freunde Lebewohl. 7, Will you accompany me a little on my way? Wollen Sie mich auf meinem Wege eine kleine Strecke begleiten? 8, = In short, Kurz. 9, to feel out of sorts, übler Laune sein. Insert the adv. einmal after the subject. 10, = card-playing; see S. 3, N. 2, and S. 10, N. 9. 11, he — exiles, so müssen ihm die Verbannten dafür büßen. 12, The adverbial circumstance of place 'in — regions' is best placed immediately after the conj. 13, crimes — numbers = an astonishing number of crimes is often ascribed to the exiles. Read App. § 5. 14, and — sent to = and reported (melden) to. 15, a — which = during which time. 16, = whole. 17, See S. 71, N. 2, which rule applies likewise to adjectives; 'frozen', here zu Eis erstarrt. 18, zu, contracted with the art. 19, 'to be attacked', here heimgesucht werden. 20, = upon which soon follows a state (Zustand, m.) of prolonged (dauernd) apathy (Stumpfsein, m.) and complete (gänzlich) prostration (Hinfälligkeit der Lebenskräfte). 21, He contrived to forge a passport, es gelang ihm, einen falschen Paß herzustellen. 22, as it were, gleichsam, which place

after 'and'; by = through, durch; to make one's escape, entkommen, insepar. comp. str. v. intr. 23, 'Die dritte Abteilung' nennt man in Rußland das gefürchtete Departement des Polizeiministeriums, welches mit der geheimen Polizei betraut ist. 24, an, contracted with the Dat. of the def. art.

Section 169.

TAHITI¹.

I.

At² daylight Tahiti, an island which must for ever remain³ classical to the voyager in the South Sea, was in view. At a distance the appearance⁴ was not attractive. The⁵ luxuriant vegetation of the lower⁶ part could not yet be seen; and as the clouds rolled⁷ past, only the wildest⁸ and most precipitous peaks showed themselves⁹ towards¹⁰ the centre of the island. As soon as we anchored in¹¹ Matavai Bay we¹² were surrounded by canoes. After dinner we landed and enjoyed the delights¹³ always¹⁴ produced by the first impressions of a fine country. A crowd of men, women, and children was collected on the shore, ready to (S. 19, N. 7) receive us with laughing, merry faces. They¹⁵ marshalled us towards the house of (S. 10, N. 2) Mr. Wilson, the¹⁶ missionary of the district, who met¹⁷ us on the road, and gave¹⁸ us a very fine reception. After sitting¹⁹ a short time in his house, we separated from our host to²⁰ walk about, and²¹ returned in the evening.

The²² land capable of cultivation is²³ scarcely in any part more than a fringe of low alluvial soil, accumulated round²⁴ the base of the mountains, and²⁵ protected from the waves of the sea by a coral reef, which encircles the entire line of coast. Within the reef there²⁶ is an expanse of smooth water, like that of a lake, where²⁷ the canoes of the natives can ply with safety, and where²⁸ ships anchor. The low land, which²⁹ comes down to the beach of coral sand, is covered³⁰ by the most beautiful productions of³¹ the intertropical regions. In the midst of bananas³², orange, cocoa-nut, and bread-fruit trees, spots³³ are cleared where yams³⁴, potatoes, the sugar-cane, and pine-apples are cultivated³⁵.

1, Tahiti ist die größte der Gesellschaftsinseln (Society Islands) im stillen Meere oder der Südsee (Pacific Ocean) und beßigt ungefähr 9200 Einwohner, welche seit 1813 durch englische Missionäre zum Christentum bekehrt sind. Die Bibel ist in die Sprache der Eingebornen übersetzt, und auch in den Kirchen und Schulen wird in der Landessprache gepredigt und gelehrt.

2, = At the break of day (Beim Tagesanbruch) we saw Tahiti.

3, = appear, erscheinen. The words 'to — Sea' must be placed after the rel. pron., and are followed by 'for ever' (fürs).

4, = view.

5, Use the active Voice of the verb with 'man', which should commence the clause.

6, 'lower', here niedriger belegen.

7, rolled past, an und vorüberzogen.

8, Supply 'to us' after 'themselves'.

9, wußt.

10, = in the middle.

11, in der Bucht von Matavai.

12, = we found ourselves surrounded by (von) canoes (Baumfahn, m.).

13, Freuden.

14, Say 'which the first sight of a fine country always produces (hervor-rufen) within us'.

15, = These conducted us.

16, des Bezirksmissionärs.

17, He will meet me on the road, er wird mir halbwegs entgegenkommen.

18, to give a person a very fine reception, einen höchst freundlich bewillkommen.

19, ver-

weisen; construe this clause accord. to S. 55, N. 1. 20, Inf. einen Spaziergang machen. 21, = from which we returned in the evening (abends). 22, Der kulturfähige Teil der Insel. 23, is — soil = consists nearly everywhere only of (aus) a narrow strip of low (niedrig gelegen) alluvial land (use the Gen. without the art.). 24, round the base, rings herum am Fuße. 25, Say 'and is protected'; from, vor. 26, there is = finds itself (sich befinden); an expanse of water, eine ausgebreitete Wasserfläche; 'smooth', here fast spiegelglatt. 27, The literal rendering of this passage would not read well, say 'which (to agree with Wasserfläche) affords (App. § 5) perfect (völlig) safety to the canoes of the natives'. 28, = in which. 29, = which reaches down (hinunterreichen) to (bis zu) the beach consisting of coral-sand.—Use the attributive const., S. 48, N. 6. 30, 'covered', here bewachsen; by, mit. 31, der zwischen den Tropen gelegenen Gegenden. 32, See S. 71, N. 2. 33, to clear a spot (of trees, etc.), eine Stelle urbar machen. 34, Damswurzeln. 35, bauen.

Section 170.

TAHITI.

II.

Even the brush-wood is¹ an imported fruit-tree, *namely*, the guava², which grows in abundance here. In Brazil I have often admired the varied³ beauty of the bananas (S. 71, N. 2), palms, and orange-trees contrasted⁴ together; and here we also have the bread-fruit⁵, conspicuous⁶ from its large, glossy, *and* deeply digitated leaves. It is admirable⁷ to behold groves of a tree, sending⁸ forth its branches with the vigour of an English oak, loaded⁹ with large *and* most nutritious fruit¹⁰.

However¹¹ seldom the usefulness of an object can account for the pleasure of beholding it, in the case of these beautiful woods, the knowledge of their high productiveness, no doubt, enters largely into the feeling of admiration. The¹² little winding paths, cool from the surrounding shade, led to the scattered¹³ houses, the owners of which everywhere gave¹⁴ us a cheerful¹⁵ *and* most hospitable reception.

I¹⁶ was pleased with nothing so much as with the inhabitants. There¹⁷ is a mildness in the expression of their countenances which at once banishes the idea of¹⁸ a savage, and an intelligence¹⁹ which shows that they are²⁰ advancing in civilisation. The common people, when working, keep²¹ the upper part of their bodies quite naked; and²² it is then that the Tahitians are seen to advantage. They are very tall, broad-shouldered, athletic, and well proportioned. It (S. 4, N. 4, man) has been remarked that²³ it requires little habit to make a dark skin more pleasing and natural to the eye of a European than his own colour.

1, = consists of. 2, der Gujavabaum, dessen pomeranzenartige (orange-like) Früchte in Zucker eingemacht oder auch in Gelee verwandelt versandt werden. 3, mannigfaltig. 4, Say 'which form such a great contrast'. 5, Brotbaum, m. 6, conspicuous, welcher . . . sogleich auffällt, i. e. strikes the eye; from, durch; its deeply digitated leaves, seine tief eingeschnittenen, fingerförmigen Blätter. 7, = splendid; groves of a tree = a forest of trees. 8, = spreading out their, etc. 9, = and are at the same time (dabei) loaded. 10, Use

this noun in the pl. 11, Arrange this period thus: 'Although the usefulness of an object perhaps only seldom explains to us the pleasure, which we experience at the sight of the same, yet (jo . . . doch) our admiration at the sight of these splendid groves (Wälder) is no doubt considerably influenced by (= through) our knowledge of (von) their great fertility. 12, The—shade = The narrow, winding (schmal schlängelnd), shady and cool foot-paths. 13, gerührt liegend. 14, gewähren. 15, freundlich, but here wohlwollend, in order to avoid a repetition of the same term, since 'hospitable' must be turned by gastfreundlich; reception, Aufnahme, f. 16, Say 'Nothing gave (machen) me greater joy than just (gerade) the inhabitants'. 17, Say 'The expression of their faces (Ihr Gesichtsausdruck) bears a mildness (Sanftmut, f.), which', etc. 18, =of savages. 19, Intelligenz, f. 20, are advancing = make progress. 21, =they have. It is a matter of course that the conj. 'when' must commence the period. 22, =and just then one sees the Tahitians (die Tahitianer) to advantage (=in the best light). 23, =that after a short time a dark skin appears to the eye of a European more pleasing and more natural than his own.

Section 171.

TAHITI.

III.

A white man bathing (S. 16, N. 4) by the side of a Tahitian was¹ like a plant bleached (S. 7, N. 3, attrib.) by the gardener's art compared² with a fine dark-green one growing vigorously³ in the field. Most of the men are tattooed, and the ornaments follow the curvature⁴ of the body so⁵ gracefully, that they⁶ have a very elegant effect. The most common pattern, varying⁷ in its details, is somewhat like¹⁶ the crown of a palm-tree. It springs⁸ from the central line of the back, and gracefully curls⁹ round both sides. The simile may¹⁰ be a fanciful one, but I¹¹ thought the body of a man thus ornamented¹² was (App. §§ 29 and 30) like¹³ the trunk of a noble tree embraced¹⁴ by a delicate creeper.

Many of the elder people¹⁵ had their feet covered with small figures, so¹⁶ placed as to resemble a sock. This fashion, however, is partly gone¹⁷ by, and has been succeeded¹⁸ by others. Here¹⁹, although fashion is far from immutable, every one must abide²⁰ by that prevailing at his youth. An old man has thus²¹ his age for ever stamped on his body, and he cannot assume²² the airs of a young dandy. The women are tattooed in the same manner as the men, and²³ very commonly on their fingers.

In²⁴ returning to the boat, we witnessed²⁵ a very pretty scene. Numbers²⁶ of children were playing on the beach, and had lighted bonfires, which illuminated the placid sea and²⁷ surrounding trees; others, in²⁸ circles, were singing Tahitian verses. We seated ourselves on the sand, and²⁹ joined their party. The songs were impromptu³⁰, and³¹ I believe related to our arrival. One little girl sang a line³², which³³ the rest took up in parts, forming³⁴ a very pretty chorus. The whole scene made³⁵ us unequivocally aware that³⁶ we were seated on the shore of an island in the far-famed South Sea.—CHARLES DARWIN.

- 1, = appeared. 2, = in (contracted with the Dat. of the def. art.) comparison. 3, = in full vigour (Kraft, f.). 4, Kurvatur, f. 5, auf eine so anmutige Weise. 6, they have a = they are of. 7, varying — details = the single parts of which often differ (ab'weichen) from each other. 8, springs from, geht . . . aus; from — back, vom Rückgrat (spine). 9, to curl round, sich um . . . herum'winden. 10, may — one = is perhaps fanciful (phantastisch). 11, ich dachte bei mir selbst. 12, Use the attribut. const. 13, wie. 14, = which is embraced (umschlingen, insep. comp. str. v.) by (S. 106, N. 23) a delicate (zart) creeper (Schlingpflanze, f.). 15, = men. 16, = which were so arranged that they resembled (gleich, to be like, str. v. governing the Dat.) a sock. 17, = antiquated, veraltet. 18, verdrängt, i. e. displaced. 19, Say 'Although fashion here is far from (weit davon entfernt) being (S. 1, N. 3) immutable. 20, to abide by a thing, bei etwas verbleiben. Use the attributive constr. in this clause. 21, Auf diese Weise, which place at the head of the period. 'Old', here bejahrt; 'to stamp', here aus'prägen. 22, to assume the airs of a dandy, den Stutzer spielen. Render 'not' by 'not possibly', unmöglich. 23, = but generally also. 24, = When we returned to the vessel. 25, Yesterday I witnessed a very pretty scene, gestern bot sich mir ein sehr hübsches Schauspiel dar. 26, = Numerous children. 27, und die in der Nähe stehenden Bäume. 28, = who formed a circle (Kreis, m.), sang verses in their mother-tongue (i. e. native language). 29, = and joined them (sich an'schließen, sep. comp. str. v. refl., governing the Dat.). 30, aus dem Stegreif. 31, = and related (sich beziehen, insep. comp. irreg. v. refl.), I believe (inverted), to (auf) our arrival. 32, the 'line' of a verse is generally rendered by 'Strophe', f. 33, which — parts, welche von den übrigen mehrstimmig aufgenommen wurde. 34, = and formed. 35, made — aware, legte unzweifelhaftes Zeugnis davon ab. 36, = that we found ourselves. 37, here vielbesungen, adj.

Section 172.

AUDUBON¹, THE AMERICAN ORNITHOLOGIST, RELATES HOW NEARLY² A THOUSAND OF HIS ORIGINAL DRAWINGS WERE DESTROYED.

I left the village of Henderson, in Kentucky, situated³ on the banks of the Ohio, where I⁴ resided for several years, to proceed⁵ to Philadelphia on business. I (S. 115, N. 1) looked⁶ to my drawings before my departure, placed them carefully in a wooden box, and gave⁷ them in charge of a relative, with⁸ injunctions to see that no injury should happen to them. My absence was of (= lasted) several months; and when I returned, after⁹ having enjoyed the pleasures of home for a few days, I inquired¹⁰ after my box, and¹¹ what I was pleased to call my treasure. The box was produced¹² and opened; but¹³, reader, feel for me—a pair of Norway rats had taken possession of the whole, and reared a young family among the gnawed¹⁴ bits of paper, which, but¹⁵ a month previous, had represented nearly a thousand inhabitants of¹⁶ the air! The burning heat which¹⁷ instantly rushed through my brain was too great without¹⁸ affecting my whole nervous system. I slept for (S. 166, N. 10) several nights, and the days passed like¹⁹ days of oblivion—until²⁰ the animal powers being recalled into action, through the strength of my constitution, I²¹ took up my gun, my note-book and

my pencils, and went forth to the woods as gaily as if nothing had happened. I²² felt pleased that I might now make better drawings than before; and, ere a period not exceeding three years had elapsed, my portfolio was again filled.—JOHN AUDUBON.

1, John James Audubon, der berühmte amerikanische Ornithologe (oder Vogelkundige), geboren den 4. Mai 1780 in Louisiana, gestorben den 27. Januar 1851 zu New-York, besuchte die Ströme und Flüsse des Westens, um die Vögel zu beobachten und zu zeichnen.

2, nearly a thousand, nahe an tausend.

3, Use the attributive constr., and see S. 7. N. 3, and S. 48, N. 6.

4, = I had resided for (seit).

5, reisen; on business, in Geschäften.

6, to look to a thing, nach etwas sehen.

7, to give a thing in charge to a person, einem etwas übergeben.

8, = with

the express command to protect (bewahren) them from (vor) any (jeder) injury.

9, = and had enjoyed. The pleasures of home, die Freuden der Häuslichkeit.

10, to inquire after a thing, nach etwas fragen.

11, = and after (nach) my

treasure, as I was pleased to call its contents (wie ich dessen Inhalt gerne zu bezeichnen pflegte).

12, = brought.

13, = but have pity on (mit) me,

O reader!

14, zernagt; bits of paper, Papierfetzen.

15, noch vor einem

Monat.

16, der Rüste, which is the poetic form.

17, = which instantly

took possession of my brain (Gehirn, n.). To take possession of a thing, sich einer Sache bemächtigen.

18, um nicht auch mein ganzes Nervensystem zu erschüttern.

19, like — oblivion, im gänzlichen Vergessen alles Geschehenen.

20, = till my

vital powers (Lebenskräfte) were reanimated (wieder angeregt waren, App. § 17) through the strength of my constitution (Natur, f.).

21, Say 'and I was

able (imstande sein) to take up (ergreifen) my gun (Büchse, f.), my sketch-book and my pencils to (S. 19, N. 7) go therewith again as (so) cheerfully into the woods as if nothing had happened (als ob nichts vorgefallen wäre)'. 22, Say

'It gave me pleasure to think that I would now perhaps produce better drawings than ever (je) before; and even before (noch ehe) three years had passed away, my portfolio was again filled with drawings.'

Section 173.

THE BATTLE OF¹ KASSASSIN.

I.

Mahsamah, Monday, August 28, 1882.

At² seven this morning, guns were heard in the direction of Kassassin, which is³ four miles to our front. The troops were called⁴ under arms, the Cavalry, consisting of the Household Cavalry⁵ and 7th Dragoon Guards, saddled *up*, and the Infantry fell⁶ in in readiness to⁷ march to the assistance of the force there under General Graham. That officer, however, sent a⁸ message saying that the firing was in the enemy's camp, and⁹ was inexplicable, except upon the supposition that the Egyptians were fighting¹⁰ among themselves.

At¹¹ eleven o'clock, however, the flags of the signallers at Kassassin were in motion, and (S. 104, N. 19) the news came that the enemy were approaching¹². The Cavalry again turned out¹³ and rode *off* to Kassassin. As the enemy approached, General Graham opened fire with his two guns, and¹⁴ the Egyptian artillery replied. The 19th Hussars¹⁵ came on¹⁶ to the place from Mahuta, where General Willis has his headquarters.

The enemy made no attack, but halted at¹⁷ a considerable distance

from the camp, and kept¹⁸ up a continued shell-fire, but at a distance altogether¹⁸ out of range. Their conduct¹⁹ was, indeed, altogether inexplicable. The Cavalry remained out all day, and the Infantry *here* were kept in readiness to march at²⁰ a moment's notice, but as the enemy made²¹ no movement in advance, they were not called *forward* to the front.

The heat was terrific²² all day, the²³ sun beating down with almost insupportable force upon the wide sand waste. It²⁴ had been hard work for horses and men. No shade was obtainable²⁵, and the hot wind raised²⁶ great dust storms, which penetrated everywhere and made breathing difficult. The brigade of Guards (S. 36, N. 7, A) fell in under arms²⁸ ready²⁹ to march, but the Cavalry returned and reported that the enemy had fallen back³⁰, after³¹ keeping the troops the whole day out in the full force of the sun.

1, bei. The very graphic account of the Battle of Kassassin given in Sections 173-177 was written by the correspondent of the London 'Standard', who was with the cavalry at Mahsamah. Kassassin (also called Kassassin Lock) is four miles west from Mahsamah Station, which, only a few days previous to this action, was captured from the Egyptians by General Drury Lowe. The Egyptians had established a camp at that place, and, after the capture, the Household Cavalry and the Dragoon Guards were stationed there, under the command of General Drury Lowe, as a reserve to the small force that held Kassassin Lock, an important fortified position occupied by General Graham. The enemy, under the rebel-leader Arabi, held the strongly fortified camp of Tel-el-Kebir, about twelve miles west from Kassassin. Arabi's stronghold (Tel-el-Kebir) was stormed and captured by the English under their skilful Commander-in-chief Sir Garnet Wolseley (now Lord Wolesley of Cairo), on Wednesday, September 13, when the rebel-army was totally beaten, and the Egyptian war brought to a successful issue. 2, Say 'This (Heute) morning at 7 o'clock we (man) heard *the* thunder of cannons (comp. n.)', etc. 3, = is situated; to our front = before us. 4, to call under arms, zu den Waffen rufen. 5, Nom. Pl. Gardefürassiere; the 1st Dragoon Guards, das erste Dragoner Garderegiment. 6, fell—readiness, stellte sich in Reih und Glied. 7, um den dort unter General Graham stehenden Truppen zu Hilfe zu eilen. 8, a — saying = a messenger with the information (Nachricht, f.). 9, and — supposition, und daß man sich daselbe nur durch die Vermutung erklären könne. 10, The rebels fight among themselves, die Empörer bekämpfen sich unter einander. 11, = At 11 o'clock, however, we (man) saw the flag-signals (S. 76, N. 22, A) at Kassassin. 12, heran rücken. Comp. 107, N. 13. 13, = got ready (sich fertig machen). 14, which was answered (erwiedern) by the Egyptian artillery. 15, Husaren-regiment, n. 16, on — place = here (hierher). 17, at a = in. 18, to keep up a continued shell-fire, ein ununterbrochenes Bombardement (pronounced as in French) unterhalten. 19, welche außer dem Bereiche der Schußweite lag. 20, Handlungsweise, f.; indeed = really; altogether, ganz. 21, at — notice = any moment. 22, to make a movement in advance, vorrücken. 23, = extraordinary great. 24, = and the sun shone down, etc.; 'force', here Blut, f. 25, = Horses and men had had hard work (here einen schweren Stand haben). 26, = to be found. 27, Staubwolken auftreiben. 28, here hinbringen. 29, to fall in under arms, unter Waffen treten. 30, = and held itself ready to march (sich zum Abmarsch bereit halten). 31, to fall back, sich zurückziehen. See App. §§ 28 and 22. The auxiliary in this clause is best omitted to avoid its repetition, the next sentence containing the same. 31, = after he (i. e. the enemy) had kept (zurückhalten, App. § 30) the troops

the whole day at (bei) the great heat of the sun (comp. n. S. 76, N. 22; use *n* as a connecting link, since fem. nouns ending in *e* in olden times used to take *n* as an inflection for the Gen., Dat., and Acc. Sing., as well as for the Pl.) in the field.

Section 174.

THE BATTLE OF KASSASSIN.

II.

Ismailia¹, Tuesday, August 29,
3 o'clock in the morning.

Scarcely had the Cavalry unsaddled, and² horses and men begun to eat, when the³ sound of artillery was heard (S. 4, N. 4, man) again at Kassassin, and by⁴ the heavy and continuous roar⁵ it was evident⁶ that this time the attack was⁷ in earnest. Again the wearied men saddled their no less weary horses and⁸ prepared to advance. The⁹ sun was still beating down fiercely even at that late hour, and the hot withering¹⁰ wind was raising¹¹ the sand clouds so high that it was impossible to see what was going¹² on, but through the dust and haze numerous¹³ jets of smoke from the guns were visible.

The cannonade increased¹⁴ in violence, and the Cavalry moved¹⁵ away to the right, the¹⁶ Artillery following them, and pressed¹⁷ round towards the flank of the enemy's Infantry. With¹⁸ the movement of such masses of men and horses the dust rose over the whole scene thicker than ever, and it was impossible to obtain¹⁹ more than a general idea of what was going on; while the sun set in²⁰ a red glare over the sandy plain.

The Cavalry pushed²¹ still further to the right until²² hidden from the enemy by some low sand hills, and²³ then goaded their weary horses into as fast a trot as the heavy sand and their weary condition would permit.

It was evident that it was the General's intention to repeat the tactics of the previous fight, and that he meant²⁴ to get round the enemy's rear. It was a striking proof of his confidence in²⁵ his troops that (S. 66, N. 15), with²⁶ tired horses and night approaching, he should attempt this manœuvre against an enemy of unknown strength and with²⁷ fresh horses. Against any other enemy it would have been rash²⁸, but the result proved that General Drury Lowe did not over-estimate the fighting powers²⁹ of his men.

1, Ismailia, then the head quarters of Sir Garnet Wolseley, is 21 miles east of Kassassin, on the Suez Canal. In the morning, morgens. 2, and = and

scarcely had; 'men', here Reiter; to begin to eat, mit dem Essen anfangen. 3, the — artillery, Artilleriefalven. 4, = through, durch; heavy = loud.

5, Kanonendonner, m. 6, = clear. 7, = was meant in earnest (ernstlich, adv.). See App § 17. 8, und rüsteten sich zum Vorrücken. 9, Say

'Even at (zu) this late hour the sun sent down burning rays', and insert the adv. noch before 'burning'. 10, versengend. 11, treiben. 12, to go on, vor'gehen. 13, numerous — guns, zahlreiche aus den Kanonen aufsteigende Rauchsäulen. 14, = became more and more violent (immer with the comparative form of the adj.). 15, to move away, ab'reiten; to the right, nach rechts. 16, = whilst the A. followed them (ihr, to agree with Kavallerie in the fem. Sing.) 17, 'to press round', here feinvärts vor'dringen; towards,

auf; 'of — infantry' may be briefly expressed by 'of the hostile Infantry'.
 18, With — horses, Durch die massenhafte Truppenbewegung. 19, 'to obtain',
 here sich . . . machen; of what was going on, von dem Verlaufe des Gefechts, which
 place after the pron. sich. 20, in — glare, mit blendend rotem Glanze, which
 place before the verb, which stands? 21, vorbringen. 22, until — enemy,
 bis dieselbe den Blicken des Feindes . . . entzogen war. 23, Render 'and —
 permit' freely, and say 'und spornten dann ihre ermüdeten Pferde zum möglichst
 schnellen Trabe an'. 24, gedenken; to — rear, dem Feinde in den Rücken zu fallen.
 The Impf. of the verb gedenken stands, of course, after fallen, accord. to App.
 § 19. 25, welches er zu seinen Truppen hegte. 26, = in spite of
 the tired horses and the approaching (heran'nähen) night. 27, = in the
 possession of fresh horses. 28, unbesonnen, i. e. imprudent. 29, fighting
 powers, Stärke, f.; 'men', here = troops.

Section 175.

THE BATTLE OF KASSASSIN.

III.

Soon¹ darkness came down rapidly upon us. The rattle and roar of²
 combat on³ our left never ceased, and it was evident that the two thou-
 sand Infantry⁴ at Kassassin were hard pressed. Presently⁵ the moonlight
 streamed palely over the grey sand, but the clouds of dust obscured⁶ the
 advancing horsemen, who sometimes trotted, sometimes⁷ walked.

By about seven o'clock we had got in the rear of the firing⁸, and⁹
 wheeled in that direction, advancing¹⁰ very slowly to¹¹ allow the Artillery
 to¹² come up. We could see the flashes of¹³ the enemy's artillery gleam
 on the horizon like the flicker of incessant summer lightning¹⁴.

We slowly drew¹⁵ nearer to the scene of conflict. It was almost dark¹⁶,
 but, unfortunately, we showed up¹⁷ a black mass against the bright
 moonlit sky and ground¹⁸, and¹⁹ the sudden rush of shell through the
 air, followed²⁰ by an explosion far in our rear, showed that the enemy
 had at last discovered us. They²¹ were about fifteen hundred yards²²
 away, and²³ we saw nine flashes, one after another, at short intervals,
 spurt out, no²⁴ longer like sheet lightning, but in angry jets of flame.
 Almost simultaneously the sky above us seemed to²⁴ be torn in pieces as
 by (=through) a mighty hurricane. Shells screamed²⁵ and burst²⁶, and
 shrapnel bullets²⁷ tore up the sand on either side of us.

The brigade now moved²⁸ to the right to²⁹ disconcert their aim, and
 the next salvo of shell missed us. We moved quickly forward, and the
 gunners again saw us, and the shells burst over and around. Yet,
 strangely³⁰, but few were hit, though it seemed as if the storm³¹ would
 mow men and horses down by squadrons³².

1, = Soon after (darauf) the darkness (Dunkel, n.) of the night descended
 (herniedersteigen) rapidly upon us. 2, = of the. 3, zu. 4, Infan-
 teristen. 5, = Now streamed the pale moonlight, etc. 6, = concealed;
 horsemen, Reiterei, f. Sing. 7, zuweisen auch im Schritt dahinvritt. 8, = enemy;
 got = arrived. 9, und schwenkten der Richtung zu, aus der das Schießen kam.
 10, = advanced (vorwärtstreiten) however only very slowly. 11, to allow =
 to (S. 19, N. 7) give time to. 12, Inf. heran'kommen. 13, = of the
 hostile artillery. 14, = sheet lightning, Wetterleuchten, n. 15, to

draw near, sich nähern. 16, The fact of its being dark soon after seven at the end of August is explained when we remember that there is no twilight in Egypt. 17, = we formed. 18, Erdboden, m. 19, und das Saufen einer plötzlich die Luft durchfliegenden Bombe. 20, = which exploded far behind us. 21, = He (the enemy). 22, = steps, Schritte; away, von uns entfernt. 23, Arrange this sentence literally thus: and now saw we nine at (in) short intervals one another (einander) following cannon-shots (Kanonschüsse) spurt out (hervorblitzen). 24, welche nicht mehr dem Wetterleuchten, sondern verzehrenden Feuerströmen glichen; to — pieces, zu zerreißen. 25, saufen. 26, plagen . . . in der Luft. 27, Granaten. 28, abschwenken. 29, um dem Ziele des Feindes aus dem Wege zu gehen. 30, sonderbarerweise. 31, der Kugelregen. 32, men and horses by squadrons = whole squadrons of (von) men (Menschen) and horses.—To mow down, hernie'dermäßen.

Section 176.

THE BATTLE OF KASSASSIN.

IV.

Now¹ tiny flashes, with the sharp ping of bullets, told that the enemy's Infantry were also at work, whilst² a horse here and a man there dropped³ in the ranks.

The battery having (S. 30, N. 4) by this time come up, the Cavalry moved⁴ to the right, in order to⁵ allow them to come into action, and *in* a few seconds, after taking up their ground, our guns spoke⁶ out their answer to the enemy's fire.

The Cavalry now advanced⁷ from the left, the⁸ 7th Dragoons leading. Under⁹ cover of these the Life Guards formed for a charge, and¹⁰ by word of command the Dragoons opened¹¹ right and left to allow them to pass. Already Herbert Stewart, General Drury Lowe's brigade-major, had passed¹² down the line the word: "The Cavalry are to charge the guns!" Sir Baker Russell was in front (=at the head), and shouted: "Now we have them. Charge!"

Away¹³ went the long line, disappearing¹⁴ almost instantly in the darkness and dust, and *away* behind them went¹⁵ the 7th Dragoons, keeping¹⁶ (S. 16, N. 4) on either flank of the Guards.

We¹⁷, remaining in the rear, had the full benefit of the storm and shot which was to greet the advancing horsemen (Reiterei, f.) and of whom (S. 102, N. 4) this moment we saw no more till the battle was over; and only (S. 109, N. 5) then we learned¹⁸ what they had done.

Led by Baker Russell, they charged¹⁹ straight at the guns, sabring²⁰ the gunners as they passed, and²¹ dashing into and cutting down the flying Infantry beyond them. Russell's horse was shot under him, but he seized another and kept with²² his men.

The battle was ended²³ at a stroke, and a scene of wild confusion ensued²⁴; some guns were²⁵ still firing, bodies²⁶ of Infantry still kept up a fusillade, and numerous bodies²⁷ of horses and men dotted the moon-lit plain.

Being now separated altogether from the Cavalry, with²⁸ the enemy intervening between us, myself and two companions endeavoured to find

our²⁹ way round to Kassassin. It was an adventurous ride, for several shells burst near us, but before we reached the camp, the conflict was at an end.

1, = At (In) this moment (App. § 14) flashes of lightning (kleine Blitze) and the sharp ping (Knallen, n.) of bullets betrayed that also the hostile Infantry were (=was) engaged in the attack (beim Angriff beteiligt sein). 2, Place 'here' after 'whilst', and 'there' after 'and'. 3, zu Boden fallen. 4, 'to move', here abziehen, sep. comp. irreg. v. 5, = in order to allow (gestatten) the same (to agree with 'battery') to begin the combat. 6, spoke out their answer to = answered (erwiedern), v. tr. 7, vorrücken. 8, = and (und zwar) the 7th Regiment of Dr. at (an) the head (Spitze, f.). 9, = Under their (dessen) cover (Schutz, m.) formed the Life Guards (die Gardekürassiere) a line of attack (eine Angriffslinie). 10, = and upon a given command. 11, = opened . . . the ranks (Reihen). 12, to pass the word, den Befehl ergehen lassen; down = all along, längs. 13, Die lange Linie sprengte davon. 14, = and disappeared. 15, away . . . went = followed. 16, to keep, sich halten; on, zu, either flank = both flanks. 17, = Since we remained (zurückbleiben) behind all, (so) we had the full effect of the shower of shot (Kugelnregen, m.) 18, = heard. 19, to charge straight at the guns, die feindliche Artillerie sogleich angreifen. 20, = sabred down; as they passed, auf ihrem Zuge. 21, = and dashed (sprengen) into the ranks of the flying Infantry behind the same, which they (sie, f. Sing. to agree with die Reiterei) cut down (nie'dermegeln). 22, bei; men = regiment. 23, = with one stroke (Schlag, m.) at an end (zu Ende). 24, = followed. 25, = thundered still. 26, einzelne Teile. 27, bodies — plain = and numerous bodies (Haufen) of Cavalry were still here and there upon the moonlit plain visible. 28, = and the enemy stood between us. (The verb must stand last, since also this clause is a depending one, co-ordinated to the preceding clause by the conjunction 'and'.) 29, our way round, einen Weg feitwärts.

Section 177.

THE BATTLE OF KASSASSIN.

V.

The Infantry there¹ had indeed had a hot time of it². Hundreds of shells had (S. 29, N. 3) burst in the confined³ space, and the shelter trenches⁴ afforded but *an* insufficient protection. On the left of the position⁵, next to the Canal, were⁶ the Marine Artillery, then came the 46th, and next⁷ to them the 84th⁸, the⁹ slight earthworks sweeping round again in a semi-circle almost to the Canal. The Mounted¹⁰ Infantry were in front under Captain Pigott, who¹¹ has received a wound, having been shot through the thigh.

The Egyptians came on with great bravery, *and* in spite of the¹² heavy fire of our men¹³, were rapidly gaining ground, and would soon have rushed¹⁴ into the entrenchments, when the roar of our guns on¹⁵ their left rear, followed¹⁶ by the rush of our Cavalry, proved¹⁷ too much for them, and from (S. 102, N. 4) that moment they thought only of flight.

Our casualties are surprisingly¹⁸ small considering¹⁹ the fire to which our men were exposed. Lieutenant Edwards, of the Mounted Infantry, was²⁰ shot in the arm, Surgeon-Major²¹ Shaw, of the 46th, was²² killed,

and *some* ten or a dozen men, but, fortunately, the Remington bullet wounds rather than kills; the hospital was crowded²³ with wounded men.

About 10 o'clock the Cavalry came in²⁴ in high spirits over their brilliant achievement. Many, of course, are missing in the darkness, but will, no doubt, turn up²⁵ in the morning. Upon their²⁶ return from the pursuit they²⁷ were unable to find the guns over which they had charged, but these²⁸ will doubtless be discovered at sunrise. After learning from them²⁹ the events³⁰ of the charge, I³¹ started to ride here to get off³² my despatches,—a³³ distance of twenty-four miles. This solitary ride over the dismal desert by moonlight was not³⁴ the least exciting part of an exciting day.

Late³⁵ as it was, I found at (auf) the different posts the men³⁶ busy at work entrenching, and met troops also on³⁷ their march to reinforce those at the front.

The enemy's force³⁸ *engaged* was estimated at 13,000. The Egyptians fought well until our Cavalry and guns took³⁹ them in the rear; and, had⁴⁰ it not been for the gallantry of the defenders of Kassassin, would⁴¹ have carried the position before our reinforcements came upon the scene.

At⁴² the time I left, the losses were unknown, but were⁴³ supposed to be about twenty killed and a hundred wounded.

As⁴⁴ I am writing, Sir Garnet Wolseley and⁴⁵ the entire army are marching to the front.—THE CORRESPONDENT OF THE LONDON "STANDARD."

- 1, there, *ortig*, which is an attributive adj., to be placed before the noun 'Infantry'.
- 2, to have a hot time of it, *einen schweren Stand haben*.
- 3, = narrow.
- 4, *die Schanzgräben*.
- 5, = camp.
- 6, = stood.
- 7, next to them = finally.
- 8, Supply 'regiment'.
- 9, = whilst the insignificant entrenchments (*Verfchanzungen*) swept round in a semicircle almost to (*bis zu*) the canal. 'To sweep round,' here *sich hin'schlingeln*, of which the pron. *sich* must be placed immediately after the subject, and the verb?
- 10, *beritten*, adj.
- 11, = who was wounded (S. 2, N. 1) and had received a shot through the thigh.
- 12, *Nom. das lebhafteste Schießen*.
- 13, = troops; were rapidly gaining ground = advanced rapidly (*schnell vorwärtsrücken*, sep. comp. w. v. intr. Where must you place the verb? and where the separable particle?
- 14, to rush into the entrenchments, in *die Schanzwerke bringen* (str. v.).
- 15, on — rear, an *ihrer linken Flanke*.
- 16, und der darauf folgende un'ermartete Angriff unserer Kavallerie.
- 17, = had not terrified them (*einen in Schrecken jagen*).
- 18, = extraordinarily.
- 19, = if one considers (*bedenken*), that our troops were exposed to a really murderous fire.
- 20, = is wounded; in, an, contracted with the Dat. of the def. art.
- 21, *Stabsarzt*.
- 22, was = kills = and ten or a dozen (*zehn bis zwölf*) men (= privates, *Gemeine*) are killed, but fortunately the Remington bullet (*Kugel*, f.) is but (*nur*) rarely fatal (*ist . . . von tödlicher Wirkung*).
- 23, = quite full of. The wounded man, *der Verwundete*.
- 24, = returned; in high spirits, *höchst erfreut*.
- 25, to turn up, *sich wieder einstellen*; 'in the morning', here *morgen früh*.
- 26, = the; from their pursuit, *von ihrer Verfolgung*.
- 27, Literally = could the Cavalry the cannons, which they had conquered, not find again (*wiederfinden*).
- 28, = the same.
- 29, = the horsemen (*Kavalleristen*).
- 30, = details, *Einzelheiten*.
- 31, *ritt ich nach hier ab*.
- 32, = send off.
- 33, Commence a new period here, and say: 'The distance from Kassassin to here [Ismailia] is (*beträgt*) 24 miles'.
- 34, = by no means, *keineswegs*, adv.
- 35, = Notwithstanding the late hour.
- 36, *Mannschaften*.
- 37, on their march, *welche auf dem Marsch begriffen waren*.
- 38, *Streitkräfte*, pl.; was = were; at

13,000, an 13,000 Mann. 39, = attacked. 40, hätten die Verteidiger
 von Rastaffin nicht eine solche Tapferkeit bewiesen, so, etc. 41, = the enemy
 would. 42, = When I rode away. 43, = were estimated at (auf)
 about, etc. 44, = Whilst. 45, = with.

Section 178.

HOW THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON WAS DECEIVED.

"I (S. 115, N. 1) got famously taken in¹ on that occasion," said the Duke of Wellington once. "The troops had² taken to plundering a good deal. It was necessary to³ stop it, and I issued an order announcing⁴ that the⁵ first man taken in the act should be hanged upon the spot. One day, just as we were sitting⁶ down to dinner, three men⁷ were brought to the door of the tent by the provost. They had been taken in⁸ the act of plundering, and I had nothing for it⁹ but to command that they (S. 4, N. 4, man) should be taken away and hanged in some place where they might be seen by the whole column in its march next day. I had a *good* many guests with¹⁰ me on that day, and among the rest, I think, Lord Nugent. They¹¹ seemed dreadfully shocked, and could not eat *their dinner*. I did not eat myself, but, as I told them, I could not indulge my feelings¹²; I must do my duty. Well¹³, the dinner went off rather gravely; and next morning, sure enough¹⁴, three men in uniform were seen hanging (S. 78, N. 14, *B*) from the branches of a tree close to the high road. It was a terrible example, which produced¹⁵ the desired effect, for there was no more plundering. Some months afterwards I learned that one of my staff¹⁶ had taken counsel with Dr. Hume, and as three men had (S. 29, N. 3) just died in the hospital, they had hung them¹⁷ up and let the three culprits return to their regiments."

"Were you not very angry, Duke¹⁸?"

"Well¹⁹, I suppose I was at first; but²⁰ as I had no wish to take the poor fellows' lives and only wanted the example, and as the example had the desired effect (S. 27, N. 8), my anger soon died out²¹, and I confess to you that²² I am very glad now that the three lives were spared."—
 HISTORICAL ANECDOTES.

1, to be famously taken in, gehörig angeführt werden; once, eines Tages.
 2, = had begun to plunder; a good deal, tüchtig. 3, to — it = to make an
 end of this nuisance, diesem Unwesen ein Ende zu machen. 4, announcing
 that = according to which, wonach. 5, the — act = the first man (der erste)
 whom one would take in the act. To take a person in the act, einen auf
 frischer That ertappen. 6, to sit down to dinner, sich zu Tische setzen. 7, Leute.
 8, in — plundering, beim Plündern. 9, He has nothing for it, es bleibt ihm
 nichts anderes übrig; but, als; in, an; might = could, Impf. Subj.; column =
 army; in its march, vorbeimarschierend, adj. qualifying 'army'. 10, bei; place
 'I think' after 'and'; among the rest = among others. 11, = These
 seemed to be very much shocked (ergriffen) at (von) the occurrence. 12, to
 indulge one's feelings, seinen Gefühlen freien Lauf lassen. 13, Out; went —
 gravely, ging ein wenig ernsthaft vorstatten. 14, auch wirklich, which place after
 the subject, and construe the sentence in the Active Voice with the pron.
 man; men = soldiers. 15, = had. There was no more talking, es wurde
 nicht mehr gesprochen. 16, = one of my staff-officers (Stabsoffiziere); to take

counsel in a matter with a friend, eine Sache mit einem Freunde besprechen. 17, = these; culprits = condemned men (der Verurtheilte, Nom. Sing.). 18, Waren Gure (Gw.) Hoheit nicht sehr erzürnt darüber? 19, Nun ja, anfangs vielleicht war ich's. 20, = however (aber), since I did not wish (wollen) the death of the poor fellows, but (sondern) only the example (Here follows the verb). 21, 'to die out', here ersterben, insep. comp. str. v. 22, To avoid a repetition of subordinate clauses, say: 'that I am very glad (froh) now at (über) the preservation (Rettung) of the 3 men (Leute).

Section 179.

A LETTER FROM DR. HENRY DANSON TO¹ MR. JOHN FORSTER, ON² CHARLES DICKENS'S³ SCHOOL-LIFE.

I.

My impression is⁴ that I was a schoolfellow of Dickens for nearly two years. He left⁵ before me, I think about fifteen years of age. The school, called (S. 7, N. 3, B) *the* Wellington Academy, was in *the* Hampstead Road at the north-east corner of Granby Street. The school-house was afterwards taken down⁶ on account of the London and North-Western Railway. It was considered at the time⁷ a very superior sort of school, one of the best indeed⁸ in that part of London; but it was most shamefully mismanaged⁹, and the boys¹⁰ made but very little progress. The proprietor, Mr. Jones, was a Welshman¹¹; a most¹² ignorant fellow, and a mere tyrant, whose chief employment was¹³ to scourge the boys. Dickens has¹⁴ given a very lively account of this place in his paper entitled "Our School," but it is very mythical in many respects, and¹⁵ more especially in the compliment he pays in it to himself. I do not remember that Dickens distinguished himself in any way¹⁶, or carried off *any* prizes. My belief is¹⁷ that he did not learn Greek or Latin there, and you will remember¹⁸ there is no allusion to the classics in *any* of his writings. He was a handsome, curly-headed lad¹⁹, full of animation and animal spirits, and²⁰ probably was connected with every mischievous prank in the school.

1, an. 2, über. 3, Charles Dickens, geboren den 7. Febr. 1812 zu Portsmouth, gestorben den 9. Juni 1870 auf seinem Landhause bei London, begann seine schriftstellerische Thätigkeit unter dem angenommenen Namen Boz, welcher ihn schnell berühmt machte. Er begründete seinen Ruf als englischer Humorist durch die 'Sketches of London' (1836), und namentlich durch die 'Pickwick Papers' (1837), welches unstreitig das beliebteste, aber auch vielleicht das beste seiner zahlreichen Werke ist. Er gründete 1845 die Zeitung 'Daily News', sowie 1850 die Zeitschrift 'Household Words', welche seit 1860 den Titel 'All the year round' führt. Er besuchte zweimal, im Jahre 1842 und 1868, die Vereinigten Staaten von Nord Amerika, von wo er das zweite Mal durch seine vielbesuchten Vorlesungen aus seinen eigenen Werken eine reiche Ernte heimführte. Von seinen späteren Werken sind 'Oliver Twist', 'Nicholas Nickelby', 'David Copperfield', 'Dombey and Son', 'Martin Chuzzlewit', und 'A Christmas Carol' die bekanntesten und besten. Es mag interessant sein, hier zu bemerken, daß seit dem Tode des berühmten und höchst beliebten Verfassers (d. h. in 16 Jahren) von seinen Werken 4,539,000 Bände verkauft worden sind. 4, = I remember still, that, etc. Place the advl. circumstance of time 'for — years' before 'a — Dickens'. 5, Supply 'the school' here; before me = earlier than I; I think = and as I think. 6, to take down (of buildings), nie'derreißen. 7, damals; I consider this a very superior sort of school, ich halte dies

für eine ganz vorzügliche Schule.
wirklich) one of the best.

8, one — indeed = and was indeed (auch

9, This institution is most shamefully mis-
managed, diese Anstalt wird ganz außerordentlich schlecht verwaltet.

10, boys =
school-boys or pupils, Schüler; to make little progress, geringe Fortschritte machen.

11, Walliser. 12, most = highly, höchst; 'fellow', here = man; 'mere',

here = real, wahr. 13, darin bestand (comp. S. 87, N. 6); to scourge = to

chastise, züchtigen. 14, Insert 'to us' after the auxiliary; of, über; place =

institution; 'paper', here Schrift, f. Place 'in — School' after 'to us'.

15, und zwar besonders in Bezug auf die Schmeicheleien, die er sich selbst darin zollt.

16, in any way = ever, je; to carry off prizes, Schulpreise erhalten. Use the verbs

in the Pluperfect Subjunctive, accord. to App. § 33; the auxiliary, however,

must be used but once, and this at the very end. 17, = I believe; not

... or = neither ... nor. 18, = and you know. Is there no allusion to

the classics? bezieht er sich nie auf die klassische Literatur? 19, = He was a

handsome boy with curly hair. Full — spirits = voller Leben und Lebenskraft.

20, = who; to be connected with an action, bei einer Handlung beteiligt sein;

a mischievous prank, ein mutwilliger Possenstreich.

Section 180.

A LETTER FROM DR. HENRY DANSON TO MR. JOHN FORSTER, ON CHARLES DICKENS'S SCHOOL-LIFE.

II.

I do not think (S. 64, N. 11) he¹ came in for any of Mr. Jones's scourging propensity; in fact, together with myself, he was only a day-pupil, and² with these there was a wholesome fear of tales being carried home to the parents. His personal appearance at that time³ is vividly brought home to me in the portrait of him taken a few years later by Mr. Lawrence. He resided (S. 116, N. 17) with⁴ his friends, in a very small house in a street leading out of Seymour Street, north of Mr. Judkin's chapel.

Depend on it, he was *quite* a self-made man, and his wonderful knowledge and command (Beherrschung, f.) of the English language must⁵ have been acquired by long and patient study after leaving his last school.

I have no recollection of the boy you name⁶. Dickens's chief⁷ associates were, I think⁸, Tobin, Mr. Thomas, Bray, and myself. The first named⁹ was his chief ally, and his acquaintance with him appears to have continued many¹⁰ years *afterwards*. About that time¹¹ the Penny and Saturday magazines (S. 71, N. 2) were published weekly, and *were* greedily read by (S. 106, N. 23) us. We kept bees, white mice, and other living things, clandestinely¹², in our desks, and the mechanical arts were a good deal cultivated, in¹³ the shape of coach-building, and making pumps and boats, the motive power of which was the white mice.

I think at that time Dickens took to writing¹⁴ small tales, and we had a sort of club for¹⁵ lending and circulating them. Dickens was also very strong¹⁶ in using a sort of lingo, which made us¹⁷ quite unintelligible to bystanders.

1, = that he had to suffer from the scourging propensity (Prügelmanie, f.) of his teacher, for, like myself, etc. 2, und diesen gegenüber war stets zu befürchten, daß sie bei den Eltern zu Hause aus der Schule plaudern würden. 3, Sein damaliges Aussehen; is vividly brought home to me = is again vividly brought (führen) before my (S. 43, N. 9, A and B) eyes; in—Lawrence (Liter.) = 'through the some years later by (von) Mr. L. painted picture of him', which place immediately after the copula (wird) and the dative of the personal pronoun indicating the possessor. 4, bei; in — Street = in a side-street (comp. n. S. 76, N. 22, B [n]), not far from Seymour Street. 5, must — acquired = he must have acquired. To acquire, sich erwerben, insep. comp. str. v. refl.; by, durch; 'long', here langjährig; after — school = after his school-time. 6, = I cannot remember (sich einer Sache erinnern) the boy whose name you mention (anführen). 7, hauptsächlich, adj. 8, Inverted constr. 9, Ersterer; render 'chief ally' by a comp. n., and turn 'chief' by Haupt. 10, Insert the adv. noch before 'many'; to continue, fort-dauern. 11, Um diese Zeit. 12, to keep clandestinely, versteckt halten; things = creatures; a — cultivated, eifrig geübt. 13, in — mice = for we made coaches, pumps and boats, which then were set in motion by the white mice. 14, took to writing = began to write. 15, for—them, Liter. = among (unter) the members of which the same (to agree with 'tales') circulated (zirkulieren). 16, = great; in — lingo, im Gebrauch einer gewissen faulerwälschen Geheimsprache. 17, made us = was; to bystanders = to the uninitiated, den Uneingeweihten.

Section 181.

A LETTER FROM DR. HENRY DANSON TO MR. JOHN FORSTER, ON CHARLES DICKENS'S SCHOOL-LIFE.

III.

We were very strong, too, in theatricals¹. We mounted² small theatres, and got up very gorgeous scenery to³ illustrate "The Miller and his Men," and other pieces. I remember the⁴ present Mr. Beverley, the scene painter, assisted us in this (S. 4, N. 5). Dickens was always the leader⁵ at these plays, which were occasionally presented with much solemnity before an audience⁶ of boys, and in the presence of the ushers. My brother, assisted by Dickens, got up⁷ "The Miller and his Men" in a very gorgeous form. Master⁸ Beverley constructed the mill for us, in such a way⁹ that it could tumble to pieces with the assistance of crackers. At one representation, the fireworks in the last scene, ending with the destruction of the mill, were so very real¹⁰ that the police interfered, and knocked violently at the door. Dickens's after-taste for theatricals might have had¹¹ its origin in these small affairs.

I quite¹² remember Dickens¹³ one day heading us in Drummond Street in pretending to be poor boys, and asking the passers-by for charity, especially old ladies, one of whom told¹⁴ us she had no money for beggar-boys.

On these adventures, and especially when the old ladies were quite staggered¹⁵ by the impudence of the demand, Dickens would explode with laughter and then take to his heels.

I met him one Sunday morning shortly after he had left the school, and¹⁶ we very piously attended the morning service at Seymour Street

chapel. I am sorry to say¹⁷ Master¹⁸ Dickens did not attend in the slightest degree to the service, but (S. 6, N. 10) incited me to laughter by declaring (S. 111, N. 6) his dinner was ready, and the potatoes would be spoiled¹⁹. In fact, he behaved in such a manner²⁰ that it was lucky for us we were not ejected from the chapel.—FROM J. FORSTER'S "LIFE OF CHARLES DICKENS."

1, in theatralischen Aufführungen. 2, = made; to get up, *verfertigen*. 3, Say 'to illustrate (in Scene setzen) the piece', etc. Men, Leute. 4, = that the; scene painter, Dekorationsmaler, which is best placed before the name. 5, der Tonangeber; at, bei. 6, = assembly; boys=pupils; ushers=assistant masters, Unterlehrer. 7, to get up, in Scene setzen, of which the part 'in Scene' is to be treated like the separable particle of a comp. sep. verb. Place the verb immediately after 'brother', and supply 'the piece' before 'The—Men'; In—form=very (*ganz*) gorgeously. 8, = The young. 9, auf solche Weise; with the assistance, mit Hülfe. 10, realistisch; to interfere, sich hineinmischen. 11, might have had=perhaps had. Commence the sentence with 'Perhaps'. 'After-taste', Vorliebe, f.; affairs=performances, Vorstellungen. 12, noch ganz deutlich. 13, =that Dickens led (*an'leiten*) us one day in Drummond Street to pretend to be (*sich gebärden . . . als*) poor boys and to ask the passers-by for (*um*) alms (*milde Gaben*). 14, =observed (*bemerkten*). 15, 'to be quite staggered', here *ganz verblüfft da'stehen*; by—demand=through the impudent demand; to explode with laughter, vor Lachen fast bersten; to take to one's heels, schnell davon laufen; and—heels=and ran then quickly away. 16, =and we went very (*ganz*) piously to church in Seymour St., to attend the morning service (*um dem Morgengottesdienste beizuwohnen*). 17, Ich muß leider bekennen. 18, =that the young D. not paid the least attention to the service. To pay attention to a thing, einer Sache Aufmerksamkeit widmen. 19, =would get cold. 20, = He behaved really so. That—us=that we must (*Impf.*) esteem (*schätzen*) ourselves lucky, not to be ejected from church.—He was ejected from church, er wurde aus der Kirche geworfen.

Section 182.

SIR JOSEPH PAXTON¹.

Sir Joseph Paxton was acting as gardener to² the Duke of Devonshire when the Committee of the Exhibition of 1851 advertised for plans of a building. The architects and engineers seem to have been very much at fault³ when Paxton submitted his design, and its novelty and remarkable suitability for the purposes intended, at once secured its adoption⁴. The first sketch was made upon a piece of blotting-paper in the rooms of the Midland Railway Company⁵ at Derby; and the first rough⁶ sketch indicated⁷ the principal features of the building as accurately as the most finished drawings which were afterwards prepared. The great⁸ idea of the Crystal Palace was as palpable⁹ on the blotting-paper as if it had been set forth in all the glory of water-colour and gold-framing¹⁰.

Was it a sudden idea,—an inspiration of genius¹¹,—flashing upon the mind of one¹² who, though no architect, must at least¹³ have been something like a poet?—Not at all¹⁴. The architect of the Crystal Palace was simply a man who cultivated opportunities¹⁵,—a laborious, painstaking¹⁶ man, whose life had been a life of labour, of diligent self-improvement, of assiduous cultivation of knowledge¹⁷. As¹⁸ Sir Joseph Paxton himself has shown, in a lecture before the Society of Arts, the idea was slowly and

patiently elaborated by experiments extending over many years¹⁹. The Exhibition of 1851 merely afforded him *the* opportunity of putting forward his idea²⁰—the right thing at the right time—and the result was what we have seen.—S. SMILES, "SELF-HELP."

1, Joseph Paxton, geb. den 3. Aug. 1803, gest. den 8. Juni 1865, wurde zunächst Kunstgärtner beim Herzog von Devonshire, zeichnete sich jedoch bald durch seine genialen Schöpfungen so sehr aus, daß der Herzog ihn zum Gartendirektor und Verwalter seiner großartigen Besitzung in Chatsworth ernannte. Die wundervollen Gartenanlagen und Gewächshäuser daselbst legen noch heute Zeugnis ab von seiner Genialität. Das große Gewächshaus, welches aus Eisen und Glas erbaut und 300 Fuß lang und 140 Fuß breit ist, diente ihm später als Grundlage des von ihm eingereichten Entwurfes für das Ausstellungsgebäude von 1851 im Hyde Park zu London und des später von ihm in Sydenham errichteten Krystallpalastes. Seine Verdienste um die große Weltindustrienausstellung von 1851 wurden von der Königin dadurch anerkannt, daß sie ihm die Ritterwürde verlieh. Sir Joseph Paxton wurde im Jahre 1854 zum Parlamentsmitgliede für Coventry gewählt und hat sich um die Baukunst und das Eisenbahnwesen manche Verdienste erworben. Er ist auch der Verfasser vieler Zeitschriften und Werke über die Gartenkunst.

2, to act as gardener to a person, bei einem als Kunstgärtner angestellt sein; advertised — building, öffentlich zur Einsendung von Plänen für ein Ausstellungsgebäude aufforderte. I propose to commence the period with the subordinate clause 'when — building'.

3, to be very much at fault, in großer Verlegenheit sein; to submit a design (of a building), einen Entwurf einreichen. 4, and — adoption = and as the same (agreeing with Entwurf) was quite new and remarkably suitable to its purpose (zweckentsprechend), it was at once accepted.

5, in — company = in the waiting-rooms of the railway station. 6, = hasty, flüchtig. 7, an'deuten. 8, = grand, großartig. 9, klar dargestellt, p. p. 10, as — framing = as if one had embellished (aus'schmücken) it with beautiful water-colours and gold framing.

11, an — genius = the inspiration of a genius (Genie, n., pronounced as in French). 12, flashing — one = which suddenly (auf einmal) filled the mind of a man.

13, Insert the adv. doch before 'at least' (mindestens); something like = more or less. 14, Ganz und gar nicht!

15, to cultivate opportunities, Gelegenheiten zu benutzen wissen. 16, strebsam; of = full of, voller. 17, of — knowledge, und unverdrossenen Strebens nach Kenntnissen.

18, = Like, wie; has shown = declared; in — Arts, in einem vor dem Kunstvereine gehaltenen Vortrage, which place immediately after the subject. 19, 'by — years' may be briefly rendered by durch langjährige Versuche or Experimente, which place after 'idea'; slowly = gradually; patiently, beharrlich; to elaborate, ausarbeiten.

20, of — idea = to bring his idea before (vor) the public (Öffentlichkeit, f.); the right thing, das Rechte; at, zu, contracted with the def. art.

Section 183.

REBECCA DESCRIBES THE SIEGE OF TORQUILSTONE (App. § 5) TO THE WOUNDED IVANHOE¹.

I.

"And I must lie here like a bed-ridden² monk," exclaimed Ivanhoe, "while the game³ that gives me⁴ freedom or death is played out by *the* hand of others! Look from the window⁵ once again, kind maiden, but beware that you are not marked by the archers⁶. Look out once more, and tell me if⁷ they yet advance⁸ to the storm."

With patient⁹ courage, strengthened by the interval which she had employed in mental devotion¹⁰, Rebecca again took post¹¹ at the lattice,

sheltering herself¹², however, by means of a large *and* ancient shield so as not to be visible from beneath¹³.

"What dost thou see, Rebecca?" again demanded the wounded knight.

"Nothing but the¹⁴ cloud of arrows flying so thick as to dazzle mine eyes¹⁵, and to hide the bowmen who shoot them."

"That cannot endure¹⁶," said Ivanhoe; "if they press not right on¹⁷ to carry the castle by pure force of arms (S. 27, N. 8), the archery may¹⁸ avail but little against stone walls and bulwarks. Look for¹⁹ the Black Knight, fair Rebecca, and see how he bears himself²⁰; for as the leader *is*, so will his followers be²¹."

"I see him not," said Rebecca.

"Foul craven²²!" exclaimed Ivanhoe; "does he blench²³ from the helm when the wind blows highest²⁴?"

1, *Ivanhoe*, a novel by Sir Walter Scott, is the most brilliant and splendid of romances in the English language. Rebecca, the Jewess, was Scott's favourite character. The scene is laid in England in the reign of Richard I., who assumes the name of the 'Black Knight' in this story, and we are introduced to Robin Hood in Sherwood Forest, banquets in Saxon halls, tournaments, and all the pomp of ancient chivalry. Sir Wilfred Ivanhoe is the favourite of Richard I. and disinherited son of the Saxon Cedric of Rotherwood. Having distinguished himself as a crusader, he returns to England and, disguised as a palmer, goes to Rotherwood, where he meets Rowena, his father's ward, with whom he is in love; but, through his separation from his true love, we see him more as the friend of Rebecca and her father, Isaac of York, to both of whom he shows repeated acts of kindness, and completely wins the affections of the beautiful Jewess, who, by her gentle, meek, yet noble and high-toned disposition, quite throws into the shade her more successful rival Rowena. In the grand tournament at Ashby Ivanhoe appears as the 'Disinherited Knight', and overthrows all comers. He is, however, wounded, and carried from the crowded lists by Rebecca's servants. After having attended to his wounds, Rebecca and her father are about to transport their friend in a litter to Doncaster, when they are surprised by a number of armed men, headed by the Templar Brian de Bois-Guilbert, who take them prisoners and bring them, along with Cedric and Rowena, who likewise have been made captives, to Torquilstone, the Castle of Front-de-Bœuf, Ivanhoe's enemy. During their imprisonment the castle is besieged by the Black Knight, who, in his adventurous spirit, having joined a band of yeomen and outlaws, demands the deliverance of the prisoners. The castle falls into the hands of the besiegers, Front-de-Bœuf perishing in the flames of the burning castle; King Richard pleads for Ivanhoe to Cedric, reconciles the father to his son, and the young knight marries Rowena.

2, bettlägerig.

3, = combat. 4, Insert 'either' here; gives = brings; played out = is fought out; by, von.

5, to look from the window, zum Fenster hinaus sehen. Use the 2nd pers. sing. when Ivanhoe addresses Rebecca.

6, that — archers = that (= in order that, damit) the archers may not notice thee.

7, ob. 8, heran rücken. 9, unverdrossen. 10, und durch die von ihr zur stillen Andacht benutzte Pause gestärkt.

11, took post = placed herself; at, an.

12, sich verbergen, insep. comp. str. v. refl.; say 'sheltered herself however;' by means of = behind.

13, as — beneath = that she could not be seen from beneath (unten).

14, = a; flying so thick = which fly in such masses (use the Sing.) through the air; 'to fly through', here durchfliegen, insep. comp. str. v.

15, as — eyes = that they dazzle my eyes; and to hide = and conceal from my eyes (Blick, m.); 'to shoot', here ab'schießen.

16, lange so fortbauern. 17, to press right on, schnell vor'dringen; to=and; to carry a fortress by pure force of arms, eine Festung durch Wassengewalt einnehmen. 18, = will; avail, nützen; but = only; bulwarks, Befestigungen. 19, suchen. 20, 'to bear oneself', here sich halten, str. v. refl. 21, so die Geführten. 22, Berruchter Feigling! 23, =to give way, zurückweichen, sep. comp. str. v.; helm=rudder, Steuerruder, n. 24, highest=strongest. The relative superlative of adverbs is formed by placing **am** before the superlative of the adjective, and giving it the dative termination **en**, like the predicative form of adjectives. Comp. S. 120, N. 14.

Section 184.

REBECCA DESCRIBES THE SIEGE OF TORQUILSTONE TO THE WOUNDED IVANHOE.

II.

"He blenches not! he blenches not!" said Rebecca, "I see him now; he leads a body of men¹ close under the outer barrier² of the barbican. They pull down the piles and palisades; they hew down the barriers with axes.—His high black plume floats abroad over the throng³, like a raven over the field of the slain⁴.—They have made a breach in the barriers—they rush in—they are thrust back! Front-de-Bœuf heads the defenders; I see his gigantic form above the press⁵. They throng⁶ again to (S. 72, N. 4) the breach, and the pass is disputed hand to hand and man to man⁷. God of Jacob! it is the meeting of two fierce tides—the conflict of two oceans moved by adverse winds⁸!"

She turned her head from the lattice, as if (S. 27, N. 7) unable longer to endure a sight so terrible (S. 128, N. 11).

"Look forth again, Rebecca," said Ivanhoe, mistaking⁹ the cause of her retiring; "the archery must in some degree¹⁰ have ceased, since they are now fighting hand to hand.—Look again, there is¹¹ now less danger."

Rebecca again looked forth, and almost immediately exclaimed: "Help, O prophets of the law! Front-de-Bœuf and the Black Knight fight hand to hand on¹² the breach, amid¹³ the roar of their followers¹⁴, who watch¹⁵ the progress of the strife.—Heaven strike¹⁶ (App. § 34) *with* the cause (Sache, f.) of the oppressed and the captive!"

She then¹⁷ uttered a loud shriek, and exclaimed: "He is down¹⁸!—He is down!"

1, eine Schar Kämpfer. 2, 'barrier' may here be rendered by Befestigungen, Schanzpfähle, or Verschanzungen. Every Gothic castle and city had, beyond the outer walls, a fortification composed of palisades, called the barriers, which were often the scene of severe skirmishes, as these had necessarily to be carried before the walls themselves could be approached. The 'barbican' or 'barbican' was the outer wall of an ancient castle or town, and may be rendered by 'Zwingmauer, f.' 3, flattert hoch über der Menge in der Luft umher. 4, = battle-field. 5, Gedränge, n. 6, to throng=to press forward, sich vorwärts drängen, sep. comp. w. v. refl. 7, and —man=they fight for (um) the pass (Durchgang, m.) and struggle (kämpfen) man against man. 8, it — winds=it is like the meeting (Aneinanderstoßen) of two fierce tides (Sturmflut, f.), like the conflict (Zusammenfließen, n.) of two oceans (Weltmeer, n.) which are moved (forttreiben, sep. comp. str. v.) by adverse (entgegengeßetzt) winds. 9, unrichtig deuten. Construe accord. to S. 16, N. 4;

of her retiring = of this movement. 10, in some degree = almost.
 11, there is, es ist . . . vorhanden. Comp. S. 104, N. 19. 12, vor.
 13, während, with Gen. 14, Anhänger. 15, mit Aufmerksamkeit
 verfolgen. 16, = defend, v. tr. 17, = hereupon, which place first.
 To utter a shriek, einen Schrei ausstoßen. 18, = fallen.

Section 185.

REBECCA DESCRIBES THE SIEGE OF TORQUILSTONE TO THE WOUNDED IVANHOE.

III.

"Who is down?" cried Ivanhoe; "for¹ our dear Lady's sake, tell me who has fallen?"

"The Black Knight," answered Rebecca faintly²; then instantly again shouted with joyful eagerness³: "But⁴ no—but no!—the name of the Lord of hosts be blessed⁵!—he is on foot⁶ again, and fights as if there were twenty men's strength in his single arm⁷.—His sword is broken—he snatches⁸ an axe from a yeoman—he presses⁹ Front-de-Bœuf with blow on blow.—The giant stoops and totters like an oak under the steel of the woodman¹⁰—he falls—he falls!"

"Front-de-Bœuf?" exclaimed Ivanhoe.

"Front-de-Bœuf!" answered the Jewess; "his men¹¹ rush to the rescue¹², headed (S. 102, N. 3) by (von) the haughty Templar¹³—their united force compels the champion¹⁴ to pause.—They drag Front-de-Bœuf within the walls¹⁵."

"The assailants have won¹⁶ the barriers, have they not?" said Ivanhoe.

"They have—they have¹⁷!" exclaimed Rebecca—"and they press¹⁸ the besieged hard upon the outer wall; some plant ladders¹⁹, some swarm like bees (S. 3, N. 2) and endeavour to ascend upon the shoulders of each other²⁰—down go²¹ stones, beams, and trunks of trees upon their heads, and as fast as they bear the wounded to the rear²², fresh men²³ supply their places in the assault.—Great God, hast thou given men thine own image²⁴, that (S. 183, N. 6) it should be thus cruelly defaced²⁵ by²⁶ the hands of their brethren?"

1, =for the sake of (um . . . willen) the holy Virgin. 2, mit schwacher Stimme. 3, then — eagerness = but cried immediately (gleich darauf) with joyful surprise. 4, Doch. 5, gepriesen. 6, to be on foot, auf den Beinen sein. 7, as — arm = as if (als ob) his arm possessed (Impf. Subj. App. 33) the strength of 20 men. 8, to snatch a thing from a person, einem etwas entreißen, insep. comp. str. v. tr.; a yeoman, ein Freisasse, m. Comp. App. § 5; 'axe', here = battle-axe, Streitart, f. 9, 'to press', here weiter zurückdrängen, sep. comp. w. v. tr.; with blow on blow, mit jedem Schläge. 10, = wood-cutter. 11, Leute. 12, He rushed to my rescue, er eilte mir zu Hülfe. 13, Der Tempelherr war Brian de Bois-Guilbert. Comp. S. 183, N. 1. 14, = hero; to pause = to stop fighting, mit dem Fechten in's zu halten. 15, 'within the walls' may be briefly rendered by hinein. 16, = taken, einnehmen, sep. comp. irreg. v. tr.; turn 'barriers' by Verschanzungen; have they not? nicht wahr? 17, Ja — ja! 18, here beedrängen; hard, heftig; upon, auf, with Dat. 19, to plant ladders, Leitern an die Mauer stellen.

20, = of the others. 21, down go, es werden . . . herniedergeworfen. Comp. S. 104, N. 19. 22, and — rear = and as soon as (so wie) the wounded are carried away (hinwegtragen). Comp. S. 2, N. 1. 23, = other combatants (Streiter). He supplied my place in the assault of the castle, er nahm meine Stelle bei der Erstürmung des Schlosses wieder ein. 24, Say 'hast thou created men (S. 134, N. 9) after thy own image (Bild, n.)'. 25, entstellen, insep. comp. w. v.; Use the Pres. Subj. of the Passive voice, and comp. App. §§ 29 and 35. 26, by = through, durch; the hands = the hand.

Section 186.

REBECCA DESCRIBES THE SIEGE OF TORQUILSTONE TO THE WOUNDED IVANHOE.

IV.

"Think not of that (S. 4, N. 5, *B*)," said Ivanhoe; "this is¹ no time for such thoughts. Who yield? Who push their way²?"

"The ladders are thrown down," replied Rebecca shuddering; "the soldiers lie grovelling³ under them like crushed reptiles. The besieged have the better⁴."

"Saint George, strike⁵ for us!" exclaimed the Knight; "do the false yeomen give way⁶?"

"No!" exclaimed Rebecca, "they bear⁷ themselves right yeomanly—the Black Knight approaches the postern with his huge axe—the thundering blows which he deals⁸ you may⁹ hear *them* above all the din¹⁰ and shouts of the battle.—Stones and beams are hailed down¹¹ on the bold champion—he regards them no more than if they were¹² thistle-down¹³ or feathers!"

"By Saint George," said Ivanhoe, raising (S. 111, N. 6) himself joyfully on his couch, "methought¹⁴ there was (S. 82, N. 7, and App. § 33) but one man in England that¹⁵ might do such a deed!"

"The postern gate shakes¹⁶," continued Rebecca; "it crashes—it is splintered by¹⁷ his blows—they rush in—the outwork is won¹⁸.—O God, they hurl the defenders from the battlements—they throw them into the moat.—O men, if ye¹⁹ be indeed men, spare them that can resist no longer!"

"The bridge—the bridge which communicates with the castle—have they won²⁰ that pass?" exclaimed Ivanhoe.

"No," replied Rebecca, "the Templar has destroyed the plank on which they crossed²¹—few²² of the defenders escaped with him into the castle—the shrieks and cries²³ which you hear tell the fate of the others.—Alas! I see it is still more difficult to look upon²⁴ victory (S. 3, N. 2) than upon battle."—SIR WALTER SCOTT, "IVANHOE."

1, = we have; for, zu. 2, to push one's way, vorwärts bringen. 3, auf dem Bauche. 4, to have the better, die Oberhand haben. 5, = fight. 6, zurückweichen. 7, 'to bear oneself', here sich halten; right yeomanly = like true (echt) yeomen. 8, to deal blows, Streiche führen. 9, = can; See S. 92, N. 5, and App. § 14; above, über . . . hinaus. 10, Getöse, n. 11, = thrown down. 12, than — were = than he would regard (beachten). 13, Distelwolle. 14, = I thought; see S. 64, N. 11; but = only. 15, der

einer solchen That fähig wäre! 16, wackeln. 17, von, 18, = taken, ein'nehmen, sep. comp. irreg. v. tr. 19, ihr; to spare a man, eines Menschen schonen; render 'them' by the Gen. of the demonstr. pron.; that — longer = who can defend themselves no longer. 20, erfähmst; that pass, diesen Durchgang. 21, to cross on a plank, über eine Planke schreiten. 22, = only few; escaped = have escaped (entfom'men, insep. comp. irreg. v., S. 29, N. 3). 23, das laute Schreien und Klagen; you = thou; tell, verrät. 24, 'to look upon a thing', here etwas mit an'sehen, v. tr.

Section 187.

THE FAVOURITE HARES¹.

I.

In the year 1774, being (S. 55, N. 1) much indisposed both in mind and body², incapable of diverting myself either³ with company or books, and yet in a condition⁴ that made some diversion necessary⁵, I was glad of anything that would engage my attention⁶, without fatiguing it.

The children of a neighbour of mine had a leveret given them for a play-thing⁷; it was at that time about three months old. Understanding better how to tease the poor creature than to feed it, and soon becoming weary of their charge⁸, they readily consented⁹ that their father, who saw it pining¹⁰ and growing leaner every day, should offer¹¹ it to my acceptance. I was willing enough to take the prisoner under my protection, perceiving that (S. 66, N. 15), in the management¹² of such an animal, and in the attempt to tame it, I should find just that sort of employment which my case required¹³. It was soon known among the neighbours that I was pleased¹⁴ with the present, and the consequence of it was, that¹⁵ in a short time I had as many leverets offered to me as would have stocked a paddock¹⁶. I undertook the care¹⁷ of three, which it is necessary that I should here distinguish by the names I gave them¹⁸: Puss, Tiny, and Bess. Notwithstanding the two feminine appellatives, I must inform¹⁹ you they were all males.

1, Die in dieser und den drei darauf folgenden Abschnitten gegebene interessante Erzählung ist den Schriften des wohlbekannten englischen Dichters und Schriftstellers William Cowper entnommen, welcher am 26. November 1731 im Pfarrhause von Great Berkhampstead in Hertfordshire geboren wurde und am 25. April 1780 starb. Seine beste Schöpfung ist unstreitig die von ihm mit dem Titel: 'The Task' benannte Dichtung, durch welche er seinen Ruf als Dichter begründete, und welche von keinem seiner späteren Werke übertroffen wurde.

2, to be much indisposed both in mind and body, sowohl geistig als auch körperlich zerrüttet sein. 3, incapable — either = and could neither divert myself (sich zerstreuen); with, durch, which repeat before books; or = nor.

4, mich aber dabei so befand. 5, that — necessary = that some diversion was necessary. 6, I shall be glad of anything that will engage my attention, ich werde gern alles ergreifen, was meine Aufmerksamkeit fesseln kann.

7, zum Spielen, which place after the auxiliary 'had'; given them, geschenkt erhalten.

8, to become weary of one's charge, seines Schüglings überdrüssig werden.

9, I readily consented, ich hatte nichts dagegen. 10, sich ab'zehren.

11, should offer = offered it. We offered it to his acceptance, wir boten es ihm zum Geschenk an.

12, = treatment. 13, I hope he will

find just that sort of employment which his case requires, ich hoffe, er wird gerade die für seinen Zustand passende Beschäftigung finden.

14, My father will be greatly pleased with the picture, das Bild wird meinem Vater große Freude machen.

15, Read App. § 21. In order to avoid a repetition of the conjunction daß, it is advisable to construe the clause 'that — me' = there were (es wurden, S. 104, N. 19) offered to me in a short time so many leverets. 'To offer', here zum Geschenk anbieten.

16, as — paddock, daß ich einen Wildpark damit hätte ausrüsten können.

17, Pflege. 18, which — them = the names of which I must mention (anführen) here, in order to distinguish them from one another; I called them.

19, bemerken; you = to the reader; they = the little animals (for which use the diminutive).

Section 188.

THE FAVOURITE HARES.

II.

Immediately commencing carpenter, I built¹ them houses to sleep in. Each leveret had a separate apartment, so contrived² that it could be kept perfectly sweet and clean³. In the daytime⁴ the animals had the range⁵ of the hall, and at night⁶ retired each to his own bed, never intruding into that of another⁷.

Puss grew presently familiar, would leap⁸ into my lap, raise himself⁹ upon his hinder feet, and bite the hair from my temples. He would suffer¹⁰ me to take him up, and to carry him about in my arms, and has more than once fallen fast asleep upon my knees. He was ill three days, during which time I nursed him, kept him apart from his fellows, that¹¹ they might not molest him (for, like many other wild animals, they persecute¹² one of their own species that is sick), and by constant care¹³, and with a variety of herbs, restored him to perfect health¹⁴. No creature could be more grateful than (S. 104, N. 19) my patient after his recovery, a sentiment which he most significantly expressed by licking¹⁵ my hand, first the back of it¹⁶, then the palm, then every finger separately¹⁷, then¹⁸ between all *the* fingers, as if (S. 27, N. 7) anxious to leave no part of it unsaluted; a ceremony¹⁹ which he *never* performed but once again²⁰ upon a similar occasion.

1, I became at once a carpenter and made, etc. 2, einrichten; see S. 7, N. 3, B. 3, rein und sauber. 4, Des Tages. 5, We had the range of the whole house, wir konnten im ganzen Hause umherlaufen.

6, des Nachts. 7, never — other = and none ever (je) went (sich begeben) into the bed of another.

8, would leap = leapt. Comp. S. 101, N. 22. 9, = placed himself.

10, = He allowed (gestatten) me; has fallen = fell; to fall asleep, einschlafen.

11, = in order that, damit; might = could. 12, = torment, quälen; one —

sick = the sick ones of their own species (Gattung, f.). 13, = nursing,

Pflege, f.; with a variety = various. 14, He restored me to perfect health,

er stellte meine Gesundheit ganz wieder her. 15, durch das Belecken. 16, und

zwar beleckte er zuerst den Rücken derselben. 17, = singly, adj., to be

placed before 'finger'. 18, = and finally he licked even, beleckte er

mich auch. 19, here Höflichkeit, f. 20, but once again, nur noch

einmal; upon, bei.

Section 189.

THE FAVOURITE HARES.

III.

Finding him extremely tractable, I made it my¹ custom to carry him always after breakfast into the garden, where he hid himself generally under the leaves of a vine, sleeping² or chewing the cud till evening; in the leaves also of that vine he found a favourite repast³. I had not long habituated him to *this taste of liberty*, before⁴ he began to be impatient for the return of the time⁵ when he might enjoy it⁶. He would invite me to the garden⁷ by drumming (S. 111, N. 6) upon my knee, and by (S. 185, N. 26) a look of such expression⁸ as it was not possible to misinterpret. If the⁹ rhetoric did not immediately succeed, he would take the skirt of my coat (S. 36, N. 7, A) between his teeth, and pull it with all *his* force¹⁰. Thus Puss might be said to be perfectly tamed¹¹; the shyness of his nature was done away¹², and, on the whole¹³, it was visible by many symptoms, which I have not room to enumerate¹⁴, that he was happier in human society than when (S. 27, N. 7) shut up with¹⁵ his natural companions.

Not so Tiny; upon him the kindest¹⁶ treatment had not the least effect. He too was sick, and in his sickness had an equal share of my attention¹⁷; but when, after his recovery, I took the liberty to stroke him, he would grunt, strike with his fore feet, spring forward, and bite¹⁸. He was, however¹⁹, entertaining in his way; even his surliness was matter of mirth²⁰, and in his play he preserved such an air of gravity²¹, and performed his feats with such solemnity of manner²², that in (an) him too I had an agreeable companion.

- 1, zur. 2, Use this and the following verb in the Imperfect, preceded by 'and'; to chew the cud, sein Futter wiederkäuen. 3, in — repast, auch aß er die Blätter des Weinstocks besonders gern. 4, = when; insert the adv. schon after 'he'. 5, to — time = to long impatiently for the time. 6, when — it = when (S. 131, N. 4) he could again enjoy this liberty. 7, = to come into the garden with him. 8, Render 'of such expression' by the adj. 'expressive'; as = that, followed by man and the active form of the verb. 9, = his; and construe according to the following example: He will never succeed, er wird nie seinen Zweck erreichen. 10, Supply the adv. 'forward' after this noun. 11, Say 'And so (somit) I may (dürfen) perhaps (wohl) say of "Puss" that he was quite tamed'. 12, = his natural shyness was conquered. 13, überhaupt; visible = clear. 14, = which (S. 66, N. 15) on account of want of (an) room I cannot enumerate here. 15, 'to be shut up', here sich ausschließlich befinden; with, bei. 16, reichlich. 17, in — attention = and during his sickness I nursed him with equal (gleich) attention. 18, Supply 'at (nach) me' here. 19, Supply 'also' here; in, auf. 20, = amusing. 21, = such a grave air (Miene, f.). 22, = solemn dignity.

Section 190.

THE FAVOURITE HARES.

IV.

Bess, who died soon after he was full grown¹, and whose death was occasioned by his being turned (S. 161, N. 21, and S. 87, N. 6) into his

box, which had been washed, while it was yet damp², was a hare of great humour and drollery³. Puss was tamed by gentle usage; Tiny was not to be tamed at all; and Bess had a⁴ courage and confidence that made him tame from the beginning⁵. I always admitted them into the parlour after supper, when (S. 131, N. 4), the⁶ carpet affording their feet a firm hold, they would frisk, *and* bound, and play *a* thousand gambols, in⁷ which Bess, being remarkably strong and fearless, was always superior to the rest. One evening, the cat being in the room, it had the hardness to pat Bess upon the cheek, an indignity which⁸ he resented by drumming upon her (S. 43, N. 9, *B*) back with such violence that the cat was happy to escape from *under* his paws, and⁹ hide herself.

I describe the animals as having had each a character of his own¹⁰. Such they were in fact¹¹, and their countenances were so expressive of that character, that, when I looked only on the face of either, I immediately knew which it was¹².—WILLIAM COWPER, "THE GENTLEMAN'S MAGAZINE, 1784."

1, völlig ausgewaschen sein. 2, which — damp = which after having been washed (nach der Reinigung) was yet damp. 3, = was a very facetious *and* droll hare. 4, = so much. 5, = that he became tame from the very (gleich im) beginning. 6, Place the clause 'the — hold' after 'they — gambols': To play gambols possierliche Lustsprünge machen. 7, in which = in (bei) which games. 8, an indignity which = which offence. 9, Say 'and to be able to hide herself'. 10, as — own = as if each of the same had had (Pluperf. Subj.) his own character. 11, = That was however (aber auch) really the case. 12, that — was = that from (aus) the face of each I could at once distinguish (erkennen) who it (= he) was.

Section 191.

PRINCE BISMARCK'S HOME¹.

After crossing the threshold I found myself in a small, plain apartment—the reception-room—in the centre of which stands a simple little polished table with four legs. This is a relic of historical significance. A brass plate let into the square top² bears *the* following inscription: "At this table the preliminaries of peace between Germany and France were signed, February 26th, 1871, at Versailles, No. 14 Rue de Provence." In the centre of the table is³ a round piece *of* green cloth, and on it are visible a number of spots⁴ caused by (S. 185, N. 26) the drippings⁵ from the candles used on the momentous occasion of the negotiations between the Chancellor and Jules Favre⁶. The table was the property of the lady in whose house the Chancellor was quartered⁷, and of whom he bought it. In the same room stands a gigantic wardrobe richly sculptured⁸, and a second wardrobe (S. 5, N. 2), according to Castellan (S. 10, N. 2) Hackmack's explanation, was made from⁹ the wood of a linden tree, in the shade of which Prince Bismarck, when a¹⁰ merry student at Göttingen, had frequently reposed. The adjoining room is the Prince's study. A bookcase contains a small library¹¹ for immediate use and for reference, among its books being a French account of¹² the peace nego-

tations of 1871. The writing-desk occupies the centre of the room. A polished fire-screen, highly¹³ ornamented and of Asiatic origin, is a present from the Chinese Embassy in Berlin. On the mantel-piece stands a bronze statuette, about three feet high, representing the Grand Elector—a present from the Emperor. A slip of paper attached to the Marshal's baton in the Elector's outstretched hand, bears the Imperial autograph¹⁴: "To¹⁵ Prince Bismarck—Christmas, 1880,—W." On the wall, behind the statuette, hangs, in a richly gilt frame, a painting by¹⁶ Hüntten, representing the attack of dragons of the guard on French infantry at Mars-la-Tour; the Chancellor's two sons, Herbert and William, being¹⁷ in the midst of the fight.—THE CORRESPONDENT OF THE LONDON "DAILY NEWS."

1, here *Hauseinrichtung*. 2, here *Fisch*; the plate was let into the table, die Platte war in den Tisch hineingelegt. 3, = lies. 4, and — spots = and upon the same one sees still some spots. 5, das *Lesen*; render 'from the' by the Gen. of the def. art., and turn 'used — negotiations' by 'during the momentous negotiations'. 6, Jules Favre, geboren den 21. März 1809 zu Lyon, machte sich zuerst als Advokat einen Namen, beschäftigte sich jedoch später auch mit der Politik, wo er stets zur demokratischen Partei gehörte. Nach der Februarrevolution von 1848 wurde er Generalsekretär im Ministerium des Innern, dann Mitglied der Nationalversammlung, in der er als Gegner des zum Präsidenten gewählten Prinzen Ludwig Napoleon auftrat. Im Jahre 1858 in den gesetzgebenden Körper gewählt, wurde er nach dem Sturze des Kaiserreichs und der Erklärung der Republik Mitglied der Regierung der Nationalverteidigung und Minister des Aßern, als welcher er im Jahre 1871 zu Versailles und Frankfurt a/M mit dem Fürsten Bismarck über den Frieden unterhandelte. Am 2. August 1871 zog er sich jedoch vom politischen Leben zurück und starb am 19. Januar 1880. 7, = lived (S. 116, N. 17). 8, richly sculptured, mit reicher Bildhauerarbeit verziert, which use attributively, as explained in S. 7, N. 3, A); 'wardrobe', here *Wandschrank*. 9, aus. 10, when a = as. 11, Supply 'intended' (bestimmt) here, and place the words 'intended for (zu, contracted with the def. art.) — reference' before 'library'. 12, über. 13, höchst künstlerisch; and — origin = and made (verfertigen) in Asia, all to be placed before 'screen'. 14, trägt die vom Kaiser eigenhändig geschriebenen Worte. 15, Dem. 16, von. 17, = are, sich befinden.

Section 192.

ROYAL BENEVOLENCE.

Frederick the Great, King of Prussia¹, once rang the bell² of his cabinet; but as nobody answered³, he opened the door of the ante-chamber, and there found his page fast asleep⁴ upon a chair⁵. He went up to awake him, but, coming nearer, he observed a paper in his pocket, upon which something was written⁶. This excited his curiosity. He pulled it out, and found that it was a letter from the page's mother, the contents of which were nearly as follows⁷: "She returned her son many thanks⁸ for the money he had saved out of his salary and sent to her, which had proved a very timely assistance⁹. God would certainly reward him for it, and if he continued to serve God and his king faithfully and conscientiously, he could not fail of success¹⁰ and prosperity in this world¹¹." Upon reading (S. 55, N. 1) this, the king stepped softly into

his closet, fetched a rouleau¹² of ducats, and put it with the letter into the page's pocket (S. 43, N. 9, *B*). He then rang again till the page awoke and came into his closet. "You have¹³ been asleep, I suppose?" said the king. The page could not deny it, stammered out an excuse¹⁴, put, in his embarrassment, his hand into his pocket, and felt the rouleau of ducats. He immediately pulled it out, turned¹⁵ pale, and looked at the king with tears in his eyes. "What is the matter with you?" said the king. "Oh!" replied the page, "somebody has contrived¹⁶ my ruin: I know nothing of this money." "What God bestows¹⁷," resumed the king, "He bestows in sleep. Send the money to your mother (App. § 5), give my respects to her¹⁸, and inform her that I will take care¹⁹ of both her and you."—W. BUCK.

1, Friedrich der Große, König von Preußen, wurde am 24. Januar 1712 in Berlin geboren und war der Sohn des Königs Friedrich Wilhelm I, der den den Künsten und Wissenschaften ergebene Jüngling oft tyrannisch und hart behandelte und ihn selbst gegen seine Neigung im Jahre 1733 mit der Prinzessin Elisabeth Christine von Braunschweig-Bevern vermählte. Nach dem Tode seines Vaters bestieg er am 31. Mai 1740 den preussischen Thron, auf dem er bald Gelegenheit fand, seine bedeutenden Talente als Staatsmann und Feldherr zu bethätigen. Die Geschichte nennt ihn wohl mit Recht den größten Fürsten, Feldherrn und Staatsmann seiner Zeit, und als er am 17. August 1786 auf seinem Lustschlosse zu Sanssouci starb, hinterließ er seinem Nachfolger ein um 1325 Quadratmeilen vergrößertes Reich, einen Schatz von über 70 Millionen Thalern, eine Armee von 200,000 Mann und einen kräftig emporblühenden Staat.

2, to ring the bell,

3, = appeared.

4, in tiefem Schläfe.

5, Supply here sitzen.

6, The clause 'upon — written' may be briefly rendered by 'beschrieben', to be placed before paper, inflected as an adj.

7, were . . . as follows, folgendermaßen lautete.

8, to return a person many thanks, einem vielfach danken.

9, Place the words 'sent to her' before

'money', attributively, and render 'which — assistance' by und ihr sehr gelegen gekommen sei.

10, You cannot fail of success, das Glück kann dir nicht fehlen.

11, = life.

12, Rolle, f.

13, = Thou hast, after which place the

adv. wohl = I suppose.

14, = stammered some words of (der) excuse.

15, = became.

16, erkennen.

17, = gives.

18, give — her,

grüße sie von mir.

19, to take care of a person, für einen sorgen; of —

you = of both of you. He saw both of us, Er sah uns beide.

Section 193.

TELEGRAPHY (S. 3, N. 2) AMONG BIRDS.

I watch¹ a flock² of crows who, by some own correspondent of theirs, have learned that Farmer Blyth will hold a ploughing match on his grounds³, and have in consequence summoned their brethren⁴ to a diet of worms. How unconcerned they look, as if worms were nothing to them⁵! How grave, as if it were an Ecclesiastical Convocation⁶, and they had no thought of earthly things⁷! Yet point⁸ a gun, or anything like it towards them, and in a moment (App. § 14) the young birds even whose backs seemed turned to you⁹ will give a flutter¹⁰ of their wings, which appears an involuntary struggle¹¹, but in reality is as significant a danger-signal as a red flag on a railway¹², and is sufficient to clear the

field. Nor [=And yet . . . not] are those crows exceptionally wise. All their feathered brethren¹⁸ have made a sacred compact¹⁴ that never with their consent shall salt be put upon their tails. The sparrows are not so idle that¹⁵ they do not pass the word to each other when crumbs are falling thick¹⁶ from some rich man's table. The doves, though they look so innocent (S. 27, N. 8) do not spend¹⁷ all their time in cooing love-songs and cradle-lullabies¹⁸, or in pruning their rainbow-feathers. They have a Telegraphy of their own¹⁹, and²⁰ by a mere peck, or a [daß] ruffle of their feathers, can direct each other to the fields where the autumn wheat²¹ is germinating best, or²² the garden where the green peas are fullest and brightest²³.—PROFESSOR C. WILSON.

- 1, beobachten. 2, Schar, f. 3, to hold a ploughing match on one's grounds, auf seinem Felde pflügen lassen. 4, = friends; 'diet', here Gericht, n. 5, This is nothing to me, dies geht mich nichts an. See App. § 33. 6, Kirchenversammlung, f. 7, to have no thought of earthly things, an nichts Irdisches denken. 8, The huntsman pointed a gun towards me, der Jäger richtete eine Flinte auf mich. 9, whose—you=that apparently seemed to turn their (S. 43, N. 9, B) back to thee. 10, to give a flutter, eine leichte flatternde Bewegung machen; of = with. 11, an involuntary struggle = quite involuntary (unwillkürlich). 12, = in the railway-service (S. 36, N. 7, A). 13, = All birds. 14, Supply 'among (unter) one another' here. 15, als daß; to pass the word = to give a hint. 16, to fall thick, im Überflusse auf die Erde fallen. 17, verbringen. 18, in—lullabies, mit dem Gurren von Liebes- und Wiegenliedern. 19, We have a library of our own, wir haben unsere eigene Bibliothek. 20, Here follows the verb 'can'; supply 'with the beak' after 'peck'. 21, = where the wheat in autumn. 22, The prep. 'to' must be repeated here. 23, = stand thickest and best (stön). See S. 183, N. 24.

Section 194.

THE HANSE¹.

I.

About the end of the twelfth century commerce began to extend towards the north of Europe. Along the German shores of the Baltic (S. 36, N. 7, A) sprang up² thriving towns, which sent out ships to (S. 72, N. 4) Russia, Norway, England, and other parts, and exchanged the raw materials which they thus acquired (S. 48, N. 6) for the merchandise of Southern Europe and the Levant, which reached them both by land and sea³. Before⁴ the middle of the thirteenth century, this trade had become so valuable as to excite⁵ the rapacity, not only of numerous pirates who infested⁶ the seas, but⁷ of princes (S. 3, N. 2) and nobles, who exacted arbitrary and excessive tolls.

To defend their interests against these assailants, the chief⁸ ports entered into a league, binding themselves⁹ to [zu] afford mutual aid and protection. Lübeck and Hamburg stood at the head of this association; Bremen ranked next¹⁰; and one after another the principal towns gave in their adhesion, the movement spreading from east to west¹¹. The numbers of the league¹² fluctuated, but at one time it is known (S. 4, N. 4, man) to have comprised more than ninety different towns. In the fourteenth century its authority¹³ extended greatly, for¹⁴ it rallied around it the chief

commercial towns of the interior, such as Cologne, Dortmund, Münster, Brunswick, Magdeburg, etc. The Hanse had for its object the protection and development of commerce, the maintenance of existing and the acquisition of new privileges¹⁵. The association was governed by a Diet¹⁶, to which each town sent representatives, and which met once in three years¹⁷ in Lübeck. As the confederation expanded, it became necessary to divide it into several provinces¹⁸, of which the capitals were Lübeck, Cologne, Brunswick, and Dantzic.

1, Die Hanse. 2, entstehen, insep. comp. irreg. v. 3, welche sie sowohl auf dem Lande als auch auf dem Seewege bezogen. 4, = Already before. 5, = that it excited; place 'not only' before 'rapacity'. 6, unsicher machen. 7, = but also that (to agree with 'rapacity'). 8, = most important; to enter into a league, ein Bündnis mit einander schließen. 9, = whereby they bound themselves (sich verpflichten). Aid and protection, Schutz und Truß. 10, = hereupon came Bremen. 11, and — west = and afterwards one great town after the other joined the league, which expanded (sich ausbreiten) from east to west. 12, Liter. = The number of the towns in the league. 13, = power. 14, for — it, denn es traten ihm . . . bei. 15, The — privileges = The protection and the development of commerce, the maintenance of existing and the acquisition of new privileges were the object (Zweck, m.) of the Hanse. 16, = The business (Angelegenheiten, pl.) of the league was conducted by (durch) a Diet (here den Hansestag). 17, alle drei Jahre einmal. 18, here Bezirke (or Quartiere).

Section 195.

THE HANSE.

II.

In Russia the Hanse found a valuable and most virgin field¹ for its commercial enterprises. Thence it drew² large supplies of timber, flax, hemp, ropes, skins, furs, wax, and tallow; bestowing in return³ (for the trade was only one of barter), salt, herrings, and coarse cloth, for the mass of the peasants; and⁴ brocades, jewels, wines, and other articles of luxury, for the wealthy boyards and princes. A factory at Novgorod conducted these transactions. Another factory at Bergen placed the Hanse in direct contact⁵ with Norway and Sweden. This was an establishment of considerable magnitude, comprising twenty-two courts, and serving not only as a lodging for the staff of agents and clerks⁶, but as a warehouse⁷ for the goods. The chief exports from this quarter were⁸ timber, resin, sperm oil, and, above all⁹, salted fish—a (S. 53, N. 9) commodity¹⁰ in great demand at a time when Europe was still Catholic and fasted faithfully on the appointed days. The Hanse had¹¹ two other large factories, one in Bruges, employing three hundred agents, and another in London.

Year by year¹² the Hanse grew more rich and powerful. New branches of business were opened up, new factories were founded. Kings and princes were glad¹³ to be on good terms with so influential a body. Ambassadors from the Kings of England, France, Sweden, and Denmark, and even from the Emperor himself, waited on¹⁴ the Diet, to

ask¹⁵ favours, and to offer trading privileges in return. The original object of the league—mutual protection—was reasonable and legitimate, but was gradually expanded into¹⁶ a policy of forcible aggression and imperious monopoly. Not only were foreigners, in¹⁷ their voyages to (S. 72, N. 4) the Hanse towns, compelled to employ Hanseatic ships, but¹⁸ the commerce of the north-east and west of Europe was almost exclusively in the hands of the league.

1, and most virgin field = and hitherto quite unused field. 2, beziehen, insepar. comp. irr. v. tr. 3, bestowing in return = Liter. which it (sie, to agree with die Hanse) for (gegen) . . . exchanged. The verb stands, of course, after 'princes', and the clause 'for — barter' is best placed after it. 4, Repeat the preposition gegen here. 5, Place 'in — contact' after 'Sweden'. 6, for — clerks, den Beamten und Unterbeamten, which place after 'only'. Render 'as a' by zu, contracted with the dat. of the def. art. 7, = but was also used as a (als) warehouse. 8, bestanden aus. 9, = but especially. The prep. aus must be repeated here. 10, Artikel, m.; in — demand, welcher . . . in großer Nachfrage stand. 11, Supply the adv. noch here. 12, Von Jahr zu Jahr. 13, froh; to be on good terms, auf freundschaftlichem Fuß stehen; with — body, mit dem mächtigen Städtebunde, which place after 'glad'. 14, = appeared before (vor). 15, erbitten; favours, Gunstbezeugungen; in return, dafür. 16, zu; of — monopoly, der Gewaltherrschaft und des Monopols; 'to expand', here umgestalten. 17, auf. 18, but . . . was, sondern es befand sich auch; of = in.

Section 196.

THE HANSE.

III.

There were no bounds to its greed and selfishness¹. It did its utmost to crush all growing trade², navigation, and even manufactures, which in the least interfered with its gains³. It warned away⁴ all strangers⁵ from the Baltic; and when it found them there, it seized and destroyed their vessels⁶. In order to maintain this monopoly, it⁷ was ready to make⁸ the greatest sacrifices, to equip fleets, and sustain long and costly campaigns. With Denmark it waged a desperate war; and it also came into collision⁹ with Sweden and Norway. From¹⁰ these contests it came off victorious, and the whole of Scandinavia was compelled to acknowledge its commercial supremacy¹¹. It¹² had a rupture also with the Netherlands, whose flag it banished from the Baltic¹³.

These unbounded pretensions naturally excited a great deal of ill feeling¹⁴ against the Hanse, and, in the end, proved fatal¹⁵ to it. One after another¹⁶, the markets which it had been accustomed to regard as its own private estates, threw off their allegiance, and admitted¹⁷ the traders of other nations. Then¹⁸ *it was that* the league began to suffer in another way from its narrow-minded selfishness. As long as it had exclusive command of¹⁹ foreign sources of supply, it did not trouble itself to develop the resources of Germany—indeed it rather endeavoured²⁰ to repress them, when it thought that others were likely to profit by them; but when one by one its monopolies exploded²¹, it found reason to re-

pent that it had neglected to cultivate²² the productive powers of its own country.

These causes, combined²³ with the change²⁴ of route to India, led to the gradual decline of this famous confederation²⁵; and at the last general assembly, held at Lübeck in 1630, the deputies from the several cities appeared merely to declare their secession²⁶. In a modified form²⁷, however, the Hanse lingered on²⁸ till the beginning of the present century—the²⁹ shadow of a great name. The Free Cities of Lübeck, Hamburg, Bremen, and Frankfort-on-the-Maine, are now only nominally the representatives of the Hanse.—J. H. FYFE.

1, = Its greed and selfishness had no bounds. 2, to crush all growing trade, *allen Handel . . . im Keime zu ersticken*; the adj. 'all' must be repeated before the two following nouns. 3, which — gains, *sobald die Interessen des Bundes im geringsten dadurch beeinträchtigt wurden*. 4, = drove away. 5, = foreign ships. 6, their vessels = them. The passage 'and — vessels' is best rendered by the Passive Voice. 'To seize', here mit *Beschlag* belegen. 7, = the league. 8, to make a sacrifice, *ein Opfer bringen*. 9, to come into collision with a person, *sich mit einem entzweien*. 10, *Aus*; to come off, *hervorgehen*; it = the same. 11, *dessen kommerzielle Überlegenheit*. 12, It is better, for the sake of distinctness, to change the pronoun 'it' into 'the league'. 13, Use the Passive Voice to render 'whose — Baltic'. 14, a — feeling = great hatred. 15, to prove fatal = to become dangerous. 16, Place 'one — another' after 'threw', and commence the sentence with 'The markets'; it = the same; as — estates, *als ihre eigenen Gebiete*; threw off their allegiance, *warfen . . . das ihnen aufgedrungene Joch von sich*. 17, 'to admit a person', here *einem den Zutritt gestatten*. 18, = Upon that. 19, *Gewirchenschaft* über; sources of supply, *Zufuhrquellen*. 20, *er bemühte sich vielmehr*. 21, but — exploded = but when its monopolies (*Handelsprivilegien*) were one after another taken away (*entreißen*) from it (*ihm*, to be placed after 'monopolies'). 22, to cultivate = the cultivation (*Pflege*, f.); 'the — country' may be briefly rendered by *der inländischen Produktionskraft*. 23, = in combination. 24, *Verlegung*, f.; route, *Landweg*, m. 25, *Städtebund*, m. 26, *der Austritt aus dem Bunde*. 27, *beschränkt*. 28, however, the Hanse lingered on, *fristete die Hanse jedoch noch . . . ein kümmerliches Dasein*. 29, = the mere.

Section 197.

COMING TO TERMS¹.

One of the most distinguished artists in Paris² painted for a lady occupying a brilliant position in society her portrait³, with⁴ the intention of placing it in an exhibition afterwards. The lady, although a long time celebrated for her beauty⁵, had arrived at that age⁶ which is seldom admitted (fifty years), but⁷ endeavoured to conceal it through cosmetics, and showed herself as beautiful and captivating as in her younger days [=years]. Paris is full of resources, and ointments are to be obtained there⁸ to heal the wounds of time.

Our heroine had her portrait taken⁹ in the most graceful attitude; splendidly dressed, and leaning on an arm-chair, she looked smiling into the glass, which should return¹⁰ her the most amiable compliments.

The painter made¹¹ a most striking likeness, but this was a great mistake—a flattering one was expected¹², and the lady subsequently¹³ declared that she did not recognise herself (App. § 28) in this painting, and the portrait was left on the painter's hands¹⁴. The artist, feeling himself hurt in his pride, was too good a philosopher to keep a portrait worth three thousand francs quietly on his hands¹⁵, and an idea of vengeance presented itself to his mind¹⁶, which he put into execution at once.

A short time before the day fixed for¹⁷ the opening of the art-exhibition at the Louvre¹⁸, the lady was secretly informed that her portrait was ornamented with certain accessories rather compromising her¹⁹. She went immediately to the artist. There was the portrait! It was the same striking likeness certainly; but the painter had thinned the hair, and the lady so faithfully painted²⁰ held in her hand two large tresses of false hair. On the toilet table were several small bottles, labelled thus²¹: "White-Wash," "Vegetable Red," "Cosmetic²², to efface wrinkles," "Lotion, to dye the hair in a minute²³."

"It is abominable," said the lady, greatly excited.

"Of what do you complain?" coolly replied the artist. "Did you not declare (S. 48, N. 2, and App. § 28) that it was not your portrait? You are right, it is a mere fancy sketch²⁴, and as such I shall send it to the exhibition."

"What, Sir, do you intend to exhibit this painting?"

"Certainly²⁵, Madam; but as a cabinet picture²⁶, since the catalogue will indicate it under the title of 'The Coquette of Fifty Years.'"

At this the lady fainted, but soon recovered, and then paid at once for the portrait²⁷. The accessories were effaced²⁸ in her presence, the portrait was restored to its original state, and the three thousand francs were transferred²⁹ to the purse of the painter.—THE YOUNG LADIES' JOURNAL.

1. = The Compromise.

2. An artist in Berlin, ein Berliner Künstler.

3. 'painted—portrait' may be briefly rendered = painted the portrait of a high-placed (hochgestellt) lady.

4. in.

5. = Although the lady was for

a long time (seit lange) celebrated for (wegen) her beauty (see S. 27, N. 8).

6. = she had now reached that age; admitted = confessed (eingestanden).

7. = however, to be placed after 'endeavoured'.

8. and — time = and

offers (darbieten) ointments, which heal all the wounds of time.

9. to have

one's portrait taken, sich malen lassen.

10. = tell.

11. schaffen, str. v.

tr.; a most striking likeness, ein höchst ähnliches Bild.

12. = the lady expected one that flattered her (S. 48, N. 6).

13. mithin, to be placed after

'declared'.

14. and — hands = and refused the acceptance of the same (to

agree with 'painting').

15. to keep a portrait quietly on one's hands, ein

Portrait ganz ruhig bei sich liegen lassen.

16. and — mind = and devised a plan

of vengeance (S. 36, N. 7, A).

17. zu.

18. im Louvre.

19. daß

ihr Portrait mit gewissen sie kompromittierenden Zusätzen verziert sei.

20. und

die treu nach der Natur gemalte Dame; a tress of false hair, eine falsche Haarflechte.

21. = with the following labels (Etifette, f.).

22. Schönheitswasser.

23. Haars-

tinctur zum augenblicklichen Färben der Haare.

24. = it is only the production

of my fancy.

25. Allerdings.

26. als Genrebild, the first component of

which being pronounced as in French.

27. for — portrait = the price of

the picture.

28. beseitigen.

29. ein verleiben, p. p. einverleibt.

Section 198.

FALSE PRIDE.

Have pity on¹ the youth who is ashamed to be seen carrying² a parcel. Such a youth will never climb the hill³; he will never be honoured and respected by sensible, respectable⁴ men. And yet how many there are (S. 82, N. 7) who have the failing⁵. Do you know the story of the young man who came *down* from a country town of New Hampshire, and entered the great wholesale establishment of the Lawrences—Abbot and Amos—in Boston⁶? He was a young merchant who had just commenced business⁷. He had money enough *with which* to purchase a certain quantity *of* goods, and wished to get as many more on credit⁸, if they (S. 134, N. 4) would trust⁹ him.

Mr. Lawrence shook his head. The young man could offer no security, and the old¹⁰ merchants did not consider it good *policy* to give credit to an unknown and untried young man. The youthful customer did not blame them. He said he should probably do the same himself by one whom he did not know¹¹. "However," he added, "I hope I may grow into your confidence one of these days¹²."

Then he paid *for* the goods he had purchased; and when they had been done up¹³, he was asked where he would have them sent¹⁴. "I will take¹⁵ them myself," was the answer. "But the parcel is heavy," said the clerk. "And I am young and strong," answered the customer. "No, I will take the parcel on my shoulder. I cannot earn half a dollar more easily or more honestly." And he had taken the parcel on his shoulder, and had approached the door, when Mr. Lawrence came out of his office, where¹⁶ he had been a spectator of the scene, and called the youth back. "You can have all *the* goods you want, young man¹⁷," he said. "Make your own selection, and set your own time for payment¹⁸. He who is willing to help himself, will not betray¹⁹ those who are willing to help him."

And the old merchant was not mistaken. That young man became one of his most valuable customers, and one of his valued²⁰ friends.

When Jerome Napoleon Bonaparte, son of (S. 25, N. 5) King Jerome of Westphalia and nephew of the Emperor Napoleon I., was a student of²¹ Harvard College, in Cambridgeshire, he was one day carrying a bundle of clothing²² from his washer-woman's to his dormitory²³, when he was met by a companion²⁴, who asked him, with much surprise, why he had not had the bundle sent to his room.

"Why should I do that?" asked the prince. "Why²⁵," said his companion with a little touch of embarrassment, "you know it doesn't look well to carry one's own bundle like a common labourer."

"Bah²⁶," cried Jerome, laughing, "I trust I shall never be ashamed to be seen bearing²⁷ anything (S. 3, N. 7) that belongs to a Bonaparte!"—
THE NEW YORK HERALD.

1, mit. 2, = with. 3, = Such a one will never get on (vortwärts kommen).
4, solide. 5, = this fault. 6, from — Boston = from (aus) a small town
in N. H. to Boston, and there entered the great (großartig) wholesale establish-

ment (Warenlager) of Messrs. Lawrence—Abbot and Amos? 7, I have just commenced business, ich habe mich soeben etablirt. 8, to get a thing on credit, etwas auf Credit entnehmen; as many more, noch einmal so viele. 9, to trust a person, einem Vertrauen schenken. 10, = experienced. 11, by — know, einem Unbekannten gegenüber, to be placed after 'should' and the grammatical object 'es'. To do the same oneself, es auch so machen. 12, I may — days = that I shall gain (sich erwerben) one of these days (bemaleinst) your confidence. 13, = were packed. 14, = where they should be sent. 15, = carry. 16, von wo; to be a spectator of a scene, eine Scene mit ansehen. 17, Herr. 18, to set one's own time for payment, den Zahlungstermin selbst bestimmen. 19, betrügen. 20, = best. 21, was — of = studied in. 22, mit Wäsche. 23, = 'lodging' here. 24, I was met by a companion, ein Freund begegnete mir. 25, Gi; his = the; with — embarrassment, etwas verlegen; you know, doch, to be placed after the verb; to carry = if one carries. 26, = Nonsense! 27, to be seen bearing = to bear.

Section 199.

ANECDOTES OF¹ GREAT STATESMEN.

I.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN².

The night previous to the meeting of the Convocation³ of Chicago, Mr. Lincoln did not get home until⁴ eleven o'clock *at night*. In the morning⁵ Mrs. Lincoln, who possessed a most amiable disposition, remonstrated with her good husband at breakfast. She kindly, but firmly, informed him⁶ that politics⁷ were leading him into bad habits, especially (S. 87, N. 6) to keeping late hours⁸ and drinking at the rum shops. She did not like it; she had to sit up⁹, and also the children were kept awake¹⁰. "And now, Abraham," she continued, "let me tell you¹¹ that to-night I will go to bed at ten o'clock. If you come before that hour, well and good¹²; if not¹³, I will not get up and let you in¹⁴." Ten o'clock came that night, and true to her word, Mrs. Lincoln went to bed with her children¹⁵. About an hour later Mr. Lincoln knocked at¹⁶ the door. He knocked once, twice, and even three times before¹⁷ an upper window was raised and the nightcap of a female looked out. "Who is there?" "I." "You know what I told you, Abraham?" "Yes, but, wife, I have *got* something very particular to tell you. Let me in!" "I don't want to hear. It is political stuff¹⁸." "Wife, it is very important. There is¹⁹ a telegraphic despatch, and I have been nominated for the Presidency²⁰." "Oh, Abraham, this is awful! Now I know you have been drinking. I only suspected it before, and you may just go and sleep where you got your liquor²¹!" And down went the window with a slam²². The next day confirmed the truth of the news that the humble husband had been nominated to rule²³ over millions.—THE NEW YORK HERALD.

II.

PRINCE BISMARCK (S. 138, N. 12) AND LORD BEACONSFIELD²⁴.

Amongst a number of amusing anecdotes of Lord Beaconsfield is one of²⁵ the State banquet given at Berlin at the time of the Congress,

when²⁶ he sat next to Prince Bismarck and opposite to the Crown Princess of Germany. Near to him was a trophy of "bonbons," on the papers of which were²⁷ miniature photographs of the German Emperor and other members of the Prussian royal family. After the feast was over²⁸, the lord was busily engaged (S. 87, N. 6) in securing²⁹ some of these sweets to take home as a [zum] remembrance of the occasion³⁰, when Prince Bismarck suddenly caught him by the arm and so startled him that he dropped his spoil and exclaimed: "I see, not only does Prince Bismarck give nothing away, but (S. 6, N. 10) he does not allow anybody to help himself." The German Chancellor, on discovering (S. 55, N. 1) that he had interrupted Lord Beaconsfield in a feat of annexation³¹, burst into a hearty laugh, and retorted: "It is true that³² I give nothing away; but, as you see, I am always ready for an honest alliance." So saying, he turned to the table and executed an energetic raid upon³³ the "bonbons," part of which he handed over to his British colleague.—THE CORRESPONDENT OF "THE LONDON DAILY TELEGRAPH."

- 1, über, with Acc. 2, Abraham Lincoln, Präsident der Vereinigten Staaten von Nord Amerika, war der Sohn eines einfachen Landmannes und wurde am 12. Februar 1809 im Staate Kentucky geboren. Seine Jugend-erziehung war nur eine höchst mangelhafte, denn man sagt, er habe nur ein Jahr die Schule besucht; trotz der ungünstigsten Verhältnisse gelang es ihm aber dennoch, sich durch beharrliches Selbststudium zum gewandten Advokaten, tüchtigen Redner und einflussreichen Politiker heranzubilden. Er wurde Abgeordneter für die Legislatur des Staates Illinois, Mitglied des Kongresses und des Senats, und ward endlich im Jahre 1860, gerade in dem kritischen Augenblicke, wo die Südstaaten, welche die Ausdehnung der Sklaverei forderten, sich wegen Verweigerung dieser Forderung von der Union lossagten, von den Republikanern zum Präsidenten der Vereinigten Staaten gewählt. Gleich nach seiner Wahl zur Führung des Staatsruders erfolgte der Ausbruch jenes stets denkwürdigen Bürgerkrieges seitens der Union und der sich empörenden Südstaaten, welcher fünf Jahre lang mit mörderischer Wut das Land zerrüttete und endlich mit der gänzlichen Abschaffung der Sklaverei und der Befreiung der Südstaaten endete. Kaum war er jedoch im März 1865 zum zweiten Male durch ungeheure Stimmenmehrheit von der Union zum Präsidenten erwählt worden, und kaum waren die Streitkräfte der Südstaaten auf immer gebrochen und vernichtet, als der gefeierte Staatsmann am 14. April 1865 bei Gelegenheit einer Theatervorstellung im Ford'schen Theater zu Washington der rucklosen Hand eines von der demokratischen Partei angeregten Mörders, des Schauspielers John Wilkes Booth, zum Opfer fiel. So endete das Leben eines Mannes, welcher als guter, rechtschaffener Bürger, als einflussreicher Staatsmann und als edelmütiger Befreier von fünf Millionen Sklaven von seinem Vaterlande stets in dankbarem Andenken gehalten werden wird.
- 3, Konvent, m.; of, zu. 4, not until, erst. 5, Say 'The next morning at (beim) breakfast', and comp. App. § 14. She remonstrated with her good husband, sie machte ihrem guten Manne einige Vorstellungen über sein langes Ausbleiben. The words 'einige — Ausbleiben' must stand at the end of the period. 6, = She told him in a kind, but (doch) determined tone. 7, die Politif, always used in the Sing.; into, zu. 8, to keep late hours, spät nach Hause kommen. App. § 28 and 30. To drink at the rum shops, die Wirtshäuser besuchen. 9, aufbleiben. 10, = could not sleep. 11, = I will tell you. 12, = well, then, I will be glad. 13, Liter. = comest thou however not. 14, ins Haus lassen. 15, Say 'Now, when it (Als es nun) struck ten that night, Mrs. Lincoln with her children went to bed, as she had promised. 16, an, with Acc. 17, ehe; an — raised = a window was opened up-stairs (oben). 18, Unfinn. 19, Es ist ... gekommen. 20, for the Presidency = President. Comp. S. 27, N. 4.

21, = go again and sleep there where you have been drinking! 22, = and the window was closed with a slam (wieder zugeworfen). 23, to rule = ruler. 24, **Benjamin Disraeli, Lord Beaconsfield**, geboren in London am 21. Dezember 1804, gestorben am 19. April 1881 auf seinem Landsitz Hughenden, ausgezeichneter Litterat, berühmter Staatsmann, glänzender Redner und langjähriger Führer der konservativen Partei, steht bei seinen bewundernden Landsleuten jetzt noch in so frischem Andenken, daß es dem Verfasser der Kürze wegen erlaubt sein möge, auf seine glänzenden Erfolge weiter nicht einzugehen. 25, in Bezug auf; use the attributive construction, as explained in S. 7, N. 3, A, and S. 48, N. 6. 26, bei dem. 27, on — were = which were ornamented with. 28, nach aufgehobener Tafel. 29, here sich an'eignen. 30, an das Fest. 31, Annexionsversuch, m. 32, It — that, Freilich. 33, = and made an energetic (tüchtig) attack upon (auf).

Section 200.

THE POWER OF MUSIC.

On one occasion when young Chopin¹ had been travelling for several days in the slow *fashion of* German diligences, he was delighted and surprised, on stopping at a small post-house, to discover a grand piano-forte in one of the rooms², and still more surprised to find it in tune³—thanks, probably, to the musical taste of the postmaster's family. He sat down instantly and began to improvise in⁴ his peculiarly happy manner. One by one the travellers were attracted by the unwonted sweet sounds. One of them even allowed⁵ his beloved pipe to go out in his ecstasy, and the postmaster, his wife, and his two daughters joined the group of listeners. Unmindful of his audience, of the journey, the lapse of time⁶, and everything but the music, Chopin continued to play, and his companions⁷ to listen in rapt attention, when they were suddenly roused by a stentorian⁸ voice, which made the windows rattle, calling out⁹: "The horses are ready, gentlemen!" The postmaster roared out an anathema¹⁰ against the disturber—the postillion—and the passengers cast angry glances at him. Chopin started from his seat, but was instantly surrounded by his audience, who entreated him to continue. "But we have been here for some time," said Chopin, consulting his watch, "and are due in Posen already¹¹." "Stay and play, noble young artist," cried the postmaster, "I will find you courier's horses if you will only remain a little longer." "Do be persuaded¹²," added the postmaster's wife, almost threatening the artist with an embrace¹³. What could he do but resume his place at the instrument? When at last he paused, the servant appeared with wine; the host's daughter served the artist first, and then the travellers, upon which the postmaster proposed a cheer for¹⁴ the musician, in which all joined¹⁵. The ladies in their gratitude filled the carriage pockets with the best eatables and wine the house contained; and when at last the artist rose to go¹⁶, his gigantic host seized him in his arms and triumphantly bore him to¹⁷ the carriage! Long¹⁸ years afterwards Chopin would recall (S. 101, N. 22) this little incident with pleasure, and declare that the plaudits of the press had never given him more delight than the homage¹⁹ of these simple music-loving Germans.—
MANCHESTER TIT-BITS.

1, Frédéric François Chopin, der berühmte Klaviervirtuose und Komponist, dessen melodienreiche Mazurkas, Walzer, Notturmes, Balladen, Polonaisen und Étüden seinen Namen überall bekannt gemacht haben, wurde im Jahre 1810 zu Żelazowa Wola bei Warschau geboren, und starb am 17. Oktober 1849 in Paris, wo er sich seit dem Jahre 1831 niedergelassen hatte. On one occasion, einst. 2, he — rooms = and was stopping at (vor) a small post-house, he was delighted and surprised to discover a grand pianoforte (Flügel, m.) in one of the rooms. 3, to — tune = when he found it in good tune. 4, auf; peculiarly = peculiar; happy = charming. 5, lassen. 6, Zeitverlauf, m. 7, Say 'whilst his travelling-companions listened to him', etc. 8, = mighty. 9, = through which even the windows rattled (erschüttern), and which cried. 10, einen Fluch ausstoßen. 11, I am due in London already, ich sollte bereits in London sein. The words 'said — watch' are best placed after the quotation. 12, sich überreden lassen. 13, die in ihrem Entzücken den Künstler fast umarmt hätte. 14, to propose a cheer for a person, ein Hoch auf einen ausbringen. 15, here einstimmen. 16, here zur Abreise. 17, in . . . hinein. 18, Noch viele. 19, die Ehrenbezeugungen.

Section 201.

THE TWO SCHOOLBOYS, OR EYES AND NO EYES¹.

I.

"Well, Robert, where have you been walking² this afternoon?" said a tutor to one of his pupils, at the close³ of a holiday.

ROBERT.—I have been to Millthorp-Heath, and so round by⁴ the wind-mill upon Camp-Mount, and home through the meadows by the river side.

TUTOR.—Well, that is a pleasant round⁵.

ROBERT.—I thought⁶ it very dull, sir; I scarcely met with a single person. I would much rather have gone⁷ along the turnpike-road.

TUTOR.—To be sure, if seeing men and horses is your object⁸, you are, indeed, better entertained on the high-road. But did you not see William (S. 48, N. 2)?

ROBERT.—We set out together⁹; but he lagged behind in the lane, and so¹⁰ I walked on and left him.

TUTOR.—That was a pity. He would have been company for you.

ROBERT.—Oh, he is so tedious, always stopping to look at this thing or that! I would rather walk alone¹¹. I dare say he is not come yet.

TUTOR.—Here he comes. Well, William, where have you been?

WILLIAM.—Oh, the pleasantest walk¹²! I went all over Millthorp-Heath, and so up to the mill at the top of the hill, and then down among the green meadows by the side of the river home again.

TUTOR.—Why, that is just the round Robert has been taking, and he complains of its dullness and prefers the high-road.

WILLIAM.—I wonder at that. I am sure I hardly took a step that did not delight me; and I have brought home my handkerchief full of curiosities¹³.

TUTOR.—Suppose ¹⁴, then, you give us an account of what amused you so much. I fancy it will ¹⁵ be as new to Robert as to me.

WILLIAM.—I will do it readily. The lane leading to the heath, you know, is close ¹⁶ and sandy, so I did not mind it much, but made the best of my way ¹⁷. However, I spied a curious thing enough ¹⁸ in the hedge. It was an old crab-tree, out of which grew a bunch of something green ¹⁹, quite different from the tree itself. Here is a branch of it.

TUTOR.—Ah! this is mistletoe, a plant of great fame ²⁰ for the use made of it by the Druids of old ²¹, in their religious rites and incantations. It bears ²² a very slimy, white berry, of which bird-lime may be made, whence ²³ its Latin name “viscum.” It is one of those plants which do not grow in the ground by a root of their own ²⁴, but fix themselves upon other plants; whence ²⁵ they have been humourously ²⁶ styled “parasitical,” as being hangers on, or dependents. It was the mistletoe of the oak that the Druids particularly honoured.

1, oder Sehen und nicht Sehen. 2, walking, auf deinem Spaziergange. Use the 2nd pers. sing. when the tutor addresses the boy, but the 3rd pers. pl. when the boy addresses the tutor. 3, am Abend. 4, and—by=dann bei . . . vorüber. Camp-Mount, der Lagerberg; Millthorp-Heath, die Millthorper Heide. 5, =tour or walk. 6, =I have found. 7, Use the Pluperfect Subj. accord. to App. § 32; along—road, die Chaussee. 8, =if you want to see men and horses.—I am better entertained there, ich werde mich dort besser amüsieren. 9, =We went away from home together. 10, =therefore; and left him=and troubled no more about him (sich um einen kümmern). 11, Ich gehe viel lieber allein. I dare say, wohl, adv., to be placed after the auxiliary. 12, =Oh, it was a splendid walk! All over=through the whole of; and so=then; and then=and from there; among=through. 13, =curious things. 14, Nun. 15, =It will certainly. 16, eingepfercht. 17, so—way=and therefore I left almost everything unnoticed there and went on as fast as possible. 18, =something most curious. 19, a—green=a green plant. 20, =a well (allgemein) known plant. 21, =the old Druids; in, bei. 22, =has. 23, und daher. 24, which—own, welche nicht in der Erde wurzeln. 25, weshalb. 26, scherzhafterweise; parasitical, Parasiten; as—dependents, das heißt Schmarotzer oder Abhänglinge.

Section 202.

THE TWO SCHOOLBOYS, OR EYES AND NO EYES.

II.

WILLIAM.—A little further on I saw a green woodpecker ¹ fly to a tree, and run up the trunk like a cat.

TUTOR.—That was ² to seek *for* insects which live in the bark of trees. For that purpose the woodpeckers bore holes into the bark with their strong bills, whereby they do ³ a great deal of damage to the trees.

WILLIAM.—What beautiful birds they are ⁴!

TUTOR.—Yes; the woodpecker has, from its colour and size, been called the English parrot (S. 4, N. 4, man).

WILLIAM.—When I got upon the heath, how charming it was⁵! The air was so fresh, and the prospect on every side⁶ so free and unbounded! The heath was all covered with gay flowers, many of which I had never observed before. There were⁷ at least three different kinds (S. 36, N. 7 A) of heath (I have them in my handkerchief here) and gorse, and broom, and bell-flowers; and many others of all colours, of which I will beg you presently to tell me the names⁸.

TUTOR.—That I will do readily.

WILLIAM.—I saw, too, several birds that were new to me. There was a pretty grayish one, of the size of a lark, that was hopping about some great stones; and when he flew he showed a great deal of white above his tail⁹.

TUTOR.—That was a wheat-ear¹⁰. They are reckoned very delicious birds to eat¹¹, and frequent the *open* downs in¹² Sussex, and some other counties, in great number.

WILLIAM.—There was a flock of lapwings upon a marshy part of the heath¹³ that amused me much. As I came near them, some of them kept flying round and round¹⁴, just over my head, and crying, "Pewit," "Pewit," so distinctly, one might almost fancy they spoke¹⁵. I thought I should have caught¹⁶ one of them, for he flew as if one of his wings was broken (App. § 33), and often tumbled close to the ground; but as I came near, he always contrived¹⁷ to get away.

TUTOR.—Ha, ha! you were finely taken in, then¹⁸! This was all an artifice of the bird's, to entice you away from its nest, for the lapwings build upon the bare ground, and their nests would easily be observed, did they not draw off¹⁹ the attention of intruders, by their loud cries and counterfeit lameness.

WILLIAM.—I wish I had known that²⁰, for the bird led me a long chase²¹, often over shoes in water. However, this was the cause [davon, S. 161, N. 21] of my falling in with²² an old man and a boy, who were cutting²³ and piling up turf for fuel. I had a great deal of talk with them about the manner of preparing the turf, and the price it sells at²⁴. They gave me, too, a creature I never saw before—a young viper, which they had just killed. I have seen several common snakes, but this is thicker in proportion, and of a darker colour than they *are*.

1, Grünspieß, m.; to, auf. 2, = That he did. 3, zu fügen. 4, = They (Es) are really charming birds! 5, = But upon the heath it was charming! 6, nach allen Seiten hin; all = quite. 7, Es waren dort. 8, deren Namen ich mir noch von Ihnen erbitten will. 9, and — tail, und beim Fliegen über dem Schwanz weiß befiedert war. 10, Steinpferd, m.; or Weißfischchen, n. 11, They — eat = These birds are very much valued (schätzen) on account of their flesh. 12, = and live in the downs of. 13, = In the marshy part of the heath I saw a flock (Schar) of lapwings. 14, round and round, immer im Kreise herum. 15, one — spoke, daß ich fast wähnte, sie sprechen zu hören. 16, = I should be able to catch. 17, gelang es ihm immer. 18, dann bist du schön angeführt worden! 19, did — off, suchten sie nicht . . . davon abzulenken, intruders = unbidden guests. 20, Das hätte ich vorher wissen sollen. 21, = for the bird caused (veranlassen) me to run a long time after it (hinter einem herjagen). 22, of — with = that I met. 23, stechen, str. v. 24, about — at, über die Zubereitungsweise und die Verkaufspreise des Torfes.

Section 203.

THE TWO SCHOOLBOYS, OR EYES AND NO EYES.

III.

TUTOR.—True. Vipers frequent¹ those turfy, boggy grounds² pretty much, and I have known several turf-cutters bitten by them.

WILLIAM.—They are very venomous, are they not?

TUTOR.—Enough so³ to make their wounds painful and dangerous, though they seldom prove fatal.

WILLIAM.—Well, I then took my course⁴ up to the windmill on the mount. I climbed up the steps of the mill, in order to get a better view of the country round⁵. What an extensive prospect! I counted fifteen church steeples; I saw several gentlemen's houses⁶ peeping out from the midst of green woods and plantations⁷; and I could trace the windings⁸ of the river all along the low grounds, till it was lost behind a ridge of hills⁹. But I will tell you what I mean to do¹⁰, if you will give me leave.

TUTOR.—What is that¹¹?

WILLIAM.—I will go again and take with me Carey's county map¹², by which I shall probably be able to make out most of the places.

TUTOR.—You shall have it; and I will go with you, and take my pocket spying-glass.

WILLIAM.—I shall be very glad of that. Well, a thought struck me, that, as the hill is called Camp-Mount, there might probably be some remains of ditches and mounds¹³ with which I have read that camps were surrounded. And I really believe I discovered something of that sort¹⁴ running one side of the mount.

TUTOR.—Very likely you might¹⁵. I know antiquaries have described such remains as existing there, which some suppose to be Roman, others Danish¹⁶. We will examine them when we go.

WILLIAM.—From the hill I went straight down to the meadows below, and walked on the side of a brook that runs¹⁷ into the river. It¹⁸ was all bordered with reeds and tall flowering-plants (S. 16, N. 10), quite different from those I had seen on the heath. As I was getting down¹⁹ the bank to reach one of them, I heard something plunge into the water near me. It was a large water-rat, and I saw it swim over to the other side, and go²⁰ into its hole. There were²¹ a great many large dragon-flies all about the stream. I caught one of the finest, and have him here in a leaf. But how I longed to catch a bird that I saw hovering²² over the water, and every now and then darting into it! It was all over a mixture of the most beautiful green and blue, with some orange colour²³. It was somewhat less than a thrush, and had a large head and bill, and a short tail.

1, = live in. 2, *Gegenben*. 3, = venomous enough. 4, = there-upon I went. 5, I had a fine view of the country round, *ich konnte die Umgegend gut überblicken*. 6, *herrschaftliche Häuser*. 7, *Parcanlagen*. 8, *der sich schlängelnde Lauf*, as Nom.; low grounds = meadows. 9, *Hügelrücken*, m. 10, = will do. Supply 'dazu' after 'leave'. 11, *Was denn?* 12, *De*

zirkelfarte; by which = by (mit) the help of which; 'to make out', here bestimmen, w. v. tr.; places, Ortschaften. 13, Well — mounds. This passage may be construed thus: 'Now, since (Da nun) the hill is called Camp-Mount, a thought struck me that there are (sich befinden) probably some remains of ditches and mounds (Erdbau, m)'. I have read = as I have read. 14, etwas dergleichen; running one side = on the one side. 15, = That is quite (gerne) possible. 16, to be — Danish, daß sie römischen, andere aber, daß sie dänischen Ursprungs sind. 17, sich ergießen. 18, = The brook; bordered = overgrown, bewachsen. 19, hinuntersteigen; to reach = to pluck. 20, = creep. Read S. 78, N. 14, B. 21, Es waren dort, after which place the words 'all — stream', am Bache. 22, umherfliegen; every — then, dann und wann; 'to dart', here hinunterstießen; into it = into the same. 23, It — colour = His plumage (Gefieder) consisted of (aus) a mixture of the finest green and blue with a small addition (Zusatz, m.) of orange colour (Orangengelb).

Section 204.

THE TWO SCHOOLBOYS, OR EYES AND NO EYES.

IV.

TUTOR.—I can tell you what that bird was—a kingfisher, the celebrated halcyon of the ancients, about which so many tales are told. It lives on¹ fish, which it catches in the manner you saw. It builds in holes on the banks, and is a shy, retired² bird, never to be seen far from the stream it inhabits.

WILLIAM.—I must try to get another sight of him, for I never saw (S. 48, N. 2) a bird that pleased me so much. Well, I followed this little brook till it entered³ the river, and then took⁴ the path that runs along the bank. On the opposite side, I observed several little birds running along the bank, and making a piping noise⁵. They were⁶ brown and white, and about as big as a snipe.

TUTOR.—I suppose they [eß] were sand-pipers⁷; one of the numerous family of birds (S. 36, N. 7, A) that get their living⁸ by wading among the shallows and picking up worms and insects.

WILLIAM.—There were a great many swallows, too, sporting⁹ above the surface of the water, that entertained me with their motions. Sometimes¹⁰ they dashed down into the stream¹¹; sometimes they pursued one another so quickly, that the eye could scarcely follow them. In one place, where a steep sand-bank rose high above the river, I observed many of them go in and out of holes with which the bank was bored full¹².

TUTOR.—Those [Daß] were sand-martins¹³, the smallest of our species of swallows. They are of a mouse-colour above, and white beneath. They¹⁴ make their nests, and bring up their young, in these holes, which run a great depth, and by their situation are secure from all plunderers.

WILLIAM.—A little further I saw a man in a boat, who was catching eels in an odd way¹⁵. He had a long pole with broad iron prongs¹⁶ at the end; just like Neptune's trident¹⁷, only there were five prongs instead of three. This he pushed straight down into the mud, in the deepest parts of the river, and fetched up the eels sticking between the prongs.

TUTOR.—I know the method. It is called the spearing of eels¹⁸.

WILLIAM.—While I was looking at him, a heron came flying over my head, with his large flagging wings. He alighted¹⁹ at the next turn of the river, and I crept softly behind the bank to watch his motions. He had waded into the water as far as his long legs would allow him²⁰ and was standing there motionless with his neck drawn in, looking²¹ intently on the stream. Presently he darted his long bill as quick as lightning into the water, and drew out a fish, which he swallowed. I saw him catch another in the same manner. He then took alarm²² at some noise I made, and flew away slowly to a wood at some distance, where he settled.

1, von; in — saw, auf die von dir beobachtete Weise. 2, die Einsamkeit liebend; never — inhabits = which goes never far away (sich entfernen) from the stream (Gewässer, n.) where it has its nest. 3, sich ergießen, str. v. refl. 4, betreten, str. v. tr. 5, running — noise, am Ufer entlang hüpfen und pfeifen. 6, = looked; and = and were. 7, Strandläufer. 8, 'to get one's living', here sich seine Nahrung verschaffen. Read S. 87, N. 6; among the shallows, an den seichten Stellen; to wade, umherwaten; and picking up = in order to pick up. 9, 'to sport', here sein Spiel treiben; that = and. 10, bald. 11, = water. 12, I — full = I observed that many of them crept into the holes that were in great number (Menge, f.) bored (hinein'bohren) into the bank, but then (dann aber) came out again. 13, Uferschwalben. 14, Commence this period with 'In these holes — plunderers'; to make a nest, ein Nest bauen; to bring up the young, die Jungen groß ziehen. 15, auf wunderliche Weise. 16, Zinse, f. 17, Dreizaß, m. 18, das Aalstechen. 19, sich auf die Erde niederlassen. 20, Insert the grammatical object es before 'him'. 21, = and looked intently (mit gespannter Aufmerksamkeit) down upon the water (auf . . . hernieder). 22, to take alarm at something, durch etwas in Furcht gesetzt werden.

Section 205.

THE TWO SCHOOLBOYS, OR EYES AND NO EYES.

V.

TUTOR.—Probably his nest was there, for herons build upon the loftiest tree they can find, and sometimes in society together, like rooks. Formerly, when these birds were valued for the amusement of hawking¹, many gentlemen had their heronries², and a few are still remaining.

WILLIAM.—I think (S. 64, N. 11) they are the largest wild birds we have.

TUTOR.—They are of great length and spread of wing³, but their bodies are comparatively small.

WILLIAM.—I then turned homeward, across the meadows, where I stopped awhile, to look at⁴ a large flock of starlings, which kept flying about at no great distance. I could not tell at first what to make of them⁵, for they rose altogether from the ground as thick as a swarm of bees, and formed *themselves into* a kind⁶ of black cloud, hovering over the field. After taking a short round⁷, they settled again, but presently rose in the same manner. I dare say⁸ there were hundreds of them.

TUTOR.—Perhaps so⁹; for in the fenny counties their flocks are so numerous¹⁰ as to break down whole acres of reeds, by settling on them¹¹.

This disposition¹² of starlings to fly in close swarms was remarked even by Homer, who compares the foe (S. 48, N. 6) flying from one of his heroes to a cloud of starlings retiring dismayed at the approach of the hawk.

WILLIAM.—After I had left the meadows, I crossed¹³ the corn-fields in the way to our house, and passed close by a deep marl-pit. Looking into it, I saw, on one of the sides, a cluster of what¹⁴ I took to be shells; and upon going down, I picked up a clod of marl¹⁵, which was quite full of them; but how sea-shells can get there, I cannot imagine.

TUTOR.—I do not wonder at your surprise, since many philosophers have been much perplexed to account for the same appearance¹⁶. It is not uncommon to find¹⁷ great quantities of shells and relics of marine animals, even in the bowels of high mountains, very remote from the sea.

WILLIAM.—I got¹⁸ to the high field next to our house just as the sun was setting, and I stood looking at it till it was quite lost¹⁹. What a glorious sight! The clouds were tinged with purple, crimson, and yellow of all shades and hues, and the clear sky varied from blue to a fine green at the horizon. But how large the sun appears just as it sets! I think it seems twice as big as when it is over-head.

1, for — hawking = on account of the amusement which they afforded through hawking (die Falkenjagd). 2, Reihersband, m. 3, They — wing = They have very large, long wings. 4, = to observe; to keep flying about, umherfliegen; at — distance, in nur geringer Entfernung von mir. 5, = I could not recognise them at first. 'To rise', here sich in die Luft emporheben; thick, dicht. 6, a kind, gleichsam; hovering — field, als sie über dem Felde hin und her schwebten. 7, = After they had been flying about for a short time. 8, 'I dare say' may be briefly rendered by the adv. gewiß. Read S. 104, N. 19. 9, Das ist leicht möglich. 10, = they exist (vorhanden sein) in such masses; as to = that they. 11, = when they settle upon the same (to agree with 'reeds'). 12, = peculiarity. 13, = I went through the corn-fields home again. 14, a — what, eine zusammengeballte Masse, welche. 15, Nom. ein Klumpen (m.) Mergel; of them = of shells. 16, since — appearance, da schon viele Naturforscher sich über die Erklärung dieser Erscheinung den Kopf zerbrochen haben. 17, = that one finds. 18, gelangen; to, auf; high field, Anhöhe, f. 19, = till it had entirely disappeared at the (am) horizon.

Section 206.

THE TWO SCHOOLBOYS, OR EYES AND NO EYES.

VI.

TUTOR.—It does so¹; and you *may* probably have observed the same apparent enlargement of the moon at its rising².

WILLIAM.—I have³; but pray what is the reason of this?

TUTOR.—It is an optical deception, depending upon principles which I cannot well explain to you, till you know more of that *branch* of science. But what a number of new ideas this afternoon's walk has afforded you. I do not wonder that you found it amusing⁴, and it has been very instructive too. Did you see (S. 48, N. 2) nothing of all these sights, Robert?

ROBERT.—I saw some of them, but I did not take particular notice of them.

TUTOR.—Why not?

ROBERT.—I do not know. I did not care about them; and I made the best of my way home⁵.

TUTOR.—That would have been (App. § 33) right, if you had been sent on a message⁶; but as you only walked for amusement⁷, it would have been wiser to have sought out as many sources of it as possible⁸. But as it is⁹: one man walks through the world with the eyes open, and another with them shut, and¹⁰ upon this difference depends all the¹¹ superiority the one acquires above the other. I have known sailors¹² who have been in all the quarters of the world, and could tell you nothing but¹³ the signs of the tippling houses they frequented¹⁴ in different ports, and the price and quality of the liquor. On the other hand¹⁵, a Franklin could not even cross the Channel without making some observation useful to mankind¹⁶. While many a vacant, thoughtless youth is whirled throughout Europe¹⁷, without gaining¹⁸ a single idea worth crossing a street for¹⁹, the observing eye and inquiring mind find matter of improvement and delight²⁰ in every ramble *in town or country*. Do you then, William, continue to make use of your eyes; and you, Robert, learn that eyes were given you to use.—DR. AIKIN.

1, = Quite right. 2, of — rising, beim Aufgange des Mondes. 3, = Yes.
4, = interesting. 5, and — home = and went home as quickly as possible.
6, if — message, hätte man dich ausgeschiedt, um eine Besorgung zu verrichten. 7, to walk for amusement, einen Spaziergang machen. 8, to — possible, hättest du denselben so viel wie möglich auszubenten gesucht. 9, Es ist aber nun einmal so; one man, der eine; another, der andere. 10, and just (gerade). 11, = the great.
12, Schiffer. 13, and — but, dennoch aber von nichts anderem zu erzählen wußten, als von. 14, = visited. 15, Andererseits hingegen. 16, Use the attributive construction. 17, ganz Europa durchfliegt. 18, sich aneignen.
19, worth — for = for (wegen) which it would have been worth while to go over the street. 20, zur Belehrung und zum Genuß. The words 'in every ramble' must be placed after 'mind'.

Section 207.

THE KING AND THE MILLER.

I.

In the reign¹ of Frederick the Great (see S. 192, N. 1), king of Prussia, there was² a mill near Potsdam which obstructed the view from the windows of the palace of Sans Souci. Annoyed by this drawback to his favourite residence³, the king sent⁴ to the owner of the mill inquiring the price for which he would sell it. "For no price," was the reply of the sturdy Prussian; and in a moment of anger the monarch gave orders⁵ that the mill should be pulled down. "The king may do this," said the miller, quietly folding his arms; "but there are (S. 82, N. 7) laws in Prussia, and he will find them out⁶". Forthwith he commenced a law-suit against the monarch, the issue of which was⁷, that the court gave a

decision against His Majesty, compelling him⁸ to rebuild the mill, and in addition⁹ to pay a large sum of money as a compensation for the injury he had done¹⁰. The king felt mortified (S. 87, N. 6) at having been worsted by one of his subjects, but had the magnanimity to say, addressing¹¹ his courtiers: "I am glad to find that there are just laws and upright judges in my kingdom who are bold enough to decide against me when they think I am in the wrong." Many years afterwards (App. § 14), a descendant of the honest miller, who had in *due* course of time succeeded to the hereditary possession of the property¹², found himself involved in pecuniary difficulties that had become insurmountable.

1, = At (zu) the time of the reign. See S. 53, N. 9. 2, there — Potsdam = stood near (bei) Potsdam a mill. 3, Der seinem Lieblingsſchloſſe hierdurch erwachſende Nachtheil verdroß den König ſehr. 4, = and he sent. 5, = the order. 6, = and he will soon convince himself of it. 7, the — was, welcher damit endete. 8, = and compelled him. 9, and in addition, und noch obendrein; sum — compensation, Entſchädigungssumme, f. 10, Supply 'to the miller'. 11, = to. 12, Liter. = who in course of time *and* through inheritance had come into the possession of the mill.

Section 208.

THE KING AND THE MILLER.

II.

In his distress he wrote to Frederick William IV, who was at that time king of Prussia, reminding him of the refusal experienced by Frederick the Great at the hands¹ of his ancestor the miller, and stating² that³ if His Majesty now wished to obtain possession of the property, he would, in his present embarrassed circumstances, most willingly dispose of the mill. The king immediately wrote, with his own hand⁴, the following reply:

"My Dear Neighbour,

I cannot allow you to sell the mill. It must remain in the possession of your family as long as one of your descendants survives⁵, for the building belongs⁶ to the history of Prussia, and is a standing⁷ memorial of the integrity of our judges and the impartiality of our laws. I am sorry, however, to hear that you are in straitened circumstances, and therefore send you six thousand dollars⁸ to pay off your debts, and hope the sum will be sufficient for the purpose. Consider me⁹ always

Your affectionate¹⁰ neighbour,

FREDERICK WILLIAM."

The mill still stands, and is occupied by the¹¹ descendants of the resolute miller who had the fortitude to thwart the despotic monarch in his desire¹² to improve the prospect from the windows of his palace.—CHAMBERS'S "SHORT STORIES."

1, reminding — hands = reminded him of the refusal (abſchlägige Antwort) which Fred. the Gr. had received at the hands (ſeitens). 2, = stated. 3, = that he would in his present embarrassed circumstances most willingly sell the mill, if, etc. 'To obtain possession of the property', here das Beſitzthum käuflich erwerben. 4, with — hand, eigenhändig, adj., which use after

'following'. 5, noch am Leben sein. 6, an'gehören. 7, bleibend, adj.; to, an. 8, Thaler (m.), formerly the standard coin in Germany, and equal to 3 sh. English. 9, = I remain always. 10, here wohlwollend, adj. 11, = and is still in the possession of the. 12, to thwart — desire = to oppose (sich einer Sache widersetzen) the desire of the despotic king.

Section 209.

A FRIEND IN NEED (S. 3, N. 2).

I.

One wet wintry night, when a gentleman was hurrying along¹ one of the crowded thoroughfares of London, his attention was arrested by a lean, hungry-looking dog which rushed past him. He observed that it had a collar² round its neck, to which a basket was attached. If it was (App. § 36) a dog that ran on errands³, he thought that surely its owner would feed it better, and its ribs would not look so spare. Thinking that there was some mystery connected with the animal⁴, he resolved to follow it⁵. After a⁶ time it turned up a narrow lane into a stable-yard, where some coachmen and hostlers were loitering about. It then got up on its hind-legs, and began walking about in circles⁷. The bystanders, surprised at this strange proceeding, formed round in a ring and looked on. It walked five times round, standing⁸ erect, and looking fixedly before it like a soldier on duty⁹, evidently doing its utmost¹⁰ to make the company laugh. After taking a short rest, it began its performance¹¹ again, but this time on its fore-feet, pretending to stand¹² on its (S. 43, N. 9) head. Tiring of this¹³, it lay down in the middle of the ring, feigning to be dead¹⁴, and going through all the convulsions of a dying dog, breathing heavily, panting, suffering the lower jaw to fall¹⁵, and then turning over motionless. It did this so well, that a woman in the crowd exclaimed: "Poor beast!" and drew her hand across her eyes¹⁶. Having lain still a minute, with its eyes closed, it got up and shook itself, to show that the performance¹⁷ was over. It then went round begging on its hind-legs, standing¹⁸ a little while before each of the spectators, and earnestly watching¹⁹ to see whether they put their hands into their pockets or not. The basket round its neck had a slit in the lid, into which the coppers might be dropped.

1, to hurry along, burcheilen, insep. comp. w. v. Place 'one — night' after 'gentleman'; wet = rainy; thoroughfares = streets. 2, here Halsband, n.; round its neck, um. 3, to run on errands, Besorgungen ausrichten; and — spare = and it would not look so dreadfully lean. 4, = Since the matter appeared very mysterious (rätselhaft) to him. 5, = the animal. 6, furz; turned up = ran into; into = which led to. 7, im Kreise. 8, = held himself. 9, auf dem Posten. 10, = and did evidently his best. 11, here = tricks, Kunststücke. 12, = and did (sich anstellen) as if he stood (App. § 33). 13, = Hereupon. 14, to feign to be dead, sich tot stellen. The Present Participles in this passage must be rendered by the Imperfect in German. 15, = dropped (fallen lassen) the lower jaw. 16, mit der Hand über die Augen fahren. 17, Vorstellung, f. 18, stille stehen. 19, = and watched (beobachten) them quite earnestly (ernsthaft).

Section 210.

A FRIEND IN NEED.

II.

The gentleman put in a shilling, and stooped down to read a crumpled piece of paper which hung loosely from the collar. It bore these words, written in a ¹ shaky hand: "This is the dog of a poor man who is bed-ridden. It earns bread for its master. Good people, do not prevent it from returning to its home." On receiving (S. 55, N. 1) *any* money, the poor creature returned thanks by a wag of its tail. Almost every one of the spectators gave the dog something, and when it had finished collecting the money, it barked once or twice, as if to say good-bye, and then scampered off. On entering the principal street, it quickened its pace ², and the gentleman finding it impossible to keep up with it ³, hailed ⁴ a cab, and, much to the driver's amazement ⁵, cried: "Follow that dog." After a time the dog bolted up a narrow alley ⁶, through which the cab could not pass ⁷. The gentleman alighted, and followed the dog through a dark close up ⁸ to the garret of a rickety dwelling. Pulling the string attached to the latch, the dog opened the door, and the stranger followed. Its master lay dying ⁹ on a wretched bed, supported ¹⁰ by the earnings of the faithful creature, who practised ¹¹ the same tricks alone as it used to do under its master's superintendence. Death soon ended ¹² the poor man's sufferings, and the dog followed the coffin to the grave. The gentleman took home the dog, but next morning the poor beast howled impatiently for ¹³ the basket to go its rounds as usual. It went with the pennies to the cemetery and laid them on a grave, whining ¹⁴ mournfully, and trying to scratch up the earth. Twice more it went out all day, and brought back the money for its master; but, on finding the money untouched, it lay down at full length upon the grave. The next morning it did not go its rounds, for it was dead.—CHAMBERS'S "SHORT STORIES."

- 1, in a = with. 2, here *Lauf*, m. 3, to keep up with a person, *gleichen Schritt mit einem halten*. 4, *an'rufen*, sep. comp. str. w. tr. 5, = to the great amazement of the driver. 6, *plötzlich in einen Durchgang hinein'laufen*. 7, *passieren*. 8, *Passage*, f.; to = into; rickety, *haufällig*. 9, *im Sterben*. 10, = and was supported (*unterhalten* or *versorgen*). 11, here *aus'üben*. 12, *einer Sache (Dat.) ein Ende machen*. 13, *nach*; 'to go one's rounds', here *seine Runde wieder an'treten*. 14, = whereby he whined.

Section 211.

MY FIRST GUINEA.

I well remember¹, when I was very young, possessing for the first time a guinea. I remember too that this circumstance cost me no little perplexity and anxiety. As I passed along the streets, the fear of losing my guinea induced me oftentimes to take it out of my pocket to look at it. First I put ² it in one pocket, then I took it out and put it in another;

after a while I took it out of the second pocket and placed² it in another, really perplexed³ what to do with it (S. 27, N. 7).

At last my attention was arrested by a book-auction. I stepped in and looked about me. First one lot⁴ was put up, and then another, and sold to the highest bidder⁵. At last I ventured to the table, just as the auctioneer was putting up "The History of the World," in two large folio volumes. I instantly thrust² my hand into my (S. 43, N. 9) pocket, and began turning over⁶ my guinea, considering whether I should have money enough to buy this lot. The bidding proceeded⁷, and at last I ventured to bid too. "Halloo! my little man!" said the auctioneer, "what! (S. 27, N. 7) not content with less than the world?" This remark greatly confused me, and drew the attention of the whole company⁸ toward me, who⁹, seeing (S. 30, N. 4) me anxious¹⁰ to possess the books, refrained from bidding against me; and so, "The World" was knocked down¹¹ to me at a very moderate price.

How to get¹² these huge books home was the next consideration¹³. The auctioneer offered to send them, but I, not knowing what sort of creatures auctioneers were¹⁴, determined to take them myself; so, after¹⁵ the assistant had tied them up, I marched out of the room with these huge books upon my shoulder, like Samson with the gates of Gaza, amid the smiles of all present.

When I reached my home, after the servant had opened the door, the first person I met was my sainted mother.

"My dear boy," she said, "what have you *got* there? I thought you would not keep your guinea long."

"Do not be angry, mother," said I, throwing the books down upon the table. "I have bought 'The World' for nine shillings."

This was on a Saturday, and I well remember sitting up¹⁶ till it was well-nigh midnight, turning over¹⁷ this "History of the World." The books became my delight, and were carefully read through and through.

When I grew older, I became at length a Christian, and my love of books¹⁸, among other things, led me to desire to be a Christian minister¹⁹. To the possession of these books I attribute, in a great measure, any honours that have been added to my name in connection with literature. I have not mentioned this anecdote to gratify any foolish feeling²⁰, but to encourage in all whom I see before me that²¹ love of literature which has afforded me such unspeakable pleasure—pleasure²² which I would not have been without for all the riches of the Indies²³.—THE REV. DR. VAUGHAN.

1, Supply 'the time' here; to remember, sich erinnern, governs the Gen.; possessing = and possessed. 2, stecken. 3, sich in großer Verlegenheit befinden. 4, Partie, f.; to put up to auction, to public sale, zur Versteigerung bringen, unter den Hammer bringen, or zum öffentlichen Verkauf stellen. 5, der Meistbietende; to, an. 6, herum'drehen; considering = and considered (überlegen, insep. comp. w. v.). 7, vorstatten gehen. 8, = of all the persons present (die Anwesenden); toward, auf. 9, Finish first the clause 'who refrained from bidding against me', and then commence the other, and use this construction in all cases where it can possibly be employed. 10, We are anxious to buy the property, wir möchten das Besitztum gerne kaufen. 11, We are anxious to buy the property, wir möchten das Besitztum gerne kaufen.

11, to knock down an article to the last bidder, einen Artikel dem zuletzt Bietenden zuſchlagen. 12, to get home, nach Hauſe ſchaffē. 13, Erwägung, f. 14, = but since I had not yet any experience in such matters, I determined, etc. 15, so, after = and when. 16, = that I sat up. 17, = and turned over (durchblättern, insep. comp. w. v.). 18, Liebhaberei (f.) für Bücher. 19, = to become a Christian Minister (Geiſtlicher). 20, Supply 'of vanity' here. 21, = the; of, zu, contracted with the Dat. of the def. art. 22, = a pleasure (Genuß, m.) 23, = of India.

Section 212.

THE GREEN VAULTS IN DRESDEN.

Dresden, May 11, 1845.

We were fortunate in seeing the Green Vaults or "Das grüne Gewölbe," a collection of jewels and costly articles¹, unsurpassed in Europe (S. 7, N. 3, A). Admittance is only granted to six persons at a time, who pay a fee² of two thalers. The customary way is to employ a "valet de place³," who goes round from one hotel to another, until he has collected the required number, when⁴ he brings them together and conducts them to the keeper who has charge of the treasures. The first hall into which we were ushered contained works in bronze⁵. They were all small, and chosen with regard to their artistical value. The next room contained statues, and vases ornamented with reliefs, in ivory. The most remarkable work was the fall of Lucifer and his angels, containing ninety-two figures in all⁶, carved out of a single piece of ivory sixteen inches high! It was the work of an Italian monk, and cost him many years of hard labour⁷.

However costly the contents of these halls (S. 27, N. 7), they were only an introduction to those which followed. Each one exceeded the other in splendour and costliness. The walls were covered to the ceiling with rows of goblets, vases, etc., of polished jasper, agate, and lapis lazuli. We saw two goblets, each prized at six thousand thalers, made of gold and precious stones; also the great pearl called the Spanish Dwarf, nearly as large as a pullet's egg; globes and vases cut entirely out of the mountain crystal; magnificent Nuremberg watches and clocks, and a great number of figures made ingeniously of rough⁸ pearls and diamonds. The seventh hall contains the coronation robes of Augustus II, king of Poland, and many costly specimens of carving in wood⁹. A cherry-stone is shown in a glass case, which has one hundred and twenty-five faces, all perfectly finished, carved upon it¹⁰. The next room we entered sent back a glare of splendour¹¹ that perfectly dazzled us. It was all gold, diamond, ruby, and sapphire. Every case sent out a glow and a glitter that it seemed like a cage of imprisoned lightnings¹². Wherever the eye turned it was met by a blaze of broken rainbows. They were there by hundreds¹³, and every gem was a fortune. We here saw the largest known onyx, nearly seven inches long, and four inches broad! One of the most remarkable works is the throne and court of Aurungzebe, the Indian king, by Dinglinger, a celebrated goldsmith of the last century. It contains one hundred and thirty-two figures, all

of enamelled gold, and each one most perfectly and elaborately finished. It was purchased by Prince Augustus for fifty-eight thousand thalers, which was not an exorbitant sum, considering that the making of it occupied Dinglinger and thirteen workmen for seven years!

It is almost impossible to estimate the value of the treasures these halls contain. That of gold and jewels alone must be many millions of dollars, and the amount of labour expended on these toys of royalty is incredible.—BAYARD TAYLOR, "VIEWS AFOOT."

1, Röstlichkeiten. 2, Eintrittsgeld, n. 3, Generally one engages a 'valet de place' (ein Lohnbedienter, Nom.). 4, = and then. 5, Bronzesachen. 6, im Ganzen. 7, hard labour, angestrengte Arbeit. 8, here ungeschliffen. 9, Holzschuigereien. 10, which — it = upon which are carved 125 faces, which are all perfectly finished (ausgebildet). 11, wiederstrahlte von einem herrlichen Glanze; 'perfectly', here förmlich. 12, Aus jedem Kasten erstrahlte so viel Glanz und Licht, daß es schien, es entströmten ihm tausend Blitze. 13, = There were (Es waren dort) hundreds of gems.

Section 213.

THE DEATH OF LITTLE NELL.

She was dead. No sleep (S. 27, N. 7) so beautiful and calm, so free from trace¹ of pain, so fair to look upon. She seemed² a creature fresh from the hand of God, and waiting for the breath of life; not one who had lived and suffered death. Her couch was dressed with here and there some winterberries and green leaves, gathered in a spot she had been used to favour. "When I die, put near me something³ that has loved the light, and had the sky above it always." These were her words.

She was dead. Dear (S. 10, N. 2), gentle, patient, noble Nell was dead. Her little bird—a poor, slight thing⁴, the pressure of the finger would have crushed—was stirring nimbly in its cage; and the strong heart of its child-mistress⁵ was mute and motionless for ever! Where were the traces of her early cares, her sufferings and fatigues? All gone⁶. Sorrow was dead, *indeed* in her⁷; but peace and perfect happiness were born⁸—imaged in her tranquil beauty and (S. 10, N. 9) profound repose.

And still her former self lay there, unaltered in this change⁸. Yes, the old fireside⁹ had smiled upon that same sweet face; it had passed like a dream through haunts of misery and care—at the door of the poor schoolmaster on the summer evening, before the furnace-fire upon the cold wet night, at the still bedside of the dying boy¹⁰, there had been the same mild and loving look. So shall we know the angels in their majesty after death.—CHARLES DICKENS, "THE OLD CURIOSITY SHOP."

1, = from the traces. 2, = seemed to be a creature (Kreatur, f.). Fresh — God, erst soeben aus der Hand Gottes hervorgegangen, which use attributively before 'creature'; breath, Odem, m. 3, dann gebet mir etwas mit. 4, ein armseeliges kleines Ding. 5, kindliche Herrin, Nom. 6, Alles war verschwunden. 7, war in ihr erstorben; were born, waren dafür wieder in ihr erstanden; imaged in,

wie es . . . bezeugte; her tranquil beauty=her tranquil beautiful face (Antlitz, n.). 8, Liter.=And still (dennoch) lay her former self in this change (Verwandlung) unaltered there. 9, der häusliche Herd; 'to smile upon', here auf etwas herniederblicken. 10, =brother.

Section 214.

THE CHILDHOOD OF ROBERT CLIVE¹.

Some lineaments of the character of the man were early discerned in the child. There remain² letters written by his relations when he was in his seventh year; and from³ these letters it appears that, even at that early age, his strong will and his fiery passions, sustained by a constitutional intrepidity⁴, had begun to cause great uneasiness to his family. "Fighting," says one of his uncles, "to which he is out of measure addicted, gives his temper such a fierceness and imperiousness, that he flies out on every occasion⁵." The old people of the neighbourhood still remember to have heard from their parents how Bob Clive climbed to the top of the lofty steeple of Market Drayton, and with what terror the inhabitants saw (S. 78, N. 14, B) him seated on a stone spout near the summit. They also relate how he formed all the idle lads of the town into a kind of predatory army⁶, and compelled the shop-keepers to submit to a tribute of apples and halfpence, in consideration of which⁷ he guaranteed the security of their windows. He was sent from school to school, making very little progress in his learning⁸, and gaining for himself everywhere the character of an exceedingly naughty boy. One of his masters, it is said, was sagacious enough to prophesy that the idle lad would make a great figure in the world⁹.—LORD MACAULAY, "LORD CLIVE."

1, Robert Lord Clive, geboren den 29. September 1725, gestorben den 22. November 1774, war der Begründer des brittischen Reiches in Indien. 2, Es existieren noch. 3, aus; it appears, ergibt sich. 4, welche durch die ihm angeborene Unerforschlichkeit noch unterstützt wurden. 5, daß er bei jeder Gelegenheit in heftigen Zorn gerät. 6, He formed of them a kind of predatory army, er bildete aus ihnen eine Art Räuberbande. 7, in — which, wofür. 8, =studies. 9, to make a great figure in the world, eine große Rolle in der Welt spielen.

Section 215.

AN ADVENTURE WITH A LION.

I.

It is well¹ known that if one of a troop of lions is killed, the others take the hint², and leave that part of the country. So³ the next time the herds were attacked, I went with the people, in order to encourage them to rid themselves of the annoyance by destroying⁴ one of the marauders. We found the lions on a small hill about a quarter of a mile in length⁵, which was covered with trees. A circle of men was formed round it, and they gradually closed up⁶, ascending pretty near to each other. Being down below on the plain with a native schoolmaster, named Mebalwe, a most excellent man (S. 53, N. 9), I saw one of the lions sitting (S. 78,

N. 14, B) on a *piece of rock* within the now-closed circle *of men*. Mebalwe fired at him before I could⁷, and the ball struck the rock on which the animal was sitting. He bit at the spot struck, as a dog does at a stick or stone thrown at him; then leaping away⁸, broke through the opening circle, and escaped unhurt. The men were afraid to attack him on account of their belief in [an] witchcraft. When the circle was re-formed, we saw two other lions in it; but were afraid⁹ to fire lest we should strike the men, and they allowed the beasts to burst through also. If (App. § 36) the Bakatta had acted according to the custom of the country, they would have speared the lions in their attempt to get out. Seeing we could not get¹⁰ them to kill one of the lions, we bent our footsteps¹¹ towards the village; in going round the end of the hill, however, I saw one of the beasts sitting on a *piece of rock* as before, but this time he had a little bush in front. Being about thirty yards¹² off, I took a good aim at his body through the bush, and fired both barrels into it. The men then called out: "He is shot! he is shot!" Others cried: "He has been shot by another man, too; let us go to him!" I did not see any one else shoot at him, but I saw the lion's tail¹³ erected in anger behind the bush, and turning to the people, said: "Stop a little till I load¹⁴ again."

- 1, = generally. 2, es sich zur Warnung dienen lassen. 3, So, Als nun; the next time, wiederum, which place after the subject. 4, durch Vertilgung, which place, with 'one — marauders', immediately after the reflective pronoun 'sich'. 5, Use the attributive construction. 6, and — up, welche sich allmählich enger an einander angeschlossen; ascending = and ascended (den Berg hinaufsteigen). 7, ehe ich es thun konnte. 8, = and when, hereupon, he sprang away, he, etc. 9, = but ventured not; lest, aus Furcht, daß; render 'should' by the Imperf. Subj. of mögen. 10, dahin bringen. 11, we went (schreiten). 12, = steps; distances are generally measured by *steps* in Germany. 13, a lion's tail, Schweif, m.; in, aus. 14, = have loaded.

Section 216.

AN ADVENTURE WITH A LION.

II.

When (S. 27, N. 7) in the act¹ of ramming down the bullets, I heard a shout. Starting, and looking half round, I saw the lion just in the act of springing² upon me. I was upon a little height; he caught my shoulder as he sprang³, and we both came to the ground below together. Growling (S. 55, N. 1, während) horribly close to my ear, he shook me as a terrier dog does a rat. The shock produced a stupor similar to that which seems to be felt by a mouse after the first shake of the cat. It caused a sort of dreaminess, in which there was⁴ no sense of pain nor feeling of terror, though I was quite conscious of all that was happening. It was like what⁵ patients, particularly under the influence of chloroform, describe, who see all the operation, but do not feel the knife. This singular condition was not the result of any mental process. The shake annihilated fear, and allowed no sense of horror⁶ in looking round at the beast. This peculiar state is probably produced in all animals killed by

the carnivora⁷; and, if so⁸, is a merciful provision by our benevolent creator for lessening the pain of death (S. 76, N. 22, B, 1). Turning round to relieve myself of the weight, as he had one paw on the back of my head⁹, I saw his eyes directed to Mebalwe, who was trying to shoot him at a distance of ten or fifteen yards. His gun, a flint one¹⁰, missed fire in both barrels; the lion immediately left me, and attacking Mebalwe, bit¹¹ his thigh. Another man, whose life I had saved before, after he had been tossed¹² by a buffalo, attempted to spear the lion while he was biting Mebalwe. He left Mebalwe, and caught this man by the shoulder; but, at that moment, the bullets he had received took effect¹³, and he fell down dead. The whole was the work of a few moments, and must have been his paroxysm of dying rage. In order to take out the charm from him, the Bakatta on the following day made a huge bonfire over his carcass, which was declared to be that of the largest lion they had ever seen. Besides crunching the bone into splinters, he left¹⁴ eleven teeth wounds on the upper part of my arm.—DR. LIVINGSTONE.

- 1, 'to be in the act of doing anything', here bei etwas beschäftigt sein. Read S. 87, N. 6, which rule applies in this case likewise. 2, 'in the act of springing', here = about (im Begriff) to spring. 3, as he sprang, im Sprunge, with which commence the clause. 4, in — was = which possessed. 5, = I found myself in that state (Zustand, m.), which. 6, und flüchte mir keinen Schrecken ein. 7, here reisende Tiere. 8, = and if this is the case, it is, etc. 9, on — head, auf meinem Hinterkopfe. 10, His — one, Seine Flinte; to miss fire, verjagen. 11, and — bit = attacked M., and bit. etc. 12, in die Luft schleudern. 13, to take effect, zu wirken anfangen. 14, zurück lassen.

Section 217.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW. (Comp. S. 156, N. 1.)

I.

On the 14th of September, 1812, while the rear-guard of the Russians were in the act (S. 216, N. 1) of evacuating Moscow, Napoleon reached the hill called the Mount of Salvation¹, because *it is there where* the natives kneel and cross themselves at first sight of the Holy City.

Moscow seemed as lordly and striking² as ever, with the steeples of its thirty churches, and its copper domes glittering in the sun; its palaces of Eastern architecture mingled with trees, and surrounded with gardens³; and its Kremlin⁴, a huge triangular mass of towers,⁵ something between a palace and a castle, which rose like a citadel out of the general⁶ mass of groves and buildings. But not a chimney sent up smoke⁷, not a man appeared on the battlements, or at the gates. Napoleon gazed⁸ every moment expecting to see a train of bearded boyards arriving to (S. 19, N. 7) fling themselves at his feet, and place their wealth at his disposal. His first exclamation was: "Behold at last that celebrated city!" His next: "It was full⁹ time!" His army, less regardless of the past or the future¹⁰, fixed their eyes on the goal of their wishes, and a shout of "Moscow! Moscow!" passed from rank to rank.

Bonaparte, as if unwilling to encounter the sight of the empty streets,

stopped immediately on entering the first suburb. His troops were quartered in the desolate city. During the first few hours after their arrival¹¹, an obscure rumour, which could not be traced¹², but one of those which are sometimes found to get abroad before the approach of some awful certainty¹³, announced that the city would be endangered by fire in the course of the night¹⁴.

1, Nom. der seligmachende Berg.. 2, = majestic. 3, seinen im orientalischen Stile erbauten, mit Bäumen und Gärten umgebenen Palästen. 4, Kreml, m. 5, einem ungeheuren, dreieckigen, mit vielen Thürmen verzierten Gebäude; something — castle, welches zwischen einem Palaste und einem Schlosse die Mitte hielt; which = and. 6, = great; groves, Baumgruppen. 7, = smoked; not a man = nobody. 8, blickte . . . darauf hin. 9, = high. 10, less — future, Liter. = which troubled itself (sich befürmern) only about (um) the present (Gegenwart, f.). 11, Here follows the predicate 'announced'. 12, = the origin of which could not be traced (ausfindig machen). See S. 4, N. 4 (man). 13, = event. 14, = that the town during the night would be exposed to a great conflagration.

Section 218.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW.

II.

The report seemed to arise from¹ those evident circumstances which rendered the event probable, but no one took any notice of it, until² at midnight, *when* the soldiers were startled from their quarters by the report that the town was in flames (App. § 28). The memorable conflagration began amongst³ the coachmakers' warehouses and workshops in the Bazaar, *which was* the richest district of the city. It was imputed to accident, and the progress of the flames was subdued by the exertions of the French soldiers. Napoleon, who had been roused by the tumult, hurried to the spot⁴; and when the alarm seemed at an end⁵, he retired, not to his former quarters in the suburbs, but to the Kremlin, the hereditary palace of the only sovereign whom he had ever treated as an equal⁶, and over whom his successful arms had now attained such an apparently⁷ immense superiority. Yet he did not suffer himself to be dazzled by the advantages he had attained, but availed himself of the light of the blazing Bazaar, to write to the Emperor proposals of peace with his own hand⁸. They were despatched by a Russian officer of rank, who had been disabled by indisposition from following the army. But no answer was ever returned⁹.

Next day the flames had disappeared, and the French officers luxuriously¹⁰ employed themselves (S. 87, N. 6) in selecting out of the deserted palaces of Moscow, that which best pleased the fancy of each for his residence. At night the flames again arose in the north and west quarters of the city. As the greater part of the houses were built of wood, the conflagration spread with the most dreadful rapidity.

1, = to have arisen from (entstehen (aus), conjugated with sein). 2, Supply 'at last' here and omit the comma and the conj. 'when'. To be startled from one's quarters, von seinem Nachtlager aufgeschreckt werden. 3, = in; warehouse, Magazin, n. 4, herbeieilen. 5, = and when the danger seemed

to be over. 6, wie jeinesgleichen. 7, apparently, wie es schien, which place after the adv. 'now'. 8, Say 'to write to the Emperor with his own hands (eigenhändig, adj. used attributively) a letter, in which he offered him proposals of peace (S. 76, N. 22, B). 9, = The same (to agree with 'proposals of peace') remained however unanswered. 10, prachtliebend, which use as adj. before 'French officers'.

Section 219.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW.

III.

This was at first imputed to the blazing brands [= pieces of wood] and sparkles which were carried by the wind; but at length it was observed, that, as often as the wind changed¹,—and it changed three times in that terrible night,—new flames broke always forth in that direction, where² the existing gale was calculated to direct them on³ the Kremlin. These horrors were⁴ increased by the chance⁵ of explosion. There was, though as yet unknown to the French, a magazine of powder in the Kremlin; besides that, a park of artillery, with its ammunition, was drawn up⁶ under the Emperor's window. Morning (S. 3, N. 2) came, and with it a dreadful scene. During the whole night, the metropolis had glared⁷ with a thick and suffocating atmosphere, of almost palpable smoke. The flames defied the efforts of the French soldiery, and it is said that the fountains of the city had been rendered inaccessible, the water-pipes cut, and the fire-engines destroyed or carried off.

Then came the reports of fire-balls having been found burning in deserted houses; of men and women, that, like demons, had been seen openly spreading the flames, and who were said to be⁸ furnished with combustibles for rendering their dreadful work more secure. Several wretches against⁹ whom such acts had been charged, were seized (S. 2, N. 1) upon, and, probably without much inquiry, were shot on the spot. While it was almost impossible to keep the roof of the Kremlin free of the burning brands which the wind showered down¹⁰, Napoleon watched from the windows the course of the fire which devoured his fair conquest, and the exclamation burst from him¹¹: "These are indeed Scythians!"

1, as — changed, bei jedem Windewechsel; it = the wind. 2, where = which through (durch); to calculate, berechnen (auf); read S. 87, N. 6. 3, = to. 4, Insert here the adv. noch. 5, = possibility; of, von, followed by the plural. 6, = put up, aufstellen. 7, = had been filled. 8, The Emperor is said to be dead, der Kaiser soll tot sein. 9, against — charged = who were (waren) accused (beschuldigen) of such a deed. 10, = which were carried away by (S. 106, N. 23) the wind in great number (Menge, f.). 11, = and he exclaimed involuntarily (unwillkürlich).

Section 220.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW.

IV.

The equinoctial gales rose higher and higher¹ upon the third night, and extended the flames, with which there was no longer any human

power of contending². At the dead³ hour of midnight, the Kremlin itself was found to be on fire. A soldier of the Russian police, charged with being incendiary⁴, was turned over⁵ to the summary⁶ vengeance of the Imperial Guard. Bonaparte was then, at length, persuaded, by the entreaties of all around him, to relinquish his quarters in the Kremlin, to which, as the visible mark of his conquest, he had seemed to cling with the tenacity of a lion holding a fragment of his prey. He encountered both difficulty and danger in retiring from the palace, and, before he could gain the city gate, he had to traverse with his suite streets arched with fire⁷, and in which the very air they breathed was suffocating. At length he gained the open country, and took up his abode in a palace of the Czar's called Petrowsky, about a French league from the city. As he looked back on the fire, which, under the influence of the autumnal wind, swelled and surged round the Kremlin, like an infernal ocean around a sable Pandemonium⁸, he could not suppress the ominous expression: "This bodes us great misfortune!"

The fire continued to triumph unopposed, and consumed in a few days what it had cost centuries to raise. "Palaces and temples," says a Russian author, "monuments of art, and miracles of luxury, the remains of ages which had passed away, and those which had been the creation of yesterday; the tombs of ancestors, and the nursery-cradles⁹ of the present generation, were indiscriminately destroyed. Nothing was left of Moscow save the remembrance of the city, and the deep resolution to avenge its fall."

The fire raged till the 19th of September with unabated violence, and then began to slacken for want of fuel. It is said four-fifths of this great city were laid in ruins.—SIR WALTER SCOTT.

- 1, immer stärker werden; upon = during, with which commence the period.
 2, there was no longer . . . of contending = could no longer contend.
 3, = quiet. 4, This man is charged with being incendiary, man beschuldigt diesen Mann der Brandstiftung. 5, übergeben, with Dat. 6, here = immediate, sofortig, adj. 7, über denen von beiden Seiten ein Feuermeer emporstieg.
 8, um ein schwarzes Pandæmonium (ein Dämonentempel, das Reich des Satans).
 9, die Geburtsstätten, N. Pl.

Section 221.

CHRISTMAS IN GERMANY.

I.

Frankfort-on-the-Maine, Jan. 2, 1845.

We have lately¹ witnessed the most beautiful and interesting of all German festivals—Christmas—which is celebrated in a style truly characteristic of the² people. About the commencement of December, the Christmarkt, or fair, was opened in the Römerberg³, and has continued to the present time. The booths, decorated with green boughs, were filled with toys of various kinds, among which, during the first days, the figure of St. Nicholas was conspicuous. There were⁴ bunches of wax candles to illuminate⁵ the Christmas tree, gingerbread with printed mottoes in poetry⁶, beautiful little earthenware, basket-work,

and a wilderness⁷ of playthings. The sixth of December, being Nicholas day¹⁴, the booths were lighted up, and the square was filled with boys, running from one stand to another, all shouting and talking together in the most joyous confusion⁸. Nurses were going around, carrying the smaller children in their arms, and parents bought presents decorated with sprigs of pine and carried them away.

Many of the tables had *bundles* of rods with gilded bands, which were to be used that evening by the persons who represented St. Nicholas. In the family with whom we reside, one of our German friends dressed himself⁹ very grotesquely with a mask, fur robe, and long tapering cap. He came in with a *bunch* of rods, a sack, and a broom for¹⁰ sceptre. After we all had received our share of the beating, he threw the contents of his bag on the table, and while we were scrambling for the nuts and apples, gave us many smart raps over the fingers. In many families the children are made to say¹¹: "I thank you¹², Herr Nicholas," and the rods are hung up in the room until Christmas, to keep them in good behaviour¹³. This¹⁴ was only a forerunner of the "Christkindchen's" coming. The Nicholas is the punishing spirit, and the "Christkindchen" the rewarding one.

1, fürzlich. 2, Render 'of the' by the Dat. of the def. art., and use the attributive construction for 'truly — people'. 3, auf dem Römerberge, a large square (Platz, m.) in the City. 4, Es waren dort. 5, zur Strauchung. 6, = verses. 7, = great number, Menge, f. 8, = excitement. 9, sich verkleiden. 10, als. 11, läßt man die Kinder sagen. 12, Gud. 13, um die Kleinen daran zu erinnern, sich gut zu betragen. 14, Der St. (S. 103, N. 33) Nicolaustag; forerunner, Vorfeier, f.

Section 222.

CHRISTMAS IN GERMANY.

II.

When this time was over, we all began preparing secretly our presents for Christmas. Every day there was¹ a consultation about the things which should be obtained². It was so arranged that we should interchange presents, but nobody must³ know beforehand what he would receive. What pleasure there was in all these secret purchases and preparations! Scarcely anything was thought or spoken of but Christmas, and every day the consultations became more numerous and secret. The trees were bought some time before-hand, but as we Americans were to witness the festival for the first time, we were not allowed to see them prepared, in order that the effect might be as great as possible. The market in the Römerberg Square grew constantly larger and more brilliant. Every night it was illuminated with lamps and thronged with people. Quite a forest sprang up in the street before our door. The old stone house opposite, with the traces of so many centuries on its dark face, seemed to stand in the midst of a garden. It was a pleasure to go out every evening and see the children rushing to and fro, shouting and selecting toys from the booths and talking all the time of the Christmas

that was so near (S. 48, N. 6). The poor people went with ⁴ their little presents hid under their cloaks, lest their children might see them; every heart was glad, and every countenance wore a smile of secret pleasure.

Finally, the day before Christmas arrived. The streets were so full. I ⁵ could scarcely make my way through ⁶, and the sale of trees went on ⁷ more rapidly than ever. These were ⁸ usually branches of pine or fir, set upright ⁹ in a little miniature garden of moss. When the lamps were lighted at night, our street had the appearance of an illuminated garden. We were prohibited from entering the rooms upstairs in which the grand ceremony was to take place, being obliged ¹⁰ to take our seats in those arranged for the guests, and to await with impatience the hour when the "Christkindchen" should call us.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1, statt finden. | 2, = procured, an'schaffen. | 3, = but that nobody |
| should. | 4, went with = had. | 5, = that I. |
| way through, sich einen Weg durch die Menge bahnen. | | 6, to make one's |
| 3, bestehen (aus). | 9, welche . . . hineingestellt waren. | 7, vorstatten gehen. |
| | | 10, = and were obliged. |

Section 223.

CHRISTMAS IN GERMANY.

III.

Several relatives of the family came (S. 104, N. 19), and, what was more agreeable, they brought with them five or six children. I was anxious to see how they would view the ceremony ¹. Finally, in the midst of an interesting conversation, we heard the bell ringing at the head of ² the stairs. We all started up, and made for ³ the door. I ran up the steps with the children at my heels, and at the top met ⁴ a blaze of dazzling light, coming from the open door. In each room stood a great table, on which presents were arranged, amid flowers and wreaths. From ⁵ the centre rose the beautiful Christmas tree, covered with wax tapers to the very top, which made the room nearly as light as day ⁶, while every bough was hung with sweetmeats and gilded nuts. The children ran shouting around the table, hunting ⁷ their presents, while the older persons had theirs pointed out to them. I had a little library of German authors *as my share*; and many of the others received quite valuable gifts.

But how beautiful was the heartfelt joy that shone on every countenance! As each one discovered his presents, he embraced the givers, and it was a scene of unmingled joy ⁸. It is a glorious feast, this Christmas time! What a chorus from happy hearts went up on that evening to Heaven! Full of poetry and feeling, and glad associations, it is here anticipated with delight, and leaves a pleasant memory behind it. We may laugh at such simple festivals at home, and prefer to shake ourselves loose from every shackle ⁹ that bears the rust of the past, but we should certainly be happier if some of these beautiful old customs were better honoured. They renew the bond of feeling ¹⁰ between families and friends, and strengthen their kindly sympathy; even life-long associates require occasions of this kind to freshen the tie that binds them together ¹¹.
—BAYARD TAYLOR, "VIEWS AFOOT."

- 1, wie sie sich bei dem Feste benehmen würden. 2, at the head of, oben auf.
 3, = ran towards. 4, = found. 5, = In; rose = stood. 6, as —
 day, tageshell; 'to make', here erleuchten. 7, = and searched for (nach).
 8, = empfangen. 9, Use this noun in the pl., Fesseln; bears = bear.
 10, = love; to — together, um das sie verbindende Band fester zu schürzen.

Section 224.

NEW-YEAR'S EVE (S. 152, N. 1) IN GERMANY.

New-Year's Eve is also favoured with a peculiar celebration¹ in Germany. Everybody remains up and makes himself merry until midnight. The Christmas trees are again lighted, and while the tapers are burning out, the family play for² articles which they have purchased and hung on the boughs. It is so arranged that each one shall win as much as he gives, and the change³ of articles creates much amusement. One of the ladies rejoiced in the possession of a red silk handkerchief and a cake of soap, while a cup and saucer and a pair of scissors fell to my lot. As midnight drew near, the noise became louder in the streets, and companies of people, some of them⁴ singing in chorus, passed by on their way to the Zeil⁵. Finally, it struck a quarter to twelve, the windows were opened, and every one waited anxiously for the clock to strike twelve. At the first sound, such a cry arose as one may imagine when thirty or forty thousand persons all set their lungs going⁶ at once. Everybody in the house, in the street, over the whole city, shouted: "Prost Neujahr⁷!"

In families, all the members embrace each other, with wishes of happiness for the new year. Then the windows are thrown open, and they cry to their neighbours or those passing by.

After we had exchanged congratulations, three of us set out for the Zeil. The streets were full of people, shouting to one another and to those standing at the open windows. We failed not to cry: "Prost Neujahr!" wherever we saw a damsel at the window, and the words came back to us more musically than we sent them. Along the Zeil the spectacle was most singular. The great wide street was filled with companies of men, marching up and down, while from the mass rang up one deafening, unending shout, that seemed to pierce the black sky above. The whole scene looked stranger and wilder in the flickering light of the swinging lamps⁸, and I could not help thinking it must resemble a night in Paris, during the French Revolution.—BAYARD TAYLOR, "VIEWS AFOOT."

- 1, is — celebration = is celebrated in (auf) a peculiar way. 2, um.
 3, Tausch or Austausch, m. 4, = of whom some were. 5, die Zeil is one of the principal streets in Frankfort a/M. 6, to set going, in Bewegung setzen.
 7, Properly: Prost Neujahr! A happy New-Year to you!
 8, Before the introduction of gas, the lamps hung in the middle of the street on ropes which were attached to the houses on both sides of the street.

Section 225.

THE TWO ROBBERS.

I.

WE OFTEN CONDEMN IN OTHERS WHAT WE PRACTISE OURSELVES.

(Alexander the Great in his tent. A man with a fierce countenance, chained and fettered, brought before him.)

ALEXANDER.—What, art thou the Thracian robber, of whose exploits I have heard so much?

ROBBER.—I am a Thracian, and a soldier.

ALEXANDER.—A soldier?—a thief, a plunderer, an assassin! the pest of the country! I could honour thy courage, but I must detest and punish thy crimes.

ROBBER.—What have I done of which you can complain¹?

ALEXANDER.—Hast thou not set at defiance my authority, violated the public peace, and passed thy life² in injuring the persons³ and properties of thy fellow-subjects⁴?

ROBBER.—Alexander! I am your captive. I must hear what you please to say, and endure what you please to inflict. But my soul is unconquered; and if I reply at all⁵ to your reproaches, I will reply like a free man.

ALEXANDER.—Speak freely. Far be it from me to take⁶ the advantage of my power, to silence those with whom I deign to converse!

ROBBER.—I must then answer your question by another. How have you passed your life?

ALEXANDER.—Like a hero. Ask Fame⁷, and she will tell you. Among the brave, I have been the bravest; among sovereigns, the noblest; among conquerors, the mightiest.

1, sich über etwas beklagen. Use the 2nd person Plural when the robber addresses Alexander. 2, und dein Leben damit zugebracht. 3, = the personal safety. 4, deiner Nebenmenschen. 5, überhaupt. 6, = to use. 7, 'Fame,' here Fama, die Göttin des Ruhmes. FAME, or FAMA, was a poetical deity, represented as having wings and blowing a trumpet. A temple was dedicated to her by the Romans.

Section 226.

THE TWO ROBBERS.

II.

ROBBER.—And does not Fame speak of me too? Was there (S. 82, N. 7) ever a bolder captain of a more valiant band? Was there ever—but I scorn to boast. You yourself know that I have not been easily subdued.

ALEXANDER.—Still, what are you but a robber, a base, dishonest robber?

ROBBER.—And what is a conqueror? Have not you, too, gone about the earth¹ like an evil genius, blasting² the fair fruits of peace and in-

dustry, plundering, ravaging, killing³ without law, without justice, merely to gratify an insatiable lust for dominion? All that I have done to a single district with a hundred followers, you have done to whole nations with a hundred thousand. If I have stripped individuals⁴, you (S. 27, N. 8) have ruined kings and princes. If I have burned a few hamlets, you have desolated the most flourishing kingdoms and cities of the earth. What is then the difference⁵, but that, as you were born a king, and I a private man⁶, you have been able to become a mightier robber than I?

ALEXANDER.—But if I have taken like a king, I have given like a king. If I have subverted empires, I have founded greater. I have cherished⁷ arts, commerce, and philosophy.

ROBBER.—I, too, have freely given to the poor, what I took from the rich. I have established order and discipline among the most ferocious of mankind⁸, and have stretched out my protecting arm over the oppressed. I know, indeed, little of the philosophy you talk of; but I believe neither you nor I will ever atone to the world for the mischiefs we have done.

ALEXANDER.—Leave me!—Take off his chains, and use him well. Are we, then, so much like?—Alexander and a Robber?—Let me reflect⁹.—DR. AIKIN.

1, 'to go about the earth' here über die Erde herziehen, conjugated with sein.
 2, = to (um . . . zu) blast, vernichten. 3, = Have you not plundered, ravaged and killed.
 4, = robbed common citizens. 5, Besteht denn zwischen uns beiden ein anderer Unterschied als der, daß; followed by 'you have — than I', according to S. 211, N. 9.
 6, = common citizen. 7, here = protected.
 8, = of all men. 9, Ich will darüber nachdenken.

Section 227.

A TOUCHING SCENE AT SEA.

I.

Two weeks ago¹ on board an English steamer, a little ragged boy, aged nine years, was discovered on the fourth day of the voyage *out* from Liverpool to New York, and carried before the first mate, whose duty it was to deal with such cases. When questioned as to his object in being stowed away², and who brought him on board, the boy, who had a beautiful sunny face, and eyes that looked like the very mirrors of truth, replied that his stepfather did it, because he could not afford³ to keep him, nor to pay his passage *out* to Halifax, where he had an aunt who⁴ was well off, and to whose house he was going. The mate did not believe the story, in spite of the winning face and truthful⁵ accents of the boy. He had seen too much of stow-aways⁶ to be easily deceived by them, he said; and it was his firm conviction that the boy had been brought on board and provided with food by the sailors. The little fellow was very roughly handled in consequence. Day by day he was questioned and re-questioned, but always with the same result. He did not know a sailor on board, and his father alone had secreted him, and given him the food which he ate. At⁷ last the mate, wearied by the boy's persistence in the same story, and perhaps a little anxious to

inculpate the sailors, seized him one day by the collar, and dragging him to the fore⁸, told him that (S. 211, N. 9) unless he would tell the truth in ten minutes from that time, he would hang him from the yard-arm.

1, Vor vierzehn Tagen, after which place predicate and subject [one discovered], since, as a rule, only *one* part of the adjuncts to the predicate should be placed before it. 2, as — away = warum er aufs Schiff geschmuggelt sei (App. §§ 28 and 30). 3, I cannot afford to keep you, meine Mittel gestatten mir nicht, dich zu ernähren. 4, The relative clause 'who — off' may be avoided by using the adjective 'wohlhabend' before 'aunt'. 5, here glaubwürdig; accents, Sprache. 6, 'the stow-away' may perhaps be rendered by der Eingeschmuggelte. 7, It will easily be seen that, on account of the length of this period and of the many dependent clauses contained therein, it requires an altogether different form of construction in German. The author will, however, refrain from indicating the form to be used, the student being by this time expected to have attained sufficient skill and practice for dealing with such cases. 8, aufs Vortheil des Schiffes.

Section 228.

A TOUCHING SCENE AT SEA.

II.

He then made him sit down under it on the deck. All around him were the passengers and sailors of the watch, and in front of him stood the inexorable mate, with his chronometer in his hand, and the other officers of the ship by his side. It was the finest sight, said our informant¹, that he ever beheld—to see the pale, proud, sorrowful face of that noble boy, his head erect, his beautiful eyes bright through the tears that suffused them. When eight minutes had fled², the mate told him he had but two minutes to live, and advised him to speak the truth and save his life; but he replied with the utmost simplicity and sincerity by asking (S. 111, N. 6) the mate if he might pray. The mate said nothing, but nodded his head, turned as pale as a ghost³, and shook *with trembling* like a reed with⁴ the wind. And there, all eyes turned on him, the brave and noble little fellow, this poor waif, whom society owned not, and whose own stepfather could not care for him—there he knelt, with clasped hands, and eyes turned up to heaven, while he repeated⁵ audibly the Lord's Prayer, and prayed the Lord Jesus to take him to heaven. There then occurred (S. 104, N. 19) a scene as at Pentecost. Sobs broke⁶ from the strong hard hearts, as the mate sprang forward to the boy, and kissed and blessed him, and told him how sincerely he believed his story, and how glad he was that he had been willing enough to face death⁷ and to sacrifice his life for the truth of his word.—REV. E. DAVIES.

1, Place 'said — informant (here Gewährsmann, m.)' after 'that — beheld'. 2, = were over. 3, as — ghost, geisterbleich. 4, = in. 5, = said; audibly = aloud. 6, Ein Schluchzen entrang sich, followed by the Dat. 7, to face death, dem Tode ins Antlitz schauen, or dem Tode trogbieten.

Section 229.

AN ORATION ON THE POWER OF HABIT.

I.

I will now speak of a habit which I believe¹ is, more than any other, debasing, degrading, and embruting to man²; both³ physically, intellectually, and morally. I am not going to give you an address⁴ full of my favourite theme [temperance], but I must speak of it⁵. I must speak of it before this assembly, for I shall never see you again till we meet on that day when we shall see things as they are⁶. Let me then speak of one habit which, in its power, and⁷ influence, and⁸ fascination, seems to rear its head like a Goliath or Saul above all its kindred agencies of demoralization; I allude to⁹ the habit of using intoxicating liquors as a beverage, until that habit becomes a fascination¹⁰. You will allow me to give¹¹ my opinions upon these points freely. I consider drunkenness not merely to be a moral evil, but also a physical evil, and¹² it depends a great deal more upon the temperament, and the constitution, and disposition of the young man, whether if he falls into the drinking usages of society, it becomes a habit or not, than it does upon his strength of mind or firmness of purpose¹³.

Take a young man, and he shall be full of fire¹⁴ and poetry. He shall be¹⁵ of a nervous temperament and generous heart; fond of society, and open and manly in everything he does. Every one loves him. That is the man most liable to become intemperate.

1, = as I believe. 2, is . . . to man, auf den Menschen wirkt. 3, 'both', hier und zwar. 4, to give an address to a person, einem eine Rede halten; of, über. 5, ich muß dasſelbe aber wenigſtens berühren (allude to). 6, Render 'for — are' Liter. = for we shall see one another only (S. 109, N. 5) on that day, when (wo) we shall see (ſehen) the things in their true form (Geſtalt, f.). 7, = in its. 8, = and its. 9, = I mean; of using — beverage = of drinking intoxicating liquors. 10, until — fascination, bis dieſe Gewohnheit einen zauberhaften Reiz auf den Menschen ausübt. 11, = express. 12, Say 'and when a young man once follows the general habit of taking intoxicating liquors, it depends, etc.' 13, his — purpose, ſeine Geiſtes- oder Willenskraft. 14, = who is full of (voller) fire. 15, The student will do well to omit the words 'He shall be' and join this period to the preceding one.

Section 230.

AN ORATION ON THE POWER OF HABIT.

II.

He enters¹ into the outer circle of the whirlpool, and throws care to the winds². There he thinks to stay, but he gets nearer and nearer to the fatal gulf, until he is swept into the vortex before he dreamed of danger. This thing, habit³, comes gradually. Many a man who has acquired⁴ a habit of drinking, but does not exactly proceed to excess⁵, is rescued simply by possessing certain physical qualities which his poor unfortunate friend had not. You say: "I am not so foolish as to become a drunkard!" So He thought once. You say: "I can leave it off⁶ when

I like," as if He at first had not had (App. § 33) the power to leave it off when he liked. You say: "I have too sound an intellect to become a drunkard," as if He were born without an intellect. You say: "I have too much pride in myself, too much self-respect," as if He were not once as proud as you." *The way* men acquire this habit, *is* by looking on those⁷ who proceed to excess as naturally inferior to themselves. The difference between you and the drunkard is just this, that you could leave off⁸ the habit, but won't; he would⁹ with all his heart and soul, but cannot. I tell you, young men¹⁰, that while the power of a bad habit is stripping you of nerve [pl.], and (S. 10, N. 9) energy, and freshness of feeling¹¹, it does not destroy your responsibility. You are accountable to God for every power, and talent, and influence with which you have been endowed.

1, = approaches. 2, to throw care to the winds, *sich keine Sorgen machen*. 3, = What one calls habit. 4, to acquire a habit, *in eine Gewohnheit verfallen*. 5, *der dieselbe jedoch eigentlich nicht übertreibt*. 6, to leave off, *aufhören*. 7, = by considering (halten) those; to proceed to excess, *sich dem Übermaß ergeben*; as — themselves = as (für) *being* worse than themselves. 8, here *aufgeben*. 9, = and that he would give it up. 10, Commence the period with 'Young men'. 11, *Gefühlsfrische*, f.

Section 231.

AN ORATION ON THE POWER OF HABIT.

III.

If you say: "Should I find the practice by experience to be injurious, I will give it up," surely that is not common sense¹. You might as well say: "I will put my hand into the nest of the rattlesnake, and when I find out that he has stuck his fangs into me², I will draw it out and get cured."

I remember riding from³ Buffalo to the Niagara Falls, and said to a gentleman: "What river is that, Sir?" "That," he said, "is Niagara River⁴." "Well, it is a beautiful stream," said I, "bright, and fair, and glossy; how far off are the rapids⁵?" "Only a mile or two," was the reply. "Is it possible that (S. 66, N. 15) only a mile or two from us we shall find the water in the turbulence which it must show *when* near the falls?" "You will find it so, Sir." And so I did find it; and that first sight of the Niagara I shall never forget. Now, launch your boat on that Niagara river; it is bright, smooth, beautiful, and glossy. There is a ripple at the bow⁶, and the silvery wake⁷ you leave behind adds to your enjoyment. Down the stream you glide; oars, sails, and helm are in proper trim, and you set out⁸ on your pleasure excursion⁹. Suddenly some one cries out from the bank: "Young men, ahoy¹⁰!" "What is it¹¹!"—"The rapids are below you¹²!"—"Ha, ha! we have heard of the rapids, but we are not so foolish as to get there¹³. If we go [=If it goes] too fast, then up with the helm¹⁴, then set the mast in the socket¹⁵, hoist the sail, and speed to land¹⁶. Then on¹⁷, boys; don't be alarmed—there's no danger!"

- 1, =reasonable. 2, stuck — me = bitten me. 3, riding from = that I during a journey from; change 'and said to' into 'asked'. 4, Use the def. art. 5, die Stromschnellen. 6, Das Wasser fräufelt sich am Bug des Bootes. 7, Kielwasser, n. 8, 'to set out on', here an'treten, v. tr. 9, Vergnügungsteur. 10, Ohei! of which pronounce every vowel separately and slowly in the German way. 11, Was giebt's. 12, are below you, sind dort unten nicht weit von euch! 13, as — there, so weit zu fahren. 14, dann schnell das Steuerruder hinein. 15, dann richten wir den Mast auf. 16, und eilen ans Land! 17, Daher nur immer vorwärts.

Section 232.

AN ORATION ON THE POWER OF HABIT.

IV.

"Young men, ahoy, *there!*"—"What is it?"—"The rapids are below you!"—"Ha, ha! we will laugh and quaff; all things delight us. What care we for the future? No man ever saw it. 'Sufficient for the day is the evil thereof!.' We will enjoy life while we may²; we will catch pleasure as it flies. This is enjoyment; time enough³ to steer out of danger when we are driving swiftly with the current."—"Young men, ahoy!"—"What is it?"—"Beware! Beware! The rapids are below you!"—Now you see water foaming⁴ all around you.—See how fast you pass that point!—Up with the helm!—Now turn⁵!—Pull hard⁶—quick!—quick!—pull for your lives!—pull till⁷ the blood starts from the nostrils, and the veins stand like whipcord upon the brow! Set the mast in the socket! hoist the sail! Ah, ah!—it is too late! Shrieking, cursing, howling, blaspheming, over you go⁸!—Thousands go over the rapids of Intemperance⁹ every year, through the power of evil habit, crying out all the while¹⁰: "When I find out that it is injuring me, I will give it up!" The power of evil habit, I repeat, is fascinating¹¹, is deceptive; and man may go on arguing and coming to conclusions while on the way down to destruction¹².—J. B. GOUGH.

- 1, Es ist genug, daß ein jeglicher Tag seine eigene Plage habe! 2, so lange wir es noch können. 3, es bleibt uns noch Zeit genug. 4, schäumendes Wasser. 5, 'to turn', here um'sehren. 6, Pull, Rubert; 'hard', here aus Leibeskräften. 7, Supply the pron. euch here; starts = streams; from the nostrils, aus der Nase. 8, stürzt ihr in den Abgrund hinunter! 9, Trunksucht, f., seems to be the right expression here, although the dictionaries translate the word by Unmäßigkeit, f., and Völlerei, f. 10, und rufen immer. 11, here bestrickend; is = and. 12, and — destruction = and often we are still occupied with arguing a matter (eine Sache gründlich zu erörtern) in order to come (gelangen) to a definite conclusion, when we are (sich befinden) already on the way to destruction (Verderben, n.).

Section 233.

A CURIOUS STORY¹.

I.

We heard a curious story¹ at Tristan² about two Germans who had settled nearly two years before on Inaccessible Island³. Once a year,

about the month of December, the Tristan men go⁴ to the two outlying islands to pick up the few seals which are still to be found there. On two of these occasions they had seen the Germans, and within a few months smoke had risen from the island, which they attributed⁵ to their having fired (S. 161, N. 21) some of the brushwood; but as they had seen or heard nothing of them since, they thought the probability was that they had perished. Captain Nares⁶ wished to visit the other islands, and to ascertain the fate of the two men was an additional object in doing so⁷.

Next morning we were close under Inaccessible Island, the second in size of the little group of three. The ship was surrounded by multitudes of penguins⁸, and as few of us had any previous personal acquaintance with this eccentric form of life⁹, we followed their movements with great interest. The penguin as a rule swims under water, rising now and then and resting on the surface, like one of the ordinary water-birds, but more frequently with its body entirely covered, and only lifting its head from time to time to breathe.

The structure of Inaccessible Island is very much the same as Tristan, only the pre-eminent feature¹⁰ of the latter, the snowy cone, is wanting. A wall of volcanic rocks, about the same height as the cliff at Tristan, and which one is inclined to believe to have been at one time continuous with it, entirely surrounds Inaccessible Island, falling for the most part sheer¹¹ into the sea, and it seems that it slopes sufficiently to allow a tolerably easy ascent to the plateau on the top at one point only.

- 1, This story is taken from Mr. W. J. J. Spry's most interesting account of 'The Cruise of the Challenger'. The Tristan d'Acunha group of islands (die *Erfrischungseinseln*), so named from the Portuguese navigator who discovered it early in the 16th century, lies in mid-ocean, about 1300 miles south of St. Helena and 1500 miles west of the Cape of Good Hope, nearly on a line between the Cape of Good Hope and Cape Horn; it is thus probably the most isolated and remote of all the abodes of men. The group consists of the larger Island of Tristan and two smaller islands—Inaccessible Island, about 18 miles south-west from Tristan, and Nightingale Island, twenty miles south of the main island. Tristan only is permanently inhabited, the other two are visited from time to time by sealers. In the year 1829 Tristan was inhabited by 27 families; in 1836 it possessed a population of 42; in 1852 the population had risen to 85, and in 1867 this number was only exceeded by one. 2, *Auf der Insel Tristan*, which place at the head of the period; about, *über*, with Acc. 3, The author finds that the best German maps use the English name of 'Inaccessible Island' unaltered. This is also the case with 'Nightingale Island'. 4, *fahren*; 'to go', when used in the sense of 'travelling, riding (in a carriage), driving, sailing, etc.', is mostly rendered by *reisen* (generally used for greater distances) or by *fahren*. When used in the sense of 'riding on horseback,' it is rendered by *reiten*. 5, = which they attributed to the circumstance. 6, Captain Nares was the commander of 'The Challenger' at that time. 7, and — so = and as he was anxious (begierig) to ascertain (*erforschen*) the fate of the two men, the voyage [there, *dahin*] was at once determined upon. 8, *der Pinguin*, pl. *e*. 9, with — life, *mit dieser eigenthümlichen Vogelart*. 10, = the characteristic peculiarity. 11, = straight.

Section 234.

A CURIOUS STORY.

II.

There is a shallow bay in which the ship anchored in fifteen fathoms on the east side of the island; and there, as in Tristan, a narrow belt of low ground, extending for about a mile along the shore, is interposed between the cliff and the sea. A pretty waterfall tossed itself down, about the middle of the bay, over the cliff from the plateau above. A little way down it was nearly lost in spray, like the Staubbach of Schaffhausen, and collected itself again into a rivulet¹, where it regained the rock at the lower level. A hut built of stones and clay, and roofed with spars and thatch, lay in a little hollow² near the waterfall, and the two Germans, in excellent health and spirits, but enraptured at the sight of the ship and longing for a passage anywhere out of the island, were³ down on the beach, waiting for the first boat. Their story is a curious one⁴, and as Captain Nares agreed⁵ to take them to the Cape, we had ample time to get an account of their adventures, and to supplement from their experience such crude notions of the nature of the place as we could gather during our short stay⁶.

Frederick and Gustav Stoltenhoff are sons of a dyer in Aix-la-Chapelle (Nachen). Frederick, the elder, was employed in a merchant's office in Aix-la-Chapelle at the time of the Franco-German war (1870). He was called on to serve in the German army, where he attained the rank of a lieutenant, and took part in the siege of Metz and Thionville. At the end of the campaign he was discharged, and returned home to find his old situation filled up.

1, gestaltete sich jedoch wieder zu einem kleinen Bache. 2, Vertiefung, f. 3, =stood. Consult S. 5, N. 2. 4, =very (höchst) curious. 5, =granted them their request. 6, Let the student endeavour to construe this passage by means of the attributive construction, which will prove excellent practice.

Section 235.

A CURIOUS STORY.

III.

In the meantime, his younger brother, Gustav, who was a sailor and had already made several trips, had joined¹ on the 1st of August, 1870, at Greenock, as an ordinary seaman, the English ship "Beacon Light," bound for Rangoon. On the way out², the cargo, which consisted of coal, caught fire³ when they were from⁴ six to seven hundred miles north-west of Tristan d'Acunha, and for (S. 166, N. 10) three days all hands⁵ were doing their utmost to extinguish the fire. On the third day, the hatches, which had been battened down, to exclude the air, blew up⁶, the main hatch carrying overboard⁷ the second mate who had been

standing on it at the time of the explosion. The boats had been provisioned beforehand, ready to leave the ship. Two of the crew were drowned through one of the boats being swamped⁸; and the survivors, to the number of sixteen, were stowed in the long-boat. Up to this time the ship had been nearing Tristan with a fair wind at the rate of⁹ six knots an hour¹⁰, so that they had now only about three hundred miles to go. They abandoned the ship on Friday; on Saturday afternoon they sighted Tristan, and on the following day a boat came off to their assistance and towed them ashore.

The shipwrecked crew remained for eighteen days at Tristan d'Acunha, during which time they were treated with all kindness and hospitality. They were relieved by the ill-fated "Northfleet," bound for Aden with coal, and Gustav Stoltenhoff found his way back to Aix-la-Chapelle.

1, to join a ship, *sich einem Schiffe verheuern*. 2, = On the voyage thither (thitherin). 3, to catch fire, in *Brand geraten*. 4, = about, *ungefähr*. 5, 'all hands', here = all sailors, *die ganze Mannschaft, alle Matrosen, alle Schiffsleute*. 6, in die Luft sprengen; the hatches, *die Luken*; the main hatch, *die große Luke*. 7, = and the main hatch carried overboard (*über Bord schleudern*). 8, = through the sinking of one of the boats. 9, 'at the rate of', referring to the rapidity of motion, is rendered by '*mit einer Schnelligkeit von*', but when referring to price, is generally rendered by '*zum Preise von*'. 10, an hour, *in der Stunde, per Stunde, or die Stunde*. He receives 20 marks a week, *er erhält 20 Mark die Woche (or wöchentlich)*.

Section 236.

A CURIOUS STORY.

IV.

During his stay at Tristan he heard that a large number of seals were to be had among the islands¹, and he seems to have been greatly pleased with the Tristaners and to have formed a project of returning there. When he got home, his brother had just got back from the war and was unemployed; he infected him with his notion², and the two agreed³ to join in a venture to Tristan to see what they could (App. § 33) make⁴ by seal-hunting and barter.

They accordingly sailed for⁵ St. Helena in August 1871, and on the 6th of November left St. Helena for Tristan in an American whaler bound on a cruise⁶ in the South Atlantic. The captain of the whaler, who had been often at Tristan d'Acunha, had some doubt of the reception which the young men would get⁷ if they went as permanent settlers⁸ there, and he spoke so strongly of the advantages of Inaccessible Island, on account of the greater productiveness of the soil, and of its being the centre⁹ of the seal-fishing, that they changed their plans and were landed on the west side of Inaccessible Island on the 27th of November 1871,—early in summer. A quarter of an hour after, the whaler departed, leaving them the only inhabitants of one of the most remote spots on the face of the earth. They do not seem, however, to have been in the least depressed by their isolation.

The same day the younger brother clambered up to the plateau with the help of the tussock grass¹⁰, in search of goats or pigs, and remained there all night, and on the following day the two set to work to build themselves a hut for shelter. They had reached the end of their voyage by no means unprovided, and the inventory of their belongings¹¹ is curious.

- 1, in der Gegend der Inseln. 2, = he persuaded (gewinnen, str. v. tr.) his brother for his plan. 3, übereinkommen; to join — to Tristan = to undertake the adventurous voyage to Tristan. 4, = earn. 5, = to. 6, The vessel is bound on a cruise in the Atlantic, das Schiff ist dazu bestimmt, im atlantischen Ocean umherzufahren. 7, had — get = doubted (zweifelte daran) that the young men would be kindly (freundlich) received (aufnehmen). Use the active voice with 'man'. 8, He went there as a permanent settler, er ließ sich dort dauernd nieder. 9, = and of its central (zentral) position for seal-fishing. 10, das Tuffetgras. 11, here Habfeligkeiten, Nom. Pl.

Section 237.

A CURIOUS STORY.

V.

They had an old whale-boat¹ which they had bought at St. Helena, with mast, sails, and oars, three spars for a roof, a door, and a glazed window; a wheel-barrow, two spades and a shovel, two pickaxes, a saw, a hammer, two chisels, two or three gimlets, and some nails; a kettle, a frying-pan, two sauce-pans, knives and forks, and some crockery; two blankets each, and empty covers² which they afterwards filled with sea-birds' down. They had a lamp, a bottle of oil, and six dozen boxes of Bryant and May's matches.

For internal use³ they had two hundred pounds of flour, two hundred pounds of rice, one hundred pounds of biscuits, twenty pounds of coffee, ten pounds of tea, thirty pounds of sugar, three pounds of table-salt, a little pepper, eight pounds of tobacco, five bottles of gin, six bottles of Cape wine⁴, six bottles of vinegar, and some Epsom salts. A barrel of coarse salt was provided for curing seal-skins, and forty empty casks were intended for oil. Their arms and ammunition consisted of a short English rifle, an old German fowling-piece, two and a half pounds of powder, two hundred bullets, and four sheath-knives⁵. The captain of the whaler gave them some seed potatoes, and they had a collection of the ordinary garden seeds.

When they had been four days on the island, they had a visit from a party of men from Tristan, who had come on their annual sealing excursion. They were ten days on Inaccessible, and were very friendly in their intercourse with the new comers.

1, the whale-boat, das beim Wallfischfang gebräuchliche Boot. We have not a compound noun to render the English term. Say 'They had an old boat, which had been used (benutzt) for whale-fishing and which they had bought in (S. 46, N. 6) the Island of St. Helena.

- 2, here Überzug, m., pl. Überzüge. 3, für ihre körperlichen Bedürfnisse. 4, Raywein, m. 5, Jagdmeffer, m.

Section 238.

A CURIOUS STORY.

VI.

They told them that the north side of the island was better suited for a settlement, and transported all their goods (S. 236, N. 11) thither in one of their boats. Being familiar with the place, they showed them generally their way about and the different passes by which the plateau might be reached, and they taught them how to build¹ to withstand the violent winds, and how to thatch with tussock-grass. Immediately after they left, the brothers set about building a house and clearing some ground² for potatoes and other vegetables. They killed nineteen seals, and prepared the skins, but they were unable to make any³ quantity of oil. Towards the end of the sealing season their boat got damaged in the surf, and they were obliged to cut it in two⁴, patch up the best half of it, and use it as best they could⁵ in smooth weather, close to shore.

They went from time to time to the upper plateau and shot goats and pigs. When they first arrived, they counted a flock of twenty-three goats; three of these were killed during the summer of 1871-1872 by the Tristan people (S. 157, N. 4), and six by themselves; the remaining fourteen remained over the winter of 1872. The flesh of the goats they found extremely delicate. Pigs were much more numerous, but their flesh was not so palatable, from their feeding⁶ principally on sea-birds; that of the boars was especially rank. They found the pigs very valuable, however, in yielding an abundant supply of lard⁷, which they used for frying their potatoes.

1, = how they must (Imp. Subj.) build. 2, to clear the ground (=land), eine Strecke Landes urbar machen. 3, here erzielen; any = a large. 4, to cut in two, entzwei schneiden, sep. comp. irr. v. 5, = as well as possible. 6, from their feeding = as they lived; on, von. 7, in — lard = on account of their lard (Schmalz, n.).

Section 239.

A CURIOUS STORY.

VII.

In the month of April 1872, a singular misfortune befell them. While burning some of the brushwood below to make a clearing, the tussock-grass in the gully¹, by which they had been in the habit² of ascending the cliff, caught fire, and as it had been only by its assistance that they had been able to scramble up to the plateau, their only hunting-ground was now inaccessible from the strip of beach on which their hut and garden stood, which was closed in on either side by a headland jutting into the sea. While their half-boat remained seaworthy, they were able to paddle round in fine weather to the west side of the island, where there was an access to the top; but the "sea-cart," as they called it, was washed off the beach and broken up in June, and after that the only way they had of reaching the plateau was by swimming round the headland—a risky feat, even in the finest weather, in these wild regions.

In winter it was found to be impossible to reach the terrace, and as their supply of food was low, they experienced considerable privations during their first winter. Their daily allowance of food was reduced to a quantity just sufficient to maintain life, and in August they were little better than skeletons³.

Help was, however, near. Early in August a multitude of penguins landed⁴ hard by their hut,—stupid⁵ animals, which will scarcely get out of one's way, and are easily knocked down with a stick⁶, and with fleshy breasts, wholesome enough, though with a rather fishy taste; and in the end of August the females began to lay large blue eggs, sufficiently delicate in flavour.

1, Vertiefung, f. 2, I was in the habit of ascending the mountain every day, ich pflegte täglich den Berg zu ersteigen. 3, = und im August waren sie fast zu Skeletten geworden. 4, =settled, sich niederlassen. 5, Begin a new period here and say: 'These are stupid animals', etc. 6, and —stick, sich leicht mit einem Stöck niederzuschlagen lassen; and with —taste=and have a fleshy breast, which (supply year here) yields (bieten) a wholesome food, but (jedoch) possesses a rather (etwas) fishy taste.—The whole period is difficult to translate into good German; the author considers it therefore necessary to assist the student.

Section 240.

A CURIOUS STORY.

VIII.

A French barque hove-to off the beach¹ in the middle of September, and in her they shipped their seal-skins, and bartered penguins' eggs with her for biscuits and tobacco. Had the bark arrived a week earlier, the brothers would have left the island; but the eggs had set them up again², and they determined to remain a little longer. In October, a schooner, which proved³ to be "The Themis," a whaler from the Cape of Good Hope, was seen standing towards the island. A gale of wind blew⁴ her off for a couple of days, but she returned and landed some men from Tristan, who had crossed⁵ to see what the hermits were about⁶. Their guests remained a day and a half, and then returned to Tristan.

Early in November, that is, early in the second summer, the brothers thus swam round the eastern headland:—Frederick with their blankets, the rifle, and a spare suit of clothes⁷—Gustav with powder, matches, and the kettle in an oil-cask. They mounted by the help of the tussock-grass to the top of the cliff, went over to the west side of the plateau, and there built a small hut, where they remained a month, living on goats' flesh and fresh pork.

On the 10th of December they returned home, mended their thatch, dug⁸ the early potatoes, and put the garden in order.

On the 19th of December the Tristan men made their second sealing expedition. They remained nine days on the island, and killed forty seals, one sea-elephant, and eight of the remaining⁹ twelve goats. They left some flour in exchange for an oil-cask, and this was the last communication between the brothers and the outer world until the "Challenger" called eight months later.

- 1, legte sich . . . unweit der Insel vor Anker. 2, = had strengthened them again.
 3, sich erweisen als. 4, = drove. 5, = who had come over.
 6, = doing. 7, a spare suit of clothes, ein Reserveanzug, m.
 8, here aufnehmen; early potatoes, frühzeitige Kartoffeln. 9, noch übrig.

Section 241.

A CURIOUS STORY.

IX.

In January Frederick swam round the point¹ again, and mounted the cliff. He shot four pigs, ran² the fat into buckets, and threw the hams down to his brother on the beach below. He saw the four last goats, but spared³ them to increase their number. In February a boat came to the west side from Tristan, and its crew killed the four goats, and departed without communicating with the Stoltenhoffs⁴.

The relations between the Tristan people and the brothers does not appear to have been so cordial latterly as it was at first, and the Stoltenhoffs believe that⁵ the intention of their neighbours in killing the goats, and in delaying from time to time to bring them some live stock, which they had promised them, was to force them to leave the island. It may have been so, for the Tristan men had been in the habit of making a yearly sealing expedition to Inaccessible Island, and no doubt the presence of the energetic strangers lessened their chance of success.

In March the brothers once more swam round the point, and ascended the cliff. After staying on the plateau together for a few days, it was settled that Frederick should remain above to procure (S. 58, N. 8) a stock of lard for the winter, Gustav returning to the hut and storing it⁶. When a pig was killed, the hide, with the fat in it, was rolled up, secured with thongs of skin, and thrown over the cliff, where Gustav then ran the lard into a cask.

- 1, Sandspitze, f. 2, laufen lassen. 3, verschonen. 4, = without having seen the Stoltenhoffs. 5, = that their neighbours killed the goats and delayed, etc., . . . in order to force them, etc. 6, um es zuzubereiten.

Section 242.

A CURIOUS STORY.

X.

During the second winter, the privations of the brothers do not seem to have been great. They were getting accustomed to their mode of life, and had always sufficient food, such as it was¹. They were remarkably well educated. Both could speak and read English fluently, and the elder had a good knowledge of French. Their library consisted of eight volumes: Schoedler's Natural History, a German Atlas, Charles O'Malley, Captain Morrell's Voyages, two old volumes of a monthly magazine², Hamlet and Coriolanus with French notes, and Schiller's poems. These books they came to know almost by heart³, but they had considerable resources in themselves, in the intelligent interest they took in the ever-changing appearances of nature.

When the "Challenger" arrived, they were preparing for another summer; but the peculiar food, and the want of variety in it, were beginning to tell upon them, for all their original stores were exhausted, with the exception of the Epsom salts, which were untouched, neither of them having had an hour's illness during their sojourn; and they were heartily glad of a passage to the Cape.

Frederick came to the ship before we left for the South in December. He was then comfortably settled in a situation in a merchant's office in Cape Town, and Gustav was on his way home to see his people⁴ before resuming the thread of his roving sailor's life.—W. J. J. SPRY, "THE CRUISE OF THE CHALLENGER."

1, and — was = and the food at their disposal (und die ihnen zu Gebote stehende Nahrung) was at least always sufficient (ausreichend). 2, a monthly magazine, eine Monatschrift. 3, = they knew at last almost by heart. 4, = friends or relations.

Section 243.

HOW THE BANK OF ENGLAND WAS HUMBLLED.

I.

Once, many years ago, a bill of exchange for a large amount was drawn¹ by Anselm Rothschild, of Frankfort, on Nathan Rothschild, of London. When the gentleman who held it arrived in London, Nathan was away, and he took the bit of paper to the Bank of England and asked them to discount it.

The managers were very stiff. With haughty assurance they informed the holder that they discounted only their own bills; they said they had nothing to do with the bills of private persons. They did not stop to reflect with whom they had to deal. Those shrewd old gentlemen in charge of the bank of the realm should have known and remembered that that bit of paper bore the signature of a man more powerful than they—more powerful, because independent of a thousand-and-one ham-pers that rested upon them. "Umph," exclaimed Nathan Rothschild, when the answer of the Bank was repeated to him. "Private persons! I will let these important gentlemen know with what sort of private persons they have to deal."

And then Nathan Rothschild went to work. He had an object in view²—to humble the Bank of England—and he meant to do it³. He sent agents to the Continent and through the United Kingdom, and three weeks were spent in gathering up notes of the smaller denominations of the Bank's own issue⁴.

One morning, bright and early, Nathan Rothschild presented himself at the Bank, and drew forth from his pocket-book a five-pound note, which he desired to have cashed. Five sovereigns were counted out to him, the officers looking with astonishment upon seeing Baron Rothschild troubling himself personally about so trivial a matter. The baron examined the coins one by one, and, having satisfied himself of their good quality, slipped them into a canvas bag, and then drew out and presented another five-pound note. The same operation was re-

peated, save that the baron took the trouble to take a small pair of scales from his pocket to weigh one of the pieces, for the law gave him that right.

1, to draw a bill of exchange, einen Wechsel ziehen. 2, Er hatte sich das Ziel gesteckt. 3, und er wollte alles daran setzen, dies Ziel zu erreichen. 4, in gathering — issue, die auf kleinere Summen lautenden, von der englischen Bank in Umlauf gesetzten Banknoten aufzukaufen.

Section 244.

HOW THE BANK OF ENGLAND WAS HUMBLLED.

II.

Two—three—ten—twenty—a hundred—five hundred five-pound notes were presented and cashed. When one pocket-book was emptied, another was brought forth; and when a canvas bag had been filled with gold, it was passed to a servant who was in waiting. And so he went on until the hour arrived for closing the Bank; at the same time he had nine of the employés of his house engaged in the same work. So it resulted that ten men of the house of Rothschild had kept every teller¹ of the Bank busy for seven hours, and exchanged *somewhere* about £22,000. Not another customer had been able to get his wants attended to. The English like oddity. Let a man do anything original, and they will generally applaud. So the people of the Bank contrived to smile² at the eccentricity of Baron Rothschild, and when the time came for closing the Bank, they were not a tenth part so much annoyed as were³ the customers from abroad⁴ whose business had not been attended to. The bank officials smiled that evening, but—

On the following morning, when the bank opened⁵, Nathan Rothschild appeared again, accompanied by his nine faithful helpers, this time bringing with him, as far as the street entrance, four heavy two-horse drays, for the purpose of carting away the gold, for to-day the baron had bills of a larger amount. Ah! the officers of the Bank smiled no more, and a trembling seized them when the banker monarch said, with stern simplicity and directness:

“Ah! these gentlemen refuse to take my bills! Be it so. I am resolved that I will not keep one of theirs. It is the House of Rothschild against the Bank of England⁶.” The Bank of England opened its eyes very wide. Within a week, the House of Rothschild could be demanding gold which it did not possess. The gentlemen at the head of affairs saw very plainly that in a determined tilt⁷ the Bank must go to the wall⁸. There was but one way out of the dilemma, and they took it. Notice was at once publicly given⁹ that thenceforth the Bank of England would cash the bills of Rothschild *the same* as its own.—TIT-BITS.

1, = cashier, Kassierer. 2, contrived to smile = smiled. 3, they — were, ärgerten sie sich nicht halb so sehr, wie. 4, ‘the customers from abroad’ seems to be used here in the sense of ‘the numerous customers’. 5, = was opened. 6, Es handelt sich darum, ob das Haus Rothschild oder die englische Bank den Sieg davon tragen wird! 7, = struggle, Kampf, m. 8, to go to the wall, den kürzeren ziehen. 9, Es wurde öffentlich angezeigt.

Section 245.

MORGAN PRUSSIA¹.

I.

MORGAN, the gay and handsome son of a low Irish farmer, tired of home, went to take the chances of the world, and seek his fortune. By what means he traversed England, or made his way to France, is not told. But he at length crossed France, and, probably without much knowledge or much care whether he was moving to the north or the south pole, found himself in the Prussian territory. This was in the day of Frederick William I. (1713-1740), famous for his tall regiment of guards. He had but one ambition, that of inspecting twice a day a regiment of a thousand grenadiers, not one of whom was less than six feet and a half high. Morgan was an Irish giant, and was instantly seized by the Prussian recruiting sergeants, who forced him to "volunteer" into the tall battalion. This turn of fate was totally out of the Irishman's calculation; and the prospect of carrying a musket till his dying day on the Potsdam parade², after having made up his mind to live by his wits and rove the world, more than once tempted him to think of leaving his musket and honour behind him, and fairly trying his chance for escape. But the attempt was always found impracticable; the frontier was too closely watched, and Morgan still marched up and down the Potsdam parade with a disconsolate heart, when one evening a Turkish recruit was brought in; for the king looked to nothing but the thews and sinews of a man, and the Turk was full seven feet high.

"How much did his majesty give for catching that heathen?" said Morgan to his corporal. "Four hundred dollars³," was the answer. Morgan burst out into an exclamation of astonishment at this waste of royal treasure upon a Turk. "Why, they cannot be got for less," replied the corporal. "What a pity my five brothers cannot hear of it!" said Morgan, "I am a dwarf to any one of them, and the sound of half the money would bring them all over immediately." As the discovery of a tall recruit was the well-known road to favoritism, five were worth at least a pair of colours to the corporal⁴. The conversation was immediately carried to the sergeant, and from him, through the gradation of officers, to the colonel, who took the first opportunity of mentioning it to the king. The colonel was instantly ordered to question Morgan; but he at once lost all recollection of the subject. "He had no brothers; he had made the regiment his father, and mother, and relations, and there he hoped to live and die." But he was urged still more strongly, and at length confessed that he had brothers, even above the regimental standard, but that nothing on earth could stir them from their spades.

1, Morgan der Preuße. 2, auf dem Paradeplatz zu Potsdam. 3, Thaler. 4, five — corporal, so würden fünf derselben dem Corporal wenigstens eine Fähnrichsstelle eintragen.

Section 246.

MORGAN PRUSSIA.

II.

After some time the king inquired for the five recruits, and was indignant when he was told of the impossibility of enlisting them. "Send the fellow himself," he exclaimed, "and let him bring them back." The order was given; but Morgan was broken-hearted "at the idea of so long an absence from the regiment." He applied to the colonel to have the order revoked, or at least given to some one else. But this was out of the question, for the king's word was always irrevocable; and Morgan, with a disconsolate face, prepared to set out upon his mission. But a new difficulty struck him. "How was he to make his brothers come, unless he showed them the recruiting money?" This objection was at last obviated by the advance of a sum equal to about three hundred pounds sterling, as a first instalment for the purchase of his family. Like a loyal grenadier the Irishman was now ready to attempt anything for his colonel or his king, and Morgan began his journey. But, as he was stepping out of the gates of Potsdam, another difficulty occurred; and he returned to tell the colonel that of all people existing the Irish were the most apt to doubt a traveller's story, they being in the habit of a good deal of exercise in that style themselves¹; and that when he should go back to his own country, and tell them of the capital treatment and sure promotion that a soldier met with in the guards, the probability was, that they would laugh in his face. As to the money, "there were some who would not scruple to say that he stole it, or tricked some one out of it. But, undoubtedly, when they saw him walking back only as a common soldier, he was sure they would not believe a syllable, let him say what he would about rising in the service."

The objection was intelligible enough, and the colonel represented it to the king, who, doubly outrageous at the delay, swore a grenadier's oath, ordered Morgan to be made a sub-lieutenant, and, with sword and epaulets, sent him instantly across the Rhine to convince his five brothers of the rapidity of Prussian promotion. Morgan flew to his home in the county of Carlow, delighted the firesides for many a mile round with his having outwitted a king and a whole battalion of grenadiers, laid out his recruiting money on land, and became a man of estate at the expense of the Prussian treasury.

One ceremony remains to be recorded. Once a year, on the anniversary of the day on which he left Potsdam and its giants behind, he climbed a hill within a short distance of his house, turned himself in the direction of Prussia, and, with the most contemptuous gesture which he could contrive, bade good-bye to his majesty. The ruse was long a great source of amusement, and its hero, like other heroes, bore through life the name earned by his exploit—Morgan Prussia.—KING GEORGE THE FOURTH.

1, they being — themselves, da auch sie im Erzählen von dergleichen Geschichten eine große Fertigkeit besäßen.

*Section 247.***THE TERRIBLE WINTER OF 1784.**

About the middle of the month of April, in the year 1784, three hundred thousand miserable beings, dying from cold and hunger, groaned in Paris alone—in that Paris where, in spite of the boast that scarcely another city contained so many rich people, nothing had been prepared to prevent the poor from perishing of cold and wretchedness.

For the last four months, the same leaden sky had driven the poor from the villages into the town, as it sent the wolves from the woods into the villages.

No more bread. No more wood.

No more bread for those who felt this cold—and no more wood to bake it. All the provisions which had been collected, Paris had devoured in a month. The Provost, short-sighted and incapable, did not know how to procure for Paris, which was under his care, the wood which might have been collected in the neighbourhood. When it froze, he said the frost prevented the horses from bringing it; when it thawed, he pleaded want of horses and conveyances. Louis XVI., ever good and humane, always ready to attend to the physical wants of his people, although he overlooked their social ones, began by contributing a sum of 200,000 francs for horses and carts, and insisting on their immediate use. Still the demand continued greater than the supply.

At first no one was allowed to carry away from the public timber-yard more than a cart-load of wood; then that was limited to half the quantity. Soon long strings of people might be seen waiting outside the timber-yards, as they were afterwards seen at the bakers' shops. The king gave away the whole of his private income in charity. He procured 3,000,000 francs by a grant and applied it to the relief of the sufferers, declaring that every other need must give way before that of cold and famine. The queen, on her part, gave 500 louis from her purse. The convents, the hospitals, and the public buildings were thrown open as places of asylum for the poor, who came in crowds for the sake of the fires that were kept there.

They kept hoping for a thaw, but heaven seemed inflexible. Every evening the same copper-coloured sky disappointed their hopes; and the stars shone bright and clear as funeral torches through the long, cold nights, which hardened again and again the snow that fell during the day. All day long, thousands of workmen, with spades and shovels, cleared away the snow from before the houses, so that on each side of the streets, already too narrow for the traffic, rose a high, thick wall, blocking up the way. Soon these masses of snow and ice became so large that the shops were obscured by them, and they were obliged to allow it to remain where it fell.

Paris could do no more. She gave in, and allowed the winter to do its worst. December, January, February, and March passed thus,

although now and then a few days' thaw changed the streets, whose sewers were blocked up, into running streams. Horses were drowned, and carriages destroyed, in the streets, some of which could only be traversed in boats. People went to the markets to see the fisherwomen serving their customers with immense leathern boots on, inside which their trousers were pushed, and with their petticoats tucked round their waists, all laughing, gesticulating, and splashing each other as they stood in the water.

These thaws, however, were but transitory; the frost returned, harder and more obstinate than ever, and recourse was had to sledges, pushed along by skaters, or drawn by roughshod horses along the causeways, which were like polished mirrors. The Seine, frozen many feet deep, had become the place of rendezvous for all idlers, who assembled there to skate or slide, until, warmed by exercise, they ran to the nearest fire, lest the perspiration should freeze upon them. All trembled for the time when, the water communications being stopped, and the roads impassable, provisions could no longer be sent in, and began to fear that Paris would perish from want.

The king, in this extremity, called a council. They decided to implore all bishops, abbés, and monks to leave Paris and retire to their dioceses or convents; and all those magistrates and officials who, preferring the opera to their duties, had crowded to Paris, to return to their homes; for all these people used large quantities of wood in their hotels, and consumed no small amount of food. There were still the country gentlemen, who were also to be entreated to leave. But M. Lenoir, lieutenant of police, observed to the king that, as none of these people were criminals, and could not therefore be compelled to leave Paris in a day, they would probably be so long thinking about it, that the thaw would come before their departure, which would then be more hurtful than useful.

All this care and pity of the king and queen, however, excited the ingenious gratitude of the people, who raised monuments to them, as ephemeral as the feelings which prompted them. Obelisks and pillars of snow and ice, engraved with their names, were to be seen all over Paris.

At the end of March the thaw began, but by fits and starts, constant returns of frost prolonging the miseries of the people. Indeed, in the beginning of April it appeared to set in harder than ever, and the half-thawed streets, frozen again, became so slippery and dangerous, that nothing was seen but broken limbs and accidents of all kinds. The snow prevented the carriages from being heard, and the police had enough to do, through the reckless driving of the aristocracy, to preserve from the wheels those who were spared by cold and hunger.—AFTER ALEXANDER DUMAS, "THE QUEEN'S NECKLACE."

*Section 248.***A STORY WORTH READING.****I.**

Soon after the promulgation of Methodism¹ in England it spread with great rapidity over the counties of Devon and Cornwall, and especially among the miners and lower orders. For a long period after its introduction the clergy and higher classes of society in the west of England manifested a dislike to the new doctrines which can scarcely be imagined in these days of modern toleration. It was thought by many young gentlemen good sport to break the windows and nail up the doors of a Methodist chapel². The robbery of a Wesleyan preacher³, as a spree, by two young gentlemen, became the subject of an investigation, and the frolicsome young men had to pay very dearly for their practical joke.

Among the uninstructed local preachers was one known by the name of "The Old Gardener." This old man was no common character—indeed he was quite original, and by far the most popular preacher among the disciples of John Wesley in the vicinity.

He kept a small nursery garden about two miles from the town of St. A——, working hard at his occupation of gardener by day, and praying and preaching to his fellow-sinners, as he called them, in the evening. He lived in the poorest manner, giving away all the surplus of his earnings in charity, distributing Bibles, and promoting to the utmost of his ability the extension of Methodism. His complexion was a sort of dirty, dark, iron grey, and his whole appearance lean and grotesque. Although extremely ignorant, he possessed no small degree of cunning; of this the following incident affords ample evidence:—

"The Old Gardener" was once subjected to a burglary and attempt at robbery. He lived with his wife in a small and somewhat dilapidated cottage, not far from the high road. Three young "squires," who all despised and hated Methodism, having heard that the old man had been recently making a collection to build a Methodist chapel, thought it would be a good frolic to rob him temporarily of the proceeds of this collection. The result of the frolic is best related in the words of one of the actors:—

"We set out," said he, "upon our expedition with blackened faces, upon a dark night, a little before twelve o'clock. We had dined late, and all of us had Dutch as well as Cornish courage; yet I confess, when it came to the point⁴, I felt myself a coward. I began to reflect that it was but a dastardly frolic to frighten the poor old man and his wife in the dead of night."

"The clock struck twelve. 'Now comes the watching time of the night,' exclaimed Tom."

"'Don't let us frighten the poor couple out of their wits,' said I."

"'No,' said Ryder, 'we will be gentle robbers—gentle as Robin Hood and Little John.'"

"I said that I would rather return than proceed. 'Recollect,' said I,

'the old fellow is an old soldier, as well as a saint, and fears nothing human.'

"'Nonsense,' exclaimed Ryder, 'here goes ⁶.' He pressed the feeble door of the cottage in which the old man resided; it immediately gave way and flew open. We entered and found ourselves in a sort of kitchen. To our great surprise there was a light shining from an inner room. This made us all hesitate."

1, Nom. die Lehre der Methodisten.
gehörenden Kapelle.
erhielt wurde.

2, of a — chapel, einer den Methodisten
gehörenden Kapelle.
3, eines wesleyischen Predigers.

4, als es wirklich
erhielt wurde.

5, kommt nur!

Section 249.

A STORY WORTH READING.

II.

"'Who is out there at this time of the night?' exclaimed a hoarse voice from within. I knew it to be the unmistakable voice of 'The Old Gardener.'"

"'Give us your money, and no harm shall befall you,' said Tom, 'but we must have your money.'"

"'The Lord will be my defence,' rejoined 'The Old Gardener.' 'You shall have no money from me; all in the house is the Lord's—take it if you dare.'"

"'We must and will have it,' said we, as we entered the inner room, after taking the precaution of fastening the chamber-door as we entered."

"We soon wished we had suffered it to remain open, as you will see."

"Now, consider us face to face with 'The Old Gardener,' and a pretty sight was presented. Three ruffians (ourselves) with white waggoners' frocks and blackened faces; before us 'The Old Gardener,' sitting on the side of his bed. He wore a red worsted nightcap, a checked shirt, and a flannel jacket; his iron grey face, fringed with a grizzly beard, looking as cool and undismayed as if he had been in the pulpit preaching."

"A table was by the side of the bed, and immediately in front of him, on a large deal table, was an open Bible, close to which we observed, to our horror, a heap of gunpowder, large enough to blow up a castle. A candle was burning on the table, and the old fellow had a steel in one hand and a large flint in the other. We were all three paralysed. The wild, iron-faced, determined look of 'The Old Gardener,' the candle, flint and steel, and the great heap of powder, absolutely froze our blood, and made cowards of us all. The gardener saw the impression he had made."

"'What! do you want to rob and murder?' exclaimed he; 'I think you had better join with me in prayer, miserable sinners that you all are! Repent, and you may be saved. You will soon be in another world.'"

"Ryder first recovered his speech."

“‘Please to hear me, Mr. Gardener. I feel that we have been wrong, and if we may depart we will make reparation, and give you all the money we have in our pockets.’”

“We laid our purses on the table before him.”

“‘The Lord has delivered you into my hands. It was so revealed to me in a dream. We shall all soon be in another world. Pray, let us pray.’”

“And down he fell upon his knees, close to the table, with the candle burning, and the ugly flint and steel in his hand. He prayed and prayed. At last he appeared exhausted. He stopped and eyed the purses, and then emptied one of them out on the table. He appeared surprised, and, I thought, gratified at the largeness of its contents.”

“We now thought we should have leave to retire; but, to our dismay, ‘The Old Gardener’ said :

“‘Now, we will praise God by singing the rooth Psalm.’”

“This was agony to us all. After the Psalm, the old man took up the second purse, and while he was examining its contents, Ryder, who was close behind Tom and myself, whispered softly :

“‘I have unfastened the door, and when you hear me move, make a rush.’”

“‘The Old Gardener,’ then, pouring out the contents of the second purse, exclaimed :

“‘Why, there is almost enough to build our new house of God. Let me see what the third contains.’”

“He took up the third purse.”

“‘Now,’ whispered Ryder, ‘make a rush.’”

“We did so; and at the same moment heard the old fellow hammering away at his flint and steel. We expected to be instantly blown into fragments. The front door, however, flew open before us: and the next moment we found ourselves in the garden. The night was pitchy dark. We rushed blindly through brambles and prickly shrubs, ran our heads against trees, and then forced our way through a thick hedge. At last, with scratched faces, torn hands, and tattered clothes, we tumbled over a bank into the high road.

Section 250.

A STORY WORTH READING.

III.

“Our horses we soon found, and we galloped to Ryder’s residence. Lights were produced, and we sat down. We were black, ragged, and dirty. We looked at each other, and, in spite of our miserable adventure, roared with laughter.”

“‘We may laugh,’ exclaimed Tom, ‘but if this adventure becomes known, and we are found out, Cornwall will be too hot for us the next seven years. We have made a pretty night of it. We have lost our money, been obliged to pretend to pray for two long hours, before a great heap of gunpowder, while that grim-faced, ugly, red-capped brute threatened us with an immediate passage into eternity. And our money

forsooth must go to build a meeting-house! Bah! It is truly horrible. The old fellow has played the old soldier on us with a vengeance, and we shall be the laughing-stock of the whole country.’”

“The affair was not yet ended. Reports were spread that three men disguised as black demons, with horns and tails, had entered the cottage of ‘The Old Gardener,’ who had not only terrified them, but had frightened them out of a good sum of money, which he intended to devote to the building of a new Methodist meeting-house. It was given out that on the following Sunday ‘The Old Gardener’ intended to preach a sermon, and afterwards solicit subscriptions for the meeting-house, when he would relate the remarkable manner in which he had been providentially assisted with funds for the building. Our mortification was complete. Tom, whose hatred of Methodism was intense, declared he would blow up the meeting-house as soon as it was built. Our curiosity, however, was excited, and we all three determined to hear our adventure of the night related by ‘The Old Gardener,’ if we could contrive to be present without being suspected.”

“Sunday evening arrived. The meeting-house was crammed to suffocation; and with the dull lights then burning in the chapel, we had no difficulty in concealing ourselves. The sermon was short, but the statement of our adventure was related most minutely and circumstantially in the old man’s quaint, homely, and humorous phraseology. This evening he seemed to excel himself, and was exultingly humorous.”

“‘I never,’ said he, ‘saw black faces pray with greater devotion. I have some doubt, however,’ he slyly observed, ‘if their prayers were quite heavenward. They sometimes turned their faces towards the door, but a lifting of the flint and steel kept them quiet.’”

“He then added, with a shake of the head and an exulting laugh: ‘But they had not smelt powder like the old soldier they came to rob. No, no; it was a large heap—ay, large enough to frighten old General Clive himself. The candle was lighted, the flint and steel were ready. You may ask, my friends, if I myself was not afraid. No, no, my dear friends,’ shouted he, ‘this large stock of apparent gunpowder was—it was my whole year’s stock of leek (onion) seed!’”

“The whole congregation somewhat irreverently laughed; even the saints almost shouted; many clapped their hands. I was for a moment stupefied by the announcement, but at last could hardly suppress my own laughter.”

“We subscribed to the fund to avoid suspicion, and left the meeting. After the sermon we joined each other, but could not speak. We could hardly chuckle ‘leek-seed,’ and then roared with laughter.”

“It was a good joke, though not exactly to our taste. It has, however, more than once served for subsequent amusement.”

“The chapel was built with the money collected by the gardener. Time and circumstances now induce me to think that there has been no detriment to morality or religion by the erection of the meeting-house, which was afterwards known as ‘The Leek-seed Chapel.’”—ST. JAMES’S MAGAZINE.

APPENDIX.

A. ESSENTIALS OF CONSTRUCTION.

I. PRINCIPAL AND CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES.

(See § 24.)

§ 1. Infinitives, Participles, and that form of the Infinitive preceded by *zu* which is called Supine, stand at the end of the clause; as—

Er war ärmlich, aber doch sauber gekleidet.

He was poorly, but yet neatly dressed.

Sein zürnender Oheim hatte ihn zu sich gerufen.

His angry uncle had bid him come to him.

Seine Tante wird morgen zu uns kommen.

His aunt will come to us to-morrow.

Sie hat uns versprochen, morgen zu kommen.

She has promised us to come to-morrow.

§ 2. In a clause containing *both* an infinitive and a participle, the infinitive stands last; as—

Der Diener würde es nicht gethan haben, wenn er ihn nicht freundlich darum gebeten hätte.

The servant would not have done it, if he had not kindly asked him to do it.

Der Brief muß gut geschrieben werden, denn er enthält wichtige Mittheilungen.

The letter must be well written, for it contains important communications.

§ 3. In a clause containing *two* infinitives, the one governing the other stands last; as—

Er mag mit einem solchen Menschen nichts zu thun haben.

He does not like to have anything to do with such a man.

§ 4. Separable prefixes of compound verbs are placed at the end of the clause when the verb is used in a *simple tense*; as—

Der König ging jeden Morgen um elf Uhr aus und kam gegen zwölf Uhr zurück.

The king went out every morning at eleven o'clock and returned towards twelve o'clock.

§ 5. In a clause containing *two* objects, both expressed by nouns, that of the person stands before that of the thing; as—

Am nächsten Abend gab er dem Manne das Geld zurück.

The next evening he returned the money to the man.

§ 6. When *both* objects represent *persons*, the **accusative generally stands first**; as—

Man hat den Verbrecher dem Richter überliefert.	They have delivered the criminal to the judge.
--	---

§ 7. In clauses containing *two* objects, one being a *personal pronoun* and the other a *noun*, the **pronoun stands first**; as—

Der fremde Herr gab mir einige Äpfel und Birnen.	The stranger gave me some apples and pears.
---	--

§ 8. When *both* objects are *personal pronouns*, the **accusative generally stands first**; as—

Sie hat es mir gesagt.	She has said it to me.
Man hat sie ihm genommen.	They have taken her away from him.

§ 9. *A.* Adverbial expressions of **time** generally stand **before the object** (except it is a pronoun) and **always before** adverbial expressions of **manner** and **place**; as—

Wir haben gestern drei Briefe erhalten.	Yesterday we received three letters.
Er ist heute plötzlich nach London abgereist.	He has suddenly left for London to- day.

But we must say—

Wir haben Sie heute mit Ungeduld erwartet. (Sie pers. pron.)	We have been expecting you to-day with impatience.
---	---

B. Adverbial expressions of **manner** and **place** generally stand before the Infinitive or Participle when the verb is in a compound tense, but take the last place in the clause when the verb is in a simple tense; as—

Die Schüler haben ihre Aufgaben sehr gut gemacht.	The pupils have done their lessons <i>very well.</i>
--	---

Sie machen ihre Aufgaben immer sehr gut.	They do their lessons always very well.
---	--

Sind Sie gestern im Theater gewesen?	Were you <i>at the theatre yesterday?</i>
--------------------------------------	---

Ich* gehe nie ins Theater.	I* <i>never go to the theatre.</i>
----------------------------	------------------------------------

§ 10. The negation **nicht** stands **after the accusative**; as—

Er schreibt den Brief nicht, sondern sein Bruder.	He is not writing the letter, but his brother is.
--	--

Er hat den Brief nicht geschrieben.	He has not written the letter.
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------

§ 11. In questions **nicht** sometimes stands **before the accusative**; as—

Haben Sie nicht meinen Brief erhalten?	Have you not received my letter?
--	----------------------------------

§ 12. In general the negation **nicht** stands before that part of the sentence which it affects; as—

Ich bin nicht krank gewesen.	I have not been ill.
------------------------------	----------------------

Wir sprechen nicht von ihm, sondern von seinem Vetter.	We do not speak of him, but of his cousin.
---	---

Die Natur hatte sie nicht mit Schön- heit ausgestattet.	Nature had not endowed her with beauty.
--	--

* When the subject, which may be preceded by its attributes, occupies the first place in a principal clause, either the copula or the verb must follow immediately.

II. INVERTED CONSTRUCTION.

§ 13. The *ordinary* way of arranging the words is to place the **subject** and its adjuncts **first**, and the **predicate** with its adjuncts **after**; as—

Der gute Vater (subj.) ist heute Morgen mit seinen drei Töchtern nach London abgereist (predicate with adjuncts).	The good father has left this morn- ing for London with his three daughters.
---	--

But this construction is sometimes inverted, so as to place the predicate, or a part of the predicate, before the subject. This is the case:

(a) In interrogative clauses; as—

Kommt der Mann heute?	Does the man come to-day?
Ist der Vater nach London abgereist?	Has the father left for London?
Hat er kein Geld bei sich?	Has he no money about him?

(b) In imperative clauses; as—

Senden Sie diesen Brief zur Post!	Send this letter to the post-office!
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

(c) In exclamatory clauses; as—

Hätte er auf mich gehört!	Would he had listened to me!
---------------------------	------------------------------

(d) In subordinate clauses beginning with an adverbial conjunction. (See § 124 of Lange's German Grammar.)

§ 14. The *ordinary* way of arranging the words is often departed from for the sake of **emphasizing a part of the predicate**. In this case the part to be emphasized is placed at the *beginning* of the sentence, and the **construction must be inverted**, that is to say the **subject must be placed after the verb**; as—

Die letzten Worte hatte der junge Mensch mit gehobener Stimme ge- sprochen.	The last words the young man had spoken with an elevated tone of voice.
Heute kann er nicht abreisen, sondern morgen.	He cannot depart to-day, but to- morrow.
Mit dem zwölf Uhr Zuge kann er nicht mehr fahren, denn es ist zu spät.	He cannot go by the twelve o'clock train, for it is too late.

These sentences would read in the *ordinary* construction: Der junge Mensch hatte die letzten Worte mit gehobener Stimme gesprochen. Er kann nicht heute abreisen, sondern morgen. Er kann nicht mehr mit dem zwölf Uhr Zuge fahren, denn es ist zu spät. The words „Die letzten Worte,“ „heute,“ „mit dem zwölf Uhr Zuge,“ have been made *emphatic* by being placed at the *beginning* of the sentence, which required the *verb* and the *subject* to interchange places.

§ 15. Sometimes a **subordinate clause** (that is to say a clause dependent on another clause, without which it would not be understood) is **made emphatic by being placed before the principal clause**. Then also the **subject of the principal clause must be placed after the verb**; as—

Als er in die Stube kam, fand er mich am Schreibtische.	When he came into the room, he found me at the desk.
--	---

In this example the *principal* clause is „er fand mich am Schreibtische,“ and the *subordinate* clause is contained in the words „Als er in die Stube kam;“ this latter clause has been emphasized by being placed before the principal clause, but it required the *principal* clause to be *inverted*, so as to place the *subject* (er) after the *verb* (fand).

Here are some more examples of the same class:

Weil er ein guter Junge ist, will ich ihm seine Bitte gewähren.	Because he is a good fellow, I will grant his request.
Nachdem er gegessen und getrunken hatte, ging er nach Hause.	After having eaten and drunk, he went home.

III. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

(See § 24.)

§ 16. In subordinate clauses beginning with a relative pronoun, a relative conjunction, or a subordinative conjunction, **the verb stands at the end**; as—

Man zeigte mir ein Buch, das viele schöne Bilder enthielt.	They showed me a book which contained many beautiful pictures.
Wir waren im Zimmer, als er eintrat.	We were in the room when he entered.

§ 17. When the **verb** is in a **compound tense**, the **auxiliary verb** stands **last**; as—

Nachdem sie ihn begrüßt hatte, kam sie schnell auf mich zu.	After she had welcomed him, she approached me quickly.
---	--

§ 18. When there are *two* verbs, one of which is a verb of mood, **the verb of mood stands last**; as—

Er sagte, daß er nicht kommen könne.	He said that he could not come.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------

§ 19. When there are *two* verbs, the one being an infinitive, and the other an inflected verb, **the inflected verb stands last**; as—

Der Sohn starb gerade zu der Stunde, in welcher sein Vater ihn wiederzusehen hoffte.	The son died the very hour his father hoped to see him again.
--	---

§ 20. When there are *two infinitives* and an *auxiliary verb*, the **auxiliary verb** has the **first place**, whilst the **governing infinitive** stands **last**; as—

Er überlegte, wie er es werde vermeiden können. (können is the governing verb.)	He considered how he might be able to avoid it.
Er sagte, daß er es nicht habe thun mögen. (mögen is the governing verb.)	He said that he did not like to do it.

§ 21. Sometimes the **conjunction**, which generally connects the subordinate clause with the principal clause, is **omitted and understood**. In this case the construction is like that of a *principal clause*; as—

Er fürchtete, ich könne mich erkälten. (Er fürchtete, daß ich mich erkälten könne.)	He was afraid I might catch cold.
---	-----------------------------------

§ 22. Sometimes the **auxiliary verb** is **omitted and understood**; as—

Daß er mir genommen (wurde), ist mein größtes Leid.	That he was taken from me is my greatest sorrow.
---	--

§ 23. In subordinate clauses the **prefixes of separable compound verbs** are **not separated from the verb**; as—

Er war so beschäftigt, daß er in vierzehn Tagen nicht ausging.	He was so busy that he did not go out for a fortnight.
--	--

§ 24. *A.* The co-ordinative conjunctions—*aber, allein, denn, nämlich, oder, sondern, sowohl—als, and und*—serve to connect two or more independent statements with each other, which have either one common subject or predicate, or have each a subject and predicate of their own (co-ordinate clauses). Co-ordinative conjunctions do not affect the regular order of construction explained in §§ 1–12, and generally stand at the beginning of the co-ordinate clauses which they introduce; but *aber* and *nämlich* are often placed after the verb, and sometimes even stand in the middle of the clause; as—

Die Frau war dem Manne früh gestorben; dieser ließ dem hinterlassenen Kinde *aber* jede mögliche Sorgfalt angedeihen.

A subordinate clause, i.e. a clause dependent on another clause, without which it would not be understood, is joined to a principal clause by means of a relative pronoun, or a conjunction, which latter may be either a relative, a subordinative, or an adverbial conjunction. (See § 124 of Lange's German Grammar.) The effect produced upon the construction by relative pronouns, relative conjunctions, and subordinative conjunctions has been explained in §§ 16–23.

B. Adverbial conjunctions, like all other adverbial expressions commencing a clause, require the verb to stand before the subject, as has been pointed out in § 124 of Lange's German Grammar.

B. THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 25. The Indicative Mood is the Mood of Actuality, whilst the Subjunctive Mood is the Mood of Possibility. The nature of the Indicative may be said to be *objective*, because it is used to express positive facts. The nature of the Subjunctive may be said to be *subjective*, because it represents the statement made as a mere subjective supposition, or as resting on the mere hearsay evidence of other persons.

The Indicative Mood denotes Positiveness and Certainty.

Conjunctions never determine the mood in which a verb is to be used. The mood is always determined by the nature of the statement we wish to make. So one and the same verb may be followed, in the dependent clause, either by the Indicative or the Subjunctive Mood.

EXAMPLES.

Der Gefangene ist tot; er ist heute Morgen gestorben. (Positive statement.)	The prisoner is dead; he died this morning.
---	---

Ich bin überzeugt, daß er es gesagt hat. (Certainty.)	I am convinced that he has said it.
---	-------------------------------------

Der Mensch ist sterblich. (A fact.)	Man is mortal.
-------------------------------------	----------------

Ich habe gehört, daß er zum Minister ernannt ist.	I have heard that he has been appointed a minister, (and I do not doubt it).
---	--

(Here the Indicative Mood is used, because I wish to imply that I have *no doubt* about the accuracy of the statement.)

Ich habe gehört, daß er zum Minister ernannt sei (see § 30).	I have heard that he has been appointed a minister, (but I rather doubt it).
--	--

(Here the Subjunctive Mood is used because I wish to express a *doubt* about the accuracy of the statement, which is expressed in English by the words 'but I rather doubt it.')

C. THE SUBJUNCTIVE (OR CONJUNCTIVE) MOOD.

(See § 25.)

§ 26. Since, in the best modern works of English Literature, we frequently find the Indicative employed instead of the Subjunctive in clauses of uncertainty and supposition, and since, with the exception of the verb *to be*, it is evidently the tendency of the English language to reject the distinction of the Subjunctive Mood, the student will encounter no small difficulty in learning the right use of the German Subjunctive, which is most extensively used, and gives often great power, conciseness, and elegance to the mode of speaking.

The Subjunctive Mood is used both in principal and subordinate clauses, and denotes **Uncertainty and Supposition**.

EXAMPLES.

Man sagt er sei gestorben (see § 29). (Uncertainty.)	People say (i. e. it is rumoured) he is dead.
Plato glaubte, daß nur ein Gott sei. (Supposition.)	Plato thought that there was only <i>one</i> God, (but that it was a matter of doubt).

§ 27. The Subjunctive expresses Command, Wish, and Concession.

EXAMPLES.

Er nehme seine Weite, wie's Brauch ist! (Schiller.) (Command.)	Let him take his distance as it is customary!
Gott sei mit dir! (Wish.)	God be with you!
Er gehe, wohin er Lust hat. (Concession.)	He may go wherever he pleases.

§ 28. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Speech (*oratio obliqua*), i. e. when words which have been actually spoken are *quoted* not as they were spoken, but *in substance only*; it stands especially after the verbs *sagen*, to say; *erzählen*, to relate; *melden*, to report; *berichten*, to relate, to report; *hören*, to hear; as—

Er sagte ihm, er sei ein Verschwenker.	He told him he was a spendthrift.
Sie behauptete, sie habe den Brief nicht erhalten.	She asserted that she had not got the letter.
Sein Freund meldete, daß er nicht kommen könne, mich zu besuchen.	His friend reported that he could not come to see me.

§ 29. The Subjunctive is used when the statement made in the subordinate clause is intended to be represented not as a fact, but as a mere idea, as a mere conception of the person speaking. We find it, therefore, especially after verbs denoting a *request*, a *wish*, a *hope*, an *apprehension*, a *permission*, an *advice*, and a *command*; as—

meinen, to mean.	wollen, to be willing.
glauben, to believe.	bitten, to ask.
vermuten, to presume.	befehlen, to command.
zweifeln, to doubt.	verlangen, to demand.
scheinen, to seem.	ermahnen, to admonish.
hoffen, to hope.	raten, to advise.
fürchten, to fear.	bestehen, to insist upon,

And others of a like meaning.

EXAMPLES.

Lassen Sie uns hoffen, daß unser Streben von Erfolg sein werde.	Let us hope that our endeavours may be successful.
Ich bat ihn, daß er mir helfen möge.	I asked him to help me.
Ich fürchtete, daß er ein Bein gebrochen habe.	I was afraid that he had broken a leg.
Wir bitten, daß der Gefangene frei gelassen werde.	We request that the prisoner be released.
Er zweifelt daran, daß man ihn für unschuldig erklären werde.	He doubts if he will be declared innocent.
Wir werden stets verlangen, daß man uns unsere Rechte gewähre.	We shall always demand that our rights be given to us.
Ich rate dir, daß du fleißiger werdest.	I advise you to become more industrious.
Ich bestehe darauf, daß sich der Lord entferne. (Schiller.)	I insist upon the Lord's retiring.

§ 30. With regard to the *Tense* in which the Subjunctive ought to stand in subordinate clauses of the character mentioned above, the general rule is, that—

We use the same tense of the Subjunctive Mood which, in direct speech, or in a principal clause, would be used in the Indicative Mood,

except that

the Perfect of the Subjunctive is used instead of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and that the Pluperfect of the Indicative is changed into the Perfect of the Subjunctive, with the help of one of the conjunctions *ehe*, *bevor*, and *nachdem*.

The following table will make this clear:—

Direct Speech.

- Er sagte: „Ich lese.“ (Present.)
 Er sagte: „Ich habe gelesen.“ (Perfect.)
 Er sagte: „Ich werde lesen.“ (First Future.)
 Er sagte: „Ich werde gelesen haben (Second Future), wenn mein Freund mich abholen wird.“ (First Future.)

But—

- Er sagte: „Ich las, als sein Freund schrieb.“ (Imperfect.)
 Er sagte: „Ich hatte gelesen (Pluperfect), als mein Freund schrieb.“ (Imperfect.)

Indirect Speech.

- Er sagte, er lese. (Present Subj.)
 Er sagte, er habe gelesen. (Perfect Subj.)
 Er sagte, er werde lesen. (First Future Subjunctive.)
 Er sagte, er werde gelesen haben (Second Future Subj.), wenn sein Freund ihn abholen werde (First Future Subjunctive.)
 Er sagte, er habe gelesen, als sein Freund geschrieben habe. (Perfect Subjunctive.)
 Er sagte, er habe gelesen (Perfect Subjunctive), ehe sein Freund geschrieben habe. (Perfect Subjunctive.)

It will be seen, therefore, that the verb in the subordinate clause stands either in the Present, in the Perfect, or in the Future.

EXAMPLES.

Der Diener antwortete, er sei nicht im-
stande die Arbeit zu thun, denn er
sei zu schwach. (Present Subj.)

Er erzählte mir, er habe ein Unglück
gehabt. (Perfect Subj.)

Sie behauptete, daß sie nie in ihrem Leben
krank gewesen sei. (Perfect Subj.)

Er sagte, daß er sich um eine Stelle be-
werben werde. (First Future.)

The servant answered that he was
unable to do the work, for he
was too weak.

He told me he had met with a mis-
fortune.

She affirmed that she had never been
ill in all her life.

He said that he was going to apply
for a situation.

§ 31. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, however, must be used instead of the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Conditional instead of the Future Subjunctive, when any ambiguity might arise as to the mood employed, that is to say in cases where the form of the Present, of the Perfect, or of the Future is *identical* both in the Indicative and the Subjunctive Mood. For example, in the sentence—

„Sie sagte mir, ihre Töchter gingen
niemals auf Bälle;“ ‘She said to me that her daughters
never went to balls;’

the verb *gingen* stands in the *Imperfect Subjunctive* and *not* in the *Present*, because the third person plural of the Present Indicative and the corresponding person of the Present Subjunctive are *identical* in the conjugation of this verb. Both are „*sie gehen*,” the verb, therefore, must be put in the *Imperfect Subjunctive* to show clearly the mood employed.

§ 32. The Subjunctive is employed in adverbial clauses of purpose and of manner, when the subordinate clause generally begins with the conjunctions *daß*, *auf daß*, *damit*, and *als ob*; as—

Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter
ehren, auf daß dir's wohlgehe und
du lange lebest auf Erden.

Ist es nicht, als ob dies Volk mich zum
Gott mache? (Schiller.)

Thou shalt honour thy father and thy
mother, that thou mayest prosper
and thy days be long on earth.

Does it not seem as if the people
meant to make a God of me?

§ 33. The Imperfect Subjunctive and the Pluperfect Subjunctive are used to express something possible, or something capable of being done, also to denote a mere supposition on the part of the speaker, or for the purpose of stating an opinion with *caution* or *modesty*; as—

Es könnte sein, daß er nicht zu Hause
wäre.

Ich hätte wohl Lust, ihm einen Besuch
zu machen.

Ich wüßte wohl, was zu thun wäre.
Es wäre vielleicht besser, das Unterneh-
men aufzugeben.

Literally: It might be possible that
he were not at home, i.e. He may
possibly not be at home.

I should like indeed to pay him a
visit.

I fancy I know what ought to be done.
Perhaps it would be better to give up
the undertaking.

§ 34. To express a wish we use the *Present Subjunctive*, when we believe in the fulfilment of the wish, but the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, when we want to indicate that the fulfilment of the wish is unlikely, and even impossible; as—

Gott sei mit dir!
Möge er bald gesund werden!
Lang lebe der König!
Gott helfe mir! (Luther.)

God be with you!
May he soon recover his health!
Long live the king!
May God help me!

But with the Imperfect Subjunctive:

Wöchte er bald gesund werden!

Would he might soon recover his health!

Wenn er doch noch lebte!

I would he were still alive!

Wöchte er bald kommen!

Would he might soon come!

§ 35. It must always be remembered that both moods (the Indicative and the Subjunctive) may stand in Principal Clauses as well as in Subordinate Clauses, since *their use depends alone on the nature of the statement we wish to make* (see § 25). Nor has the notion connected with the verb standing in the principal clause an absolute influence on the mood to be used in the subordinate clause. The Indicative stands in subordinate clauses not merely after verbs expressing Certainty, but also after such as denote Belief, Supposition, and Doubt, when the statement contained in the subordinate clause is represented *objectively*, i.e. as being based upon a fact, or as being, in the speaker's opinion, not open to any doubt. So we say—

Ich glaube, daß er in der Schlacht geblieben ist (not sei).

I believe that he was killed in battle.

Ich weiß nicht, ob er lebt, oder ob er tot ist.

I do not know whether he is alive, or whether he is dead.

Ich zweifle, daß der Kranke genesen wird.

I doubt if the patient will recover.

Ich hoffe, daß er sich wohl befindet.

I hope that he is well.

But when the statement contained in the subordinate clause is represented *subjectively*, i.e. as being based upon a mere idea or belief, the correctness of which is still open to doubt, the Subjunctive must be used; as—

Man glaubt, man sagt, etc., er sei in der Schlacht geblieben.

People believe, people say, etc., that he was killed in battle, (but it is still doubtful).

Er fürchtet, daß man ihn verraten habe.

He is afraid that they have betrayed him, (yet he does not know).

D. THE CONDITIONAL MOOD.

§ 36. The Conditional is the mood for representing a state or an event as dependent on another, which other, however, is not based upon a real fact, but is a mere hypothesis or supposition. As such we use not only the First and Second Conditional (ich würde, etc.), as given in the tables of verbs, but also the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. The latter two, in fact, may be called the simple forms of the Conditional Mood, and the former (ich würde, etc.) the compound forms. Every true conditional statement consists of two clauses: (a) the hypothetical clause, which contains the supposition, (b) the conditioning clause, which contains the inference drawn from that supposition; as—

If I had money (hypothetical clause),

I should like to travel (conditioning clause).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used in both clauses, but the First and Second Conditional (ich würde, etc.—see the tables of verbs) can only be used in conditioning clauses.

The conditioning clause is often introduced by „so.“

EXAMPLES.

Wenn ich Geld hätte, ginge ich gern auf Reisen (or würde ich gern auf Reisen gehen).

If I had money, I should like to travel.

Wenn es heute schönes Wetter gewesen wäre, so würden wir ausgegangen sein.

If the weather had been fine to-day, we should have gone out.

Dieser Mann könnte glücklicher sein, wenn er das Spiel nicht zu sehr liebte.

This man might be happier, if he were not too fond of gambling.

Er würde gesund sein (or er wäre gesund), wenn er mäßiger lebte.

He would be healthy, if he were more temperate.

§ 37. The Conditional is sometimes used *elliptically*; as—

Ja, ich würde gekommen sein!

Yes, I should have come! (i.e. if I had been able to do so, *understood*).

Unter den Umständen hätte ich es gewiß gethan.

I am sure, under the circumstances I should have done it (i.e. if I had been placed in the same situation).

Wäre ich reich, würde ich Sie sofort bezahlen.

Were I rich, I should pay you directly.

SYNOPSIS OF THE CHANGES

WHICH

THE GERMAN SPELLING HAS UNDERGONE THROUGH THE
GOVERNMENT REGULATIONS OF 1880*.

A. Vokale. (Vowels.)

Write.

Ä, Ö, ü (instead of *He, De, Ue*) in: die Äpfel (*apples*); die Öfen (*ovens, stoves*); der Überrock (*overcoat*), etc. In foreign words **ä, ö** (for Greek and French *ai* and French *u*) in: der Pädagog (*pedagogue*); der Kapitän (*captain*); die Lektüre (*reading*), etc.

ay (instead of *ai*) in: Bayern (*Bavaria*); der Bayer (*the Bavarian*); bayerisch, adj. (*Bavarian*), and derivatives.

ei (instead of *ai*) in: der Heide (*heathen*); die Heide (*heath*); das Getreide (*grain*); der Weizen (*wheat*), etc.—But: die Bai (*bay*); der Hai (*shark*); der Hain (*grove*); der Kaiser (*emperor*); der Laib (*loaf*); der Laich (*spawn [of fish]*); das Laichen (*spawning*); die Laichzeit (*spawning-time*); der Laie (*layman*); der Mai (*May*); die Maid (*maid, maiden*); der Mais (*maize*); maischen (*to mash [in brewing]*); die Saite (*string*); der Waid (*dyer's woad*); der or die Waise (*orphan (boy or girl)*), and derivatives.

Nouns terminating in **-ee** and **-ie**—

take in the plural **eu**, which inflection forms a separate syllable, as: die Armee' (*army*), pl. die Armee'en (*armies*); der or die See' (*lake or sea*), pl. die See'en (*lakes or seas*); die Melodie' (*melody*), pl. die Melodie'en (*melodies*); die Theorie' (*theory*), pl. die Theorie'en (*theories*), etc. But: das Komitee' (*committee*), pl. die Komitee's (*committees*); das Knie' (*knee*), pl. die Knie'e.

eu 1. (instead of *äu*) in: deuchten (*to appear, to seem*); mir deucht (*it seems to me, methinks*); ihm deuchte (*he thought*); (durch):bleuen (*to give [one] a hearty drubbing, to beat [one] black and blue*); [but: (durch):bläuen (*to make or dye blue*)]); der Greuel (*horror*); leugnen (*to deny*); verleumden (*to slander*), etc.

2. in the termination **eur** (sounded as in French), in: der Commandeur (*commander*); der Redacteur (*editor*), etc.

i (instead of *η*) in: der Gips (*plaster of Paris*); die Silbe (*syllable*); der Sirup (*syrup*); der Vampir (*vampire*), etc. [Comp. **ay**.]

*1. Regeln und Wörterverzeichnis für die deutsche Rechtschreibung zum Gebrauch in den preussischen Schulen. Berlin, Weidmannsche Buchhandlung. 2. Regeln und Wörterverzeichnis für die deutsche Rechtschreibung zum Gebrauch in den bayerischen Schulen. München, Expedition des Kgl. Zentral-Schulbücher-Verlags.

Write:

ie (instead of *i*) in the verbal termination **ie'ren**, as in: *studie'ren* (*to study*); *spazie'ren* (*to go for a walk*); *marſchie'ren* (*to march*); *probie'ren* (*to try, to test*); *hantie'ren* (*to handle, to manage*), etc.—and in their derivatives, as in: *die Hantie'ring* (*management, business, profession*), etc.; also in: *gieb* (*give*), and derivatives.

ou (pronounced as in *French*, instead of *u*) in words coming from the *French*, as *die Fourage* (*forage*); *der Fourier* (*quarter master*); *der Fournier* (*veneer*), etc.

Only one Vowel (instead of two)—

in: *bar* (*bare, destitute of*; [of money]: *in cash*); *die Barſchaft* (*ready money, cash in hand*); *das Maß* (*measure*); *das Schaf* (*sheep*); *die ſchar* (*troop, herd*); *der Star* (*starling*; [in medicine]: *cataract*); *die Wage* (*scales*); *die Ware* (*goods*); *der Herd* (*hearth*); *die Herde* (*herd, flock*); *das Kamel* (*camel*); *das Loß* (*lot, fate*); *loſen* (*to cast lots*); *die Loſung* (*the casting or drawing of lots*); *der ſchoß* (*lap, middle*; [of dress]: *skirt, or tail*); etc.

B. Konſonanten. (Consonants.)

b (instead of *bt*) in: *der Tod* (*death*); *tobkrank* (*sick unto death*); *tobmüde* (*tired to death*); *die Todſünde* (*deadly or mortal sin*); *tödtlich* (*deadly, mortal, fatal*), etc.—Comp. letter **t** (instead of *bt*).

f (instead of *ph*) in: *Adolf* (*Adolphus*); *der Elefant* (*elephant*); *der Faſan* (*pheasant*); *Rudolf* (*Ralph*); *Weſtfalen* (*Westphalia*), etc.—But: *der Ephen* (*ivy*) from the old German word *Ephen*.

h 1. **h** remains as a sign of lengthening a syllable:—

(a) In syllables beginning with a *t*-sound and containing a long vowel, but not a diphthong or a double vowel, as in: *die That* (*deed*); *die Thräne* (*tear*); *der Thron* (*throne*); *der Thor* (*fool*); *das Thor* (*gate*); *thun* (*to do*); *that* (*did*); *gethan* (*done*), etc. [Comp. **h**, 2 (a).]

(b) before **l**, **m**, **n**, and **r**, as in: *aſſmählich* (*gradually*); *befehlen* (*to command*); *nehmen* (*to take*); *wohnen* (*to live, to reside*); *lehren* (*to teach*), etc. Exceptions: *die Feme* (*an old secret criminal court in Westphalia*) and derivatives, as: *der Femrichter* (*a judge of that court*), and derivatives.

(c) in: *die Fehde* (*feud, quarrel*); *die Mahd* (*mowing*), from *mähen* (*to mow*); *der Draht* (*wire*) from *drehen* (*to turn*); *die Naht* (*seam*), from *nähen* (*to sew*), and other words derived from verbs containing an aspirated *h*.

(d) in a few proper names, as in: *Bertha*, *Günther*, *Martha*, *Mathilde*, *Theobald*, *Theodor*, etc.

(e) in many nouns originally Greek, as: *die Kathedra'le* (*cathedral*); *das Thema* (*theme*); *die Theologie'*; *die Theorie'*; *das Thermome'ter*; *der Pa'nther*, etc.

2. **h** is not retained after **t**:—

(a) in syllables beginning with a *t*-sound and containing a diphthong or a double vowel, as in: *der Tau* (*dew*); *das Tau* (*rope*); *der*

Write:

Teer (*tar*); teeren (*to tar*); der or das Teil (*part, or share*); teuer (*dear*); das Tier (*animal*); verteidigen (*to defend*), etc., and derivatives.—**Exception:** der Thee (*tea*), and derivatives.

(b) in the suffixes **tum** and **tüm** (formerly *thum* and *thüm*), as in: das Eigentum (*property*); das Königtum (*kingdom*); das Ungetüm (*monster*), etc.

(c) at the end of syllables, and at the beginning of syllables before a short vowel, as in:—die Armut (*poverty*); der Atem (*breath*); atmen (*to breathe*); die Blüte (*blossom*); die Flut (*flood*); das Gerät (*tools*); die Glut (*glow*); der Kot (*dirt*); das Lot (*a weight of half an ounce, now obsolete*); der Met (*mead*); die Miete (*rent; a corn or hay-stack; mite*); der Mut (*courage*); die Not (*need*); nötigen (*to urge; to invite; to compel*); der or die Pate (*god-father or god-mother*); der Rat (*advice*); raten (*to advise; to guess*); das Rätsel (*riddle*); rot (*red*); die Röte (*redness*); die Rute (*rod*); der Turm (*tower*); der Wert (*value*); wert (*worth, dear*); der Wirt (*host, landlord*); die Wut (*rage*), and derivatives, as: ratlos (*without advice or means: helpless*); wertvoll (*valuable, precious*); das Wirtshaus (*inn*), etc.

Mark well: hurra! (*hurra!*).

?

1. (instead of c) in many words originally Greek, as in: die Akademie' (*academy*); praktisch (*practical*); die Arithmetik' (*arithmetic*); die Physik' (*natural philosophy*), etc.—**But:** der Charakter; die Melancholie'.

2. (instead of c and qu) in many words originally Latin or French, but which have become quite germanised, and are now looked upon as altogether German words, as: der Advokat' (*lawyer*); das Boskett' (*thicket*) from the French: le bosquet; das Lokal' (*locality*); das Publikum' (*public*); vakant' (*vacant*); der Vulkan' (*volcano*), etc.—More especially in words terminating in . . . **fel**, as in: der Artikel; die Partikel; die Flösel' (*flourish*), pl. die Flöseln (*fine words, frequently made use of with a deceptive purpose*).

3. (instead of c) in words with the prefixes **Ko=**, **Kol=**, **Kom=**, **Kon=**. **Kor=**, and also in syllables containing a **k**-sound followed by **t** (. . . **ft**), as in: die Kopie' (*copy*); die Kolonie' (*colony*); der Kommandant' (*commander*); der Konstabler' (*constable*); das Konzert' (*concert*); die Korrespondenz' (*correspondence*), etc.; die Didaktik' (*didactics*); das Edikt' (*edict*), etc.—**But:** das Diktum, because not germanised, etc.—

Mark well: der Kaffee' (*coffee*), **but:** das Café (*a fine restaurant where mostly coffee is served*).

NOTE. In foreign words which have preserved a foreign pronunciation, or certain foreign forms of spelling or inflection, do not use **f**, but **c**, as in: die Campagne (*campaign*); der Commis' (*clerk*); das Flaco'n (*smelling-bottle*); der Redakteur' (*editor*); die Adjektiva' (*adjectives*), etc.

Doubtful Orthography. We find: Konzert and Conce'rt, n.; Ka'rzer (*prison in schools and universities*) and Ga'rzer, m.; Komitee' and Comite', n.; Kompanie' and Compagnie', f.; konzentrisk' (*concentric*) and conce'ntrisk'; Konze'ssio'n

Write :

and Concessio'n, f.; Konzil (council) and Conci'l, n.; klassifizie'ren (to classify) and klassificie'ren; Ku'rsus (course of study) and Cu'rsus, m.; korre'kt and corre'ct; Konjunktio'n and Conjunctio'n, etc., etc.

From these examples it will be seen that the mode of spelling is fluctuating between **f** and **c**, and **c** and **z**, in many words which originally contained the letter **c**. The first way is to be preferred, and strongly recommended, in all the words given above, and many others in common use that contain a **f** or a **z**-sound and are quite germanised in spelling and inflection. (Comp. C. 3.)

Use also **f** instead of **c** in words of Greek origin which have preserved the **f**-sound, as:—Anekd'ote, Katho'lish, Komö'die, Dialékt, etc.—[Comp. B, letter **f**, 1.]—And write **c** and **cq**, as before, in: A'cc'e'nt, A'ccusati'v, A'cquisitio'n, etc.—

mis (instead of **niß**) as a suffix of nouns, as in: das Ereignis (event); das Begräbnis (burial); das Verhältnis (relation); das Vermächtnis (bequest), etc.—

The prefix **miß** . . ., however, remains unchanged, as in: das Mißverständnis (misunderstanding), pl. die Mißverständnisse.

s (instead of **ß**) in deshalb (therefore); deswegen (therefore, for this reason); indes (meanwhile, whilst; however); unterdes (meanwhile, whilst); weshalb (why); weswegen (why), etc.—

sf (instead of **ff**) in: dasselbe (the same); desselben (of the same); diesseits (on this side), etc.

st (instead of **ft**) in: Dienstag (Tuesday); Geburtstag (birthday); Frühlingstag (spring-day), and other compound nouns in which **s** occurs as a sign of the Genitive and is followed by a **t**.

ff between two vowels, the first one of which is short, as in lassen (to let, to leave); die Tasse (cup); trotz dessen (in spite of that); wessen (whose), etc.—

ß 1. between two vowels, the first one of which is long, as in: büßen (to atone for); schießen (to shoot), etc.

2. before **t**, and at the end of words, as in: er läßt (he leaves); ihr laßt (you leave); gebüßt (atoned for); laß (let); der Kuß (kiss), etc.—

t (instead of **dt**) in: der Tote (a dead man or person); tot (dead); töten (to kill); der Totschlag (manslaught); der Totengräber (gravedigger), etc.—Comp. letter **d** (instead of **dt**.)

t (instead of **b**) in: das Brot (bread).

t (and never **z**) in the accented and original Latin combinations:—tia', tie', tio', as in martia'lish, Patie'nt, m., Ratio'n, f., Traditio'n, f., Motio'n, etc.

But write: Gra'zie, Ingredie'nzien, etc., **e** being unaccented.

z 1. (instead of **tz**) after a long vowel, as in: die Bre'zel (biscuit in the shape of a twisted ring, cracknel); bu'zen (to call a person thou), etc.

2. (instead of **tz** and **Sc**) in: der Zar (czar); das Zepter (sceptre), etc.

3. (instead of **ce**) regularly at the end of foreign words with German pronunciation and terminating in French in **ce**, and in Latin in **tia**, **tius**, **tium**, **eius**, **cium**, as in: das Beneß'z, die Justiz, das Hospiz, die Miliz, die Notiz; die Differenz, die Gente'nz, die Wafaniz; die Finanzen, die Novize, die Allianz,

die Distaⁿz, etc.—(But with foreign pronunciation: Alliance, Distance, etc.)

4. also in words quite germanised, as: der Bezⁱrk (*district, circuit*); die Laⁿze (*lance*); die Poliz^ei (*police*); der Polizⁱst (*policeman*); das Zerzer^el (*pocket-pistol*); das Zerz^eit (*trio*), etc.—But write: Cä^sar, die Cäsu^r (*cesure, cesura*); die Ce^der, die Celebritä^t, die Censu^r (*censorship*), censu^ren (*to censure, to review*), der Ceⁿti^mer, die Cerea^lien (*cereals*), das Celiba^t, der Cⁱrcumsc^re, das Lyce^um, etc.

5. (instead of c) in verbs terminating in . . . ie^ren, as: fabri^zie^ren (*to manufacture*); mus^zie^ren (*to make music*); publi^zie^ren (*to publish*), etc.

Note. In many words which originally contained the letter *c*, the mode of spelling is unsettled and fluctuating between *c* and *z*, as in: Medizⁱn and Medicⁱn, f.; das Recept and Recept, n. (*prescription, recipe*); Prinzⁱp and Princⁱp, n. (*principle*); Prozeⁿt and Proceⁿt, n. (*per cent.*); Proze^s and Proce^s, m., etc.—[Read carefully B, Note to letter *£*, also letter *t* of B, and General Observations on the Spelling of Foreign Words, where additional examples are given.]

C. Allgemeine Bemerkungen über die Schreibung der Fremdwörter.

(General Observations on the Spelling of Foreign Words.)

1. With foreign words containing sounds and combinations of sounds not originally German, THE GENERAL PRINCIPLE regarding their orthography is that, their foreign pronunciation being preserved, also the foreign garb of their orthography is retained.

So, for example, we use:—

oi (sounded as in French) in: die Memoⁱren (*memoirs*); die Toile^tte (*toilet*).

g and i (sounded as in French) in: die Baga^ge (*luggage*); das Logiⁱs (*lodgings*); der Gen^da^rm (*a police-officer on horseback*); das Geniⁱe (*genius; a man of great talent*); der Ingeni^eer (*engineer*); das Journa^l (*journal, magazine*); rangi^eren (*to arrange*), etc.—But with German pronunciation: der Genera^l (*general*); genia^l (*highly gifted*); die Genialitä^t (*geniality, originality*), etc.—

gn (sounded as in French) in: der Champa^gner (*champaign*); die Lorgne^tte (*lorgnette, eye-glass*), etc.

ll (sounded like English *l* followed by *y*) in: das Bataill^lon (*battalion*); das Willard (*billiards*); das Will^let (*ticket; note*); der Postill^lon (*postillion*), etc.

nn (sounded as in French, but not quite so nasal) in: die Nu^ance (*gradation of colours*); das Bassiⁿ (*reservoir*); der Refraiⁿ (*refrain*); der Rayⁿ (*ray of light; [of a fortification]: radius*); das Violonc^{ll}lo (*violoncello*), etc.

2. Many foreign words, on the other hand, composed of German

sounds, which might be indicated by German letters, have as yet preserved their original orthography. So we find:—

ai (for the sound of ä) in: die *Chai'se* (*chaise*), from the French;

au and **eau** (for the sound of u) in: die *Sau'ce* (*sauce*); das *Bureau* (*office*), from the French;

ch (for the sound of ſch) in: die *Chauſſee'* (*turnpike-road*), from the French;

ch (for the Greek f-sound) in: der *or* das *Chor* (*choir or chorus*), from the Greek;

ph (for the sound of f) in: der *Philoso'ph* (*philosopher*), from the Greek;

th (for the sound of t) in: der *Thron* (*throne*), from the Greek; and

v (for the German w-sound) in: *violet't* (*violet-blue*, adj.), from the French.

3. Again we find foreign words which, being in common use and composed of German sounds, have become entirely germanised, and wear a German garb; as: die *Tru'ppe* (*troop, company*), French: *la troupe*; die *Grü'ppe* (*group*), French: *la groupe*; der *Dis'kurs* (*discourse*), French: *le discours*; der *Se'kretär* (*secretary*), French: *le secrétaire*.

It follows from the three preceding paragraphs:—that it is impossible to reduce the spelling of foreign words to any fixed principles, and that there exists at present much uncertainty and inconsistency respecting the spelling of such words. [Comp. B, Consonants, Note to letter *f*, also B, letter *z*, where additional examples are given.]

D. Kleinschreibung und Zusammenziehung.

(Small Initials [*instead of Capitals*] and Contractions.)

USE SMALL INITIALS:—

1. With Nouns used as Prepositions, Conjunctions, Indefinite Numerals, and Adverbs, as in: *angesichts* (*in the face of*); *infolge* (*in consequence of*); *behu'f* (*on behalf of*);—*falls* (*in case of*);—*ein bißchen* (*a bit, a little*); *ein paar* (*a few, some, some few*);—*anfangs* (*in the beginning*); *teils* (*partly*); *einsteils* (*on the one part or hand*); *andernteils* (*on the other part or hand*); *meinerseits* (*on my part*); *morgens* (*in the morning*); *abends* (*in the evening*); *vormittags* (*in the fore-noon*) [*but: des Morgens, des Abends, heute Nachmittags*, etc., *Sonntags, Montags*, etc.]; *überhaupt* (*in general, altogether, moreover*); *unterwegs* (*on the way*); *heutzutage* (*now-a-days*); *beizeiten* (*in time, betimes*); *bisweilen* (*at times*); *einmal* (*once*); *zweimal* (*twice*); *bergauf* (*uphill*); *kopfüber* (*head over heels*), etc.

2. With Nouns used in Verbal-Combinations, in which, by the by, they are strongly accented, and treated as separable particles, i.e. are separated from the verb and placed at the end of the clause when used in a principal sentence and in a simple tense. Such Verbal-Combinations are:—*re'cht ha'ben*

(to be right); u'nrecht haben (to be wrong); lei'd thun (to be sorry); we'h thun (to hurt); —ſchul'd haben or ſein (to be in fault); —ſei'nd ſein (to be hostile); mir iſt a'ngſt, wo'hl (I am afraid, well); mir iſt no't (it is necessary to me, I require); mir iſt we'he (I am grieved); das iſt ſch'a'de (that is a pity); ich bin wi'llens (I have a mind, I intend); —ſta'ttfinden, ſta'tthaben (to take place); wa'rne'hmen (to perceive); theil'nehmen (to take part in, to sympathise with); u'berhandnehmen (to increase); hau'shalten (to keep house, to manage); a'chtgeben (to pay attention); preis'geben (to abandon, to expose); bra'schliegen (to lie fallow); zuſta'tten kommen (to be of use, to come in usefully); inſta'nd ſetzen (to repair, to restore); zuſta'nde kommen (to accomplish); inſi't'ch laſſen (to leave in the lurch), etc.—Er hält haus; es iſt mir zuſtatten gekommen; es hat überhandgenommen; es iſt mir zuteil geworden. But: Er hat keinen Teil an mir, etc.

3. With Pronouns and Numerals, as:—jemand, niemand, jeder, keiner, einer, der eine, der andere, man; —etliche (some), einige, einzelne, manche, viele, alle, alles, etwas, nichts, beide; —die (alle) andern, das (alles) andre, die (alle) übrigen, das (alles) übrige, das meiste, der (das) nämliche, der erste, der letzte, der zweite, der nächste, der erste beste, ein jeglicher, etc.

But:—Use Capital Initials (as before):—

(a) with Ordinal Numerals and Adjectives preceded by the definite article and used in apposition to a proper noun, as: Friedrich der Zweite; Karl der Große, etc.

(b) With Pronouns and Adjectives in titles, as:—Se. Majestät der König; das Kaiserliche Zollamt (the Imperial Custom-House); der Wirkliche Geheimrat von Humboldt (the Privy Councillor von Humboldt).

(c) With Pronouns used in addressing persons, more especially in letters, as:—Sie genießen mein volles Vertrauen; wir glauben Ihnen alles; das Haus Ihrer Eltern war mir stets geöffnet; ich will Dir bald mehr davon erzählen; stets bleibe ich Dein Dich liebender Sohn Heinrich, etc.

4. In Adjectival and Adverbial Clauses, as:—groß und klein (grown up people and children); arm und reich (poor and rich people); alt und jung, dick und dünn; —am besten, fürs erste, bei weitem (by far); aufs deutlichste, im allgemeinen, im ganzen, im folgenden, im wesentlichen (essentially, in all essential points); von neuem, vor kurzem, im voraus (beforehand); von vorne, ohne weiteres, um ein beträchtliches, etc.—and also in idiomatic phrases, such as:—Er zieht den Kürzen dabei (he is the loser by it); ich will Ihnen Ihre Unarten zugute halten (I will bear with your rudeness; I will excuse your incivilities); der Junge hat Sie zum besten (the boy amuses himself at your expense); ich will es Ihnen zuliebe thun (I will do it to please you), etc.

E. Zerlegung der Wörter in Silben.

(Division of Words into Syllables.)

1. When part of a German word has to be separated from the rest in order to be carried on to the next line, the division into Syllables is made as we would naturally deliver them whilst pronouncing the word very slowly and

distinctly. The compound letters: **ch, ck, dt, pf, ph, sch, sp, st, ß, th,** and **tz,** should, as a rule, not be separated. [For exceptions see § 2 of this chapter.] Examples:—*ruhen, dieser, Sonne, Mutter, Mittag, dennoch, Flüsse, Wetterglas, fünfte, Anker, Wechsel, Hoffnung, Hoffnungen, Finger, Langsamkeit, —Brüche, haßen, Städte, klopfen, Orthographie, löschen, aussprechen, lästig, schiesßen, Lothar, kratzen, Heere.*

2. The syllables forming the constituent parts of Compound Words should not be broken up, and the principal rule, as expressed above, cannot always be applied to them. Examples: *hinein, hierauf, herein, darum, warum, voraus, vollenden, Interesse, Mikroskop, Atmosphäre, Schiffsahrt*, Schwimmmeister*, gemüthlich, Dispens, disputieren, Disposition, beobachten, auferstehen, Geburts-tag, Frühlings-tag.*

* But write 'Schiffsahrt' and 'Schwimmmeister' when no separation takes place.

F. Der Apostroph. (The Apostrophe.)

1. The Apostrophe is more especially used for indicating the suppression of certain letters in poetry and in the language of every-day life, as in English. Examples: *Ich lieb' dich; Steh' auf! Wie geht's? So ist's recht; Geld hab' ich nicht.*

2. Contractions of prepositions and articles are used without the Apostrophe, as: *am, beim, unterm, ans, ins, zum.*

3. The Apostrophe is abolished before the inflections indicating the Genitive relation of proper names, as: *Ciceros Briefe; Schillers Gedichte; Homers Ilias; Fritzens Geburtstag; Hamburgs Handel; Sophiens Mutter; die Einwohner Breslaus.*

4. Family names, however, terminating in *s* or *z*, the genitive of which cannot be formed by adding *s*, require an Apostrophe to be placed after them for indicating the Genitive relation, as: *Demosthenes' Reden; Boß' Luise.*

INDEX

TO THE GRAMMATICAL RULES AND IDIOMATIC RENDERINGS.

A.

- a** or **an** preceded by 'not', how to render, S. 126, N. 12. The numeral 'a' not translated before hundred or thousand, S. 132, N. 10.
- a** great deal, how to render, S. 65, N. 3 and S. 77, N. 3. **an** hour, how to render, S. 235, N. 10. **a** month, how to render, S. 167, N. 24.
- about**, to be, rendered by *im Begriff sein* or *wollen*, S. 6, N. 4.
- Abstract nouns**, their formation from Infinitives of verbs, S. 11, N. 7.
- Adjectives**. Used as nouns, S. 34, N. 1. National adjectives require a small initial, S. 101, N. 1. Adjectives and all parts qualifying nouns must be placed before them, S. 128, N. 11. The formation of their superlative used predicatively, S. 120, N. 14.
- Adverbs**. Their position in Imperative clauses, S. 68, N. 2. Must not precede the verb or copula when the subject stands before them, S. 102, N. 30. Formation of the relative superlative of Adverbs, S. 183, N. 24.
- all** in connection with a possess. adj. pron. and a noun in the sing. number, how to render, S. 157, N. 20. *All of us (them, you)*, S. 74, N. 3, how to render.
- Apposition**, the, its agreement, S. 53, N. 9.
- Articles**, the, and other determinative words repeated, S. 10, N. 9. Their position in connection with adjectives and adverbs, S. 28, N. 9. **THE DEFINITE ARTICLE**. Before nouns representing a whole class, and before abstract nouns, S. 3, N. 2. Before nouns of persons preceded

- by an adjective or a common name, S. 10, N. 2. Used to mark the Gen., Dat., and Acc. of proper names, S. 25, N. 5. Used in stating the price of goods, S. 33, N. 7. Used before objects individualised or singled out, S. 40, N. 9. Used instead of Possess. Adj. Pronouns, S. 43, N. 9. **A** and **B**. **THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE**. Not expressed before nouns denoting professions, etc., S. 14, N. 2. How to render when preceded by 'not', S. 126, N. 12.
- as**, conj., = *since*, how to render, S. 41, N. 6. = *according to*, how to render, S. 74, N. 6.
- ask** (to), how to render, S. 132, N. 23.
- at** = *at the house of*, how to render, S. 153, N. 15. *at home*, how to render, S. 63, N. 8. *at the rate of*, how to render, S. 235, N. 9.
- Attributive construction**, S. 7, N. 3; S. 48, N. 6.
- auf**, prep., = *in*, before names of Islands, S. 46, N. 6.
- Auxiliary verbs of tense**, often omitted in subordinate clauses, S. 52, N. 8.

B.

- be**, to, rendered by *müssen*, S. 62, N. 4.
- beginning with**, rendered by *von* ... *an*, S. 102, N. 4.
- bleiben**, conjugated with *sein*, S. 98, N. 5.
- but**, rendered by *sondern* after a negative, S. 6, N. 10.
- by**, prep., = *through*, *durch*, S. 59, N. 13. In connection with the Passive Voice, rendered by *von*, S. 106, N. 23.
- both** ... **and**, *sewohl* ... *als* *auch*, S. 59, N. 11.

C.

- Capital Initial**, when required for pronouns, S. 69, N. 2.
- care**, to take care of, S. 91, N. 7.
- cause** (to) how to render, S. 73, N. 1.
- Collective nouns** in the Singular require the verb to agree with them in the Singular, S. 107, N. 13.
- Colon**, the, its use, S. 36, N. 3.
- Comma**, the, not used to enclose adverbial clauses, etc., S. 15, N. 3.
- command**, to, how to render, S. 73, N. 1.
- Compound expressions**, their importance, S. 33, N. 4.
- Compound forms** with auxiliary and Present Participle or 'to do' and Infinitive, how to render into German, S. 32, N. 11.
- Compound Nouns**. Their importance, S. 33, N. 4; their formation, S. 36, N. 7, *A* and *B*, and S. 76, N. 22, *A*, *B*, *C* and *D*; their Gender, S. 36, N. 7, *C*; compound nouns which have the last component in common are connected with hyphens, S. 71, N. 2.
- Conditional Mood**, the, its use, App. §§ 36 and 37.
- Conjunctive Mood**, the, its use, App. §§ 26-35.
- Construction**. Principal and Co-ordinate Clauses, App. §§ 1-12. Inverted Construction, App. §§ 13-15. Subordinate Clauses, App. §§ 16-24.
- Construction**. Inverted after quotations, S. 32, N. 5. Attributive construction, S. 7, N. 3, *A*; S. 48, N. 6. Position of adverbs in Imperative Clauses, S. 68, N. 2.
- Copula**, the, not to be omitted, S. 27, N. 7. The Copula must follow the Subject when the latter begins the principal clause, S. 5, N. 2.
- copy**, noun, how to render, S. 132, N. 17.

D.

- da**, adv. in combination with a prep. governing the Dat. or Acc., S. 4, N. 5, *B*. **Da**, conj., denotes logical cause, used for rendering 'as' and 'since', S. 30, N. 4. **Da**, adv., in connection with a prep., required

in the principal clause when verbs and adjectives governing a prep. are followed by a subordinate clause, S. 87, N. 6.

- Definite Article**, the. When to be repeated, S. 10, N. 9. Its position in connection with adjectives and adverbs, S. 28, N. 9. Before nouns representing a whole class, and before abstract nouns, S. 3, N. 2. Before names of persons preceded by an adj. or a common name, S. 10, N. 2. Used to mark the Gen., Dat., and Acc. of proper names, S. 25, N. 5. Used in stating the price of goods, S. 33, N. 7. Used before objects individualised or singled out, S. 40, N. 9. Used instead of Posses. Adj. Pronouns, S. 43, N. 9, *A* and *B*.
- Demonstrative Pronoun**, followed by a relat. pron., how to render, S. 8, N. 1.

- der** and **die** must be used as relat. pronouns in reference to a personal pron. of the 1st and 2nd pers. sing. and pl., and also in reference to the pers. pron. of the 3rd person pl. (*©it*), S. 78, N. 7.
- do**, used in sentences of entreaty, rendered by *doch*, S. 92, N. 9.
- doch**, adv., = 'do' in sentences of entreaty, S. 92, N. 9.

E.

- er**, suffix, used to form names of male persons from names of countries and places, S. 157, N. 4.
- ernennen**, requires the prep. *zu*, S. 27, N. 4.
- erwählen**, requires the prep. *zu*, S. 27, N. 4.
- es**. Used as grammatical Object in principal clauses, S. 51, N. 13. Used as grammatical Subject, S. 104, N. 19.

F.

- fact**, the, how to render, S. 115, N. 2.
- fond** (to be — of), how to render, S. 20, N. 2.
- for**, rendered by *seit* in sentences expressing the duration of an action up to the time of speaking, S. 145, N. 17.
- for years**, S. 166, N. 10.

from, referring to time and place, how to render, S. 102, N. 4.
full of, how to render, S. 74, N. 14.

G.

gehen, always construed with *sein*, S. 29, N. 3.

Gemahlin, wife, consort, S. 101, N. 5.

Genitive, the, of a proper noun stands generally before the governing noun, S. 14, N. 3.

gentleman, how to render, S. 88, N. 2.

geru(e), adv., denotes liking, S. 20, N. 2.

Gerund, the. How to render, S. 1, N. 3; S. 34, N. 10. Preceded by a possess. adj. and a prep., how to render, S. 161, N. 21.

giebt (es) = the matter is, S. 63, N. 9; = there is, there are, S. 82, N. 7.

go, to, how to render when = to travel, etc., S. 233, N. 4.

going (to be — to), how to render, S. 67, N. 2.

H.

Hafer, not used in the pl., S. 22, N. 1.

have, to, rendered by *müssen*, S. 62, N. 4.

head = *Haupt* in elevated diction, S. 127, N. 8.

home and *at home*, how to render, S. 63, N. 8.

Hyphens required to show the connection between compound nouns that have the last part in common, S. 71, N. 2.

I.

I, should, if possible, not begin the sentence, S. 115, N. 1.

If, rendered by *wenn*, S. 64, N. 12.

Ihr, formerly used in addressing persons of the lower ranks of society, S. 137, N. 2.

in, prep., how to render before names of islands, S. 46, N. 6.

Indefinite Article, the. When to be repeated, S. 10, N. 9. Its position in connection with adjectives and adverbs, S. 28, N. 9. Not ex-

pressed before nouns denoting professions, etc., S. 14, N. 2. How to render when preceded by 'not', S. 126, N. 12.

indem, conj., used for rendering the Participle in *-ing* in adverbial clauses of manner, S. 111, N. 6.

Indicative Mood, the, its use, App. §§ 25 and 35.

Infinitive, the. With an Accusative, how to render, S. 57, N. 14. When used without the preposition *zu*, S. 78, N. 14. Forms abstract nouns, S. 11, N. 7.

Inverted Construction. When to be used, App. §§ 13-15. Used after quotations, S. 32, N. 5.

Imperfect, the, its use, S. 101, N. 22. **it**, dependent on a prep., how to render, S. 4, N. 5, B.

J.

Jesus Christus, its declension, S. 141, N. 9.

K.

Kein, the general translation for 'not a', S. 126, N. 12.

L.

lassen, to order, to command, to cause, S. 73, N. 1.

lehren, to teach, requires two accusatives, S. 42, N. 4, and S. 43, N. 10.

like, to, how to render, S. 20, N. 2.

live, to, how to render, S. 116, N. 17.

M.

machen, requires the prep. *zu*, S. 27, N. 4, and S. 102, N. 13.

man = human being, how to render, S. 134, N. 9.

man, pron. With the Active Voice instead of Eng. Passive Voice, S. 4, N. 4. *Man*, indef. pron., used to render the Eng. 'you' used in a general sense, S. 92, N. 5, also S. 134, N. 4.

Mark, tie, its inflection, S. 58, N. 3.

matter, the — is, *es giebt*, S. 63, N. 9.

mögen, auxil. v. of mood, S. 20, N. 2.

müssen = to be and to have, followed by the infinitive of another verb, S. 62, N. 4.

N.

nach, prep. = to, S. 72, N. 4.

Names of male persons and inhabitants of countries and places made by the suffix *er*, S. 157, N. 4. Proper Names, their declension, S. 65, N. 1.

National adjectives, require a small initial, S. 101, N. 1.

not a=no, S. 126, N. 12.

Nouns. Compound Nouns, their importance, S. 33, N. 5. Formation of Compound Nouns, S. 36, N. 7, and S. 76, N. 22. Nouns must be preceded by the parts qualifying them, S. 128, N. 11. Abstract Nouns made from the Infinitives of verbs, S. 11, N. 7. Collective Nouns in the Sing. require the verb to agree with them in the Sing., S. 107, N. 13.

Number. Use the Sing. number in connection with a Collective Noun in the Sing., S. 107, N. 13.

O.

Object, the grammatical, in a principal clause, followed by a subordinate clause, or a supine, S. 51, N. 13.

on. *On the contrary*, how to render, S. 66, N. 16. *To be on the point of*, rendered by *wollen*, S. 67, N. 2.

one, not translated after an adj. or a pron., S. 67, N. 3.

one, numeral, not translated before *hundred* and *thousand*, S. 132, N. 10.

one day, how to render, S. 19, N. 2.

only, adv., how to render, S. 109, N. 5.

order, to, how to render, S. 73, N. 1.

ought, how to render, S. 64, N. 5.

P.

Participles, the. Participles used attributively must be inflected, S. 7, N. 3, *B*. **THE PAST (OR PERFECT) PARTICIPLE**. As a rule precedes the qualified noun, S. 7, N. 3, *A*. Rendered by a relat. clause, S. 7, N. 3, *B*. Rendered by the attributive construction, S. 7, N. 3, and S. 48, N. 6. Used elliptically to denote state or condition, S. 102, N. 3. **THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE**. The English — qualifying a preceding noun, turned into a relat. clause,

S. 16, N. 4. How to render when it denotes a logical cause, S. 30, N. 4. Rendered by the attributive construction, S. 48, N. 6. Used adverbially to denote manner or state, S. 53, N. 12. How to render when used in adverbial clauses of time, S. 55, N. 1. The — in *-ing* in adverbial clauses of manner, rendered by the conj. *indem* and a finite verb, S. 111, N. 6.

Passive Voice, the. Its formation in German, S. 2, N. 1. How to recognise, S. 2, N. 1. Rendered into German by a reflective verb, or the pron. *man* with the active voice, S. 4, N. 4.

people, how to render, S. 134, N. 4.

Perfect, the. Its use, S. 48, N. 2.

The Eng. Perfect rendered by the Present in German, S. 145, N. 17.

Person, the, for whose benefit an action is done, must, as a rule, be indicated in German, S. 130, N. 12.

Personal Pronoun, the. In the Dat. case, used to indicate the Possessor, S. 43, N. 9, *B*. Used to indicate the person for whose benefit an action is performed, S. 58, N. 8. Personal and possessive pronouns require a capital initial in letters, S. 69, N. 2.

Pfund, *daß*, one £, Engl., never takes the mark of the plural, S. 58, N. 3.

Possessive Adjective Pronoun, the. When repeated in German, S. 10, N. 9. How to render into German, S. 43, N. 9, *A* and *B*.

pound, how to render, S. 58, N. 3.

Predicate, the, Copula or Verb, must follow the Subject when it begins the clause, S. 5, N. 2. The formation of the Superlatives of adjectives used predicatively, S. 120, N. 14.

Present Tense, the German, used to express duration up to the time of speaking, where the Engl. use the Perfect, S. 145, N. 17.

Principal Clauses. Their construction, App. §§ 1-12.

progress, noun, how to render, S. 132, N. 1.

Proper names, when not inflected, S. 65, N. 1.

R.

rate. *At the rate of*, how to render, S. 235, N. 9.

Relative Clauses, rendered by the attributive construction, S. 48, N. 6.

Relative Pronoun, the. Follows, as a rule, its antecedent, S. 13, N. 5. Must not be omitted in German, S. 16, N. 10. *Der* and *die* must be used in reference to a preceding personal pronoun, S. 78, N. 7.

S.

Scholar, how to render, S. 128, N. 1.

sein, auxiliary, its use, S. 29, N. 3.

seit, as a transl. of the Eng. prep. *for* in sentences which express a duration of an action up to the time of speaking, S. 145, N. 17.

so, conj. When required in the beginning of principal clauses, S. 27, N. 8.

so, in connection with a transitive verb, rendered by *es*, *daß*, *biß*, S. 132, N. 13.

sollen, expresses assertion, S. 54, N. 13; = ought, S. 64, N. 5.

St., abbreviation of *Sanct.*, its derivation, S. 103, N. 33.

Subject, the. Must be followed by the Copula or the Verb when it begins the principal clause, S. 5, N. 2. Its position in subordinate clauses, S. 66, N. 15. Not to be omitted, S. 27, N. 7. The grammatical subject in the form of the pron. *es*, S. 104, N. 19.

Subjunctive Mood, the. Its use, App. §§ 26-35.

Subordinate Clauses. Their construction, App. §§ 16-24.

Superlative, the, of an adjective used predicatively is generally preceded by *am*, S. 120, N. 14. How to form the relat. Superlative of adverbs, S. 183, N. 24.

Supine, the. Explanation and use, S. 1, N. 2. Formation of the Supine Present, S. 1, N. 2. Used for rendering the Eng. Gerund preceded by a preposition, S. 1, N. 3. Expresses purpose, S. 19, N. 7. Used for rendering the Eng. Gerund governed by a noun or a verb, S. 34, N. 10. Used in connection with the verb *sehen*, S. 43, N. 10.

Suppose, I, in interrogative sentences, rendered by *wohl*, S. 92, N. 3.

T.

Take, to. How to render, S. 3, N. 8. *To take care of*, how to render, S. 91, N. 7.

teach, to, how to render, S. 42, N. 4, and S. 43, N. 10.

that, **them**, **those**, dependent on a prep., how to render, S. 4, N. 5, *B.*

that and **those**, followed by a relat. pron., cannot be rendered by the adv. *da* in connection with a preceding preposition, S. 8, N. 1.

that = in order that, how to render, S. 183, N. 6.

there is and **There are**, rendered by *es giebt*, S. 82, N. 7.

they, used in an indefinite sense, rendered by *man*, S. 134, N. 4.

think, to, how to render, S. 64, N. 11.

to = in order to, how to render, S. 19, N. 7.

to, prep., how to render, S. 72, N. 4.

trust, to, anything to a person, S. 91, N. 6.

U.

Use, to, v. tr. and intr., how to render, S. 129, N. 6.

V.

Verb, the. Agreement of verbs with collective nouns, S. 69, N. 17. Auxiliary of tense often omitted in subordinate clauses, S. 52, N. 8. The verb or copula must follow the subject, when the latter begins the Principal Clause, S. 5, N. 2.

Verbal, the, in *-ing*, how to render, S. 1, N. 3; S. 34, N. 10.

very, rendered by the Superl. of the adv. *höch*, S. 161, N. 2.

W.

want, to, rendered by *wollen*, S. 63, N. 10.

was. When required as a relat. pron., S. 3, N. 7. Used in reference to a preceding whole clause, as a transl. of 'which', S. 33, N. 8.

we, in an indefinite sense, rendered by *man*, S. 134, N. 4.

werden, conjugated with *sein*, S. 98, N. 5.

what sort of, how to render, S. 63, N. 2.

when. Rendered by *als*, S. 4, N. 2.

Rendered by *wenn*, S. 18, N. 6.

Rendered by *wo*, S. 131, N. 4.

where, rendered by *wo*, S. 131, N. 4.

which, rendered by *was*, S. 33, N. 8.

wife, how to render, S. 101, N. 5.

wish, to, rendered by *wollen*, S. 63, N. 10.

wo. relat. conj., its use, S. 131, N. 4.

wohl = I suppose, S. 92, N. 3.

wollen. Expresses *wish* and *avant*, S. 63, N. 10. — = to be going, to be on the point, S. 67, N. 2. — = to be about, S. 6, N. 4.

wonder, to, how to render, S. 90, N. 11.

Wort, *baß*, double pl., S. 7, N. 2.

worth remembering, how to render, S. 157, N. 22.

Y.

you. Used in a general sense, rendered by *man*, S. 92, N. 5. When rendered by *Sie*, S. 137, N. 2.

Z.

zu, prep. Required with verbs denoting choosing, appointing, etc., S. 27, N. 4, and S. 102, N. 13.

THE END.

217679

Author Lenge, Hermann

LaG.Gr.

Title German composition.

La74g.2

Ed.3.

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

